

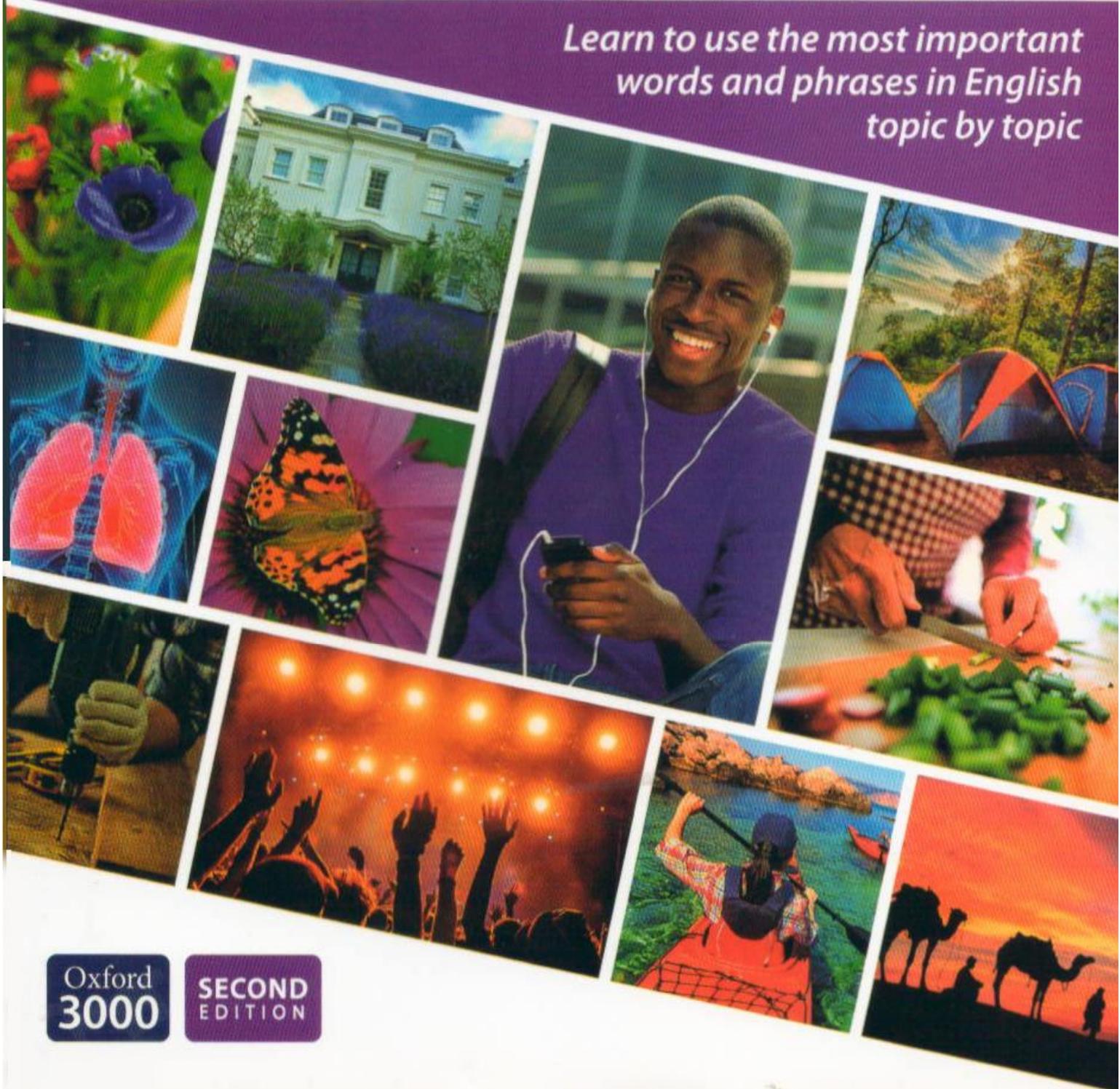
OXFORD

# Oxford Word Skills

INTERMEDIATE VOCABULARY

Ruth Gairns and Stuart Redman

*Learn to use the most important  
words and phrases in English  
topic by topic*



Oxford  
3000

SECOND  
EDITION

# Oxford **Word Skills**

**INTERMEDIATE VOCABULARY**

**Ruth Gairns and Stuart Redman**

*Learn to use the most important  
words and phrases in English  
topic by topic*

OXFORD

OXFORD  
UNIVERSITY PRESS

Great Clarendon Street, Oxford, OX2 6DP, United Kingdom

Oxford University Press is a department of the University of Oxford. It furthers the University's objective of excellence in research, scholarship, and education by publishing worldwide. Oxford is a registered trade mark of Oxford University Press in the UK and in certain other countries

© Oxford University Press 2020

The moral rights of the authors have been asserted.

First published in 2020

2024 2023 2022 2021 2020

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

### No unauthorized photocopying

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, without the prior permission in writing of Oxford University Press, or as expressly permitted by law, by licence or under terms agreed with the appropriate reprographics rights organization. Enquiries concerning reproduction outside the scope of the above should be sent to the ELT Rights Department, Oxford University Press, at the address above

You must not circulate this work in any other form and you must impose this same condition on any acquirer

Links to third party websites are provided by Oxford in good faith and for information only. Oxford disclaims any responsibility for the materials contained in any third party website referenced in this work

ISBN: 978 0 19 460570 0	Pack
ISBN: 978 0 19 460571 7	Student's Book
ISBN: 978 0 19 479862 4	Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary 10th edition app

Printed in China

This book is printed on paper from certified and well-managed sources

### ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

Back cover photograph: Oxford University Press building/David Fisher. Although every effort has been made to trace and contact copyright holders before publication, this has not been possible in some cases. We apologise for any apparent infringement of copyright and, if notified, the publisher will be pleased to rectify any errors or omissions at the earliest possible opportunity.

Disclaimer: This book includes some words which have or are asserted to have proprietary status as trademarks or otherwise. Their inclusion does not imply that they have acquired for legal purposes a non-proprietary or general significance nor any other judgement concerning their legal status. In cases where editorial staff have some evidence that a word has proprietary status this is indicated in the listing of that word in the Word List but no judgement concerning the legal status of such words is made or implied thereby.

The authors and publisher are grateful to those who have given permission to reproduce the following extracts and adaptations of copyright material:  
p.16 Entries from Oxford Wordpower Dictionary, 4th edition © Oxford University Press, reprinted by permission.

Sources: p.129 www.theguardian.com/www.ofcom.org.uk/BARB,  
p.143 www.makeawebsitehub.com.

Cover images: OUP (drilling/Stasique), (kayaking/Kuznetcov\_Konstantin); Shutterstock (young man/mimagephotography), (flowers/Anastasiia Cherniavskaia), (butterfly/Bedrich Hrstka), (tents/pixfly), (lungs/MDGRPHCS), (Lavender Palace/Konmac), (chopping/Halfpoint), (concert/dwphotos), (camels/saisnaps).

Alamy Stock Photo pp.105 (courtroom/David R. Frazier Photolibrary, Inc.), 110 (soldiers/Terry Matthews), 112 (Amundsen/Granger Historical Picture Archive), 123 (war painting/Chronicle), (van Gogh/Ian Dagnall), 127 (David Bowie/dpa Picture Alliance); Art Institute of Chicago/Gift of the Adele R. Levy Fund, Inc p.98; Getty Images p.32 (Marilyn Monroe/Alfred Eisenstaedt); Oxford University Press pp.10 (sewing kit), 14 (Felipe), 20 (woman portrait), 21 (wave), 36 (desert), 41 (flood), 42 (earth), 45 (recycling bins), 46 (tiger, camel, wolf, crocodile, bee, mosquito), 47 (snake), 50 (hotel lobby), 56 (mango, green beans, broccoli, parsley), 58 (honey), 59 (biscuits), 91 (handbag), 97 (pencil), 97 (ear), 122 (statue), 126 (trumpet, drums, orchestra), 138 (fireworks), 152 (lecture theatre), 196 (purse, trousers); Shutterstock pp.10 (hammer/diy13), 10 (drill/Topperest), 20 (male full length/studioloco), 20 (woman with tongue out/WAYHOME), 20 (hand and fingernail/New Africa), 21 (pour/Jaral), (kick/Oleksander), (kiss/George Rudy), (fold/kikkk), (swept/Syda Productions), (breathe/Liminellimages),

(bite/mimagephotography), (balance/Robert Kneschke), (roll/Standret), (clap/fizkes), (bend/Maridav), 22 (bald man/Edi Libedinsky), (Mediterranean man/Fausto Renda), (curly hair/mimage photography), (blond man/Just Dance), 23 (pregnant woman/Demkat), (older lady/morrowlight), 24 (Dan/goodluz), (Gina/Mihail Fedorenko), (Kaz/Semak S), 28 (gymnast/Koldunov), (man/Cameron Whitman), (senior/Kristo Gottherd-Humor), 31 (friends/fizkes), 34 (wedding/Jan Vclek), 36 (Iguazu Falls/Jorisvo), (mountains/pedrosala), (jungle/Foto593), 41 (hurricane/zstock), (tidal wave/figor Zh), (drought/Idiz), 42 (rainforest/NizdamD), 44 (pollution/Ungnoi Lookjeab), (plastic/Stephane Bidouze), 45 (tap/photopixel), (switch/photography firm), 46 (bull/grymold), (bear/Jamen Percy), (leopard/Dennis W Donohue), (eagle/FloridaStock), (spider/gSPlanet), (butterfly/Behling), 47 (shark/Stefan Pilcher), 48 (food background/Peryn22), 56 (grapes/Gina Santa Maria), (cherries/Photoobzor), (melon/Yellow Cat), (pineapple/Maks Narodenko), (pear/Alex Staroseltsev), (fruit salad/Africa Studio), (cabbage/Matin), (garlic/Nattika), (sweetcorn/PaulPaladin), (courgette/Sergeii Alexandr), (lettuce/Maceofoto), (cucumber/Serhiy Kobyakov), (mixed vegetables/Tlkenberg), (mint leaves/Dionisvera), (frozen vegetables/Gts), 58 (tin of crab/Createvil), (peanuts/Ivan Masiuk), (juice/posteriori), (flowers/Kuznetcov\_Konstantin), (fruit/Jinga), (glue/bogdon ianescu), 59 (slice of bread/Janis Smits), (loaf/Ruslan Ivantsoc), (roll/P Maxwell Photography), (sugar/taedong), (paper/Lemalisa), (pens/rvsoft), (cooking oil/Africa Studio), (rice/PinaCub), 64 (bra/foto2rich), (knickers/Ruslan Kudrin), (underpants/gowithstock), (vest/Early Spring), 68 (coughing/wavebreakmedia), (sore throat/Dmytro Zinkevych), (temperature/Ermolaev Alexander), 70 (x-ray/itsmejust), (brain scan/MriMan), (operation/TOWAISTUDIO), (patient/Goren Bogicevic), 73 (sports car/tucamot), (cyclist/Eugene Onischeneko), (ambulance/Jaroslav Kilian), (radio/PunkerbarbyO), 75 (selt belt/antonioidiaz), 80 (campsite/Nick Vakhrukev), 81 (remote hostel/Alxcrs), 90 (casserole/riza), (coal/anat chant), (TV control/gielmichal), (shampoo/Konstantin Faraktinov), (owl/Phaeton Place), (bolt of fabric/Carbaca de Marmore), (comb/Swapan Photography), (shawl/Kosko), 91 (tyre/Peter Gudella), (steel pipe/MC\_Noppadol), (iron bell/CAPTAIN GINI), (statue/Philip Lange), (necklace/George Dan Gil Durma), (medal/Valery Evlakhov), (cardboard box/Seregam), (robot/extraded), (wall/Cynthia Farmer), (fence/Corund), (blanket/RG\_vc), 92 (hammer/diy13), (drill/Topperest), (sewing kit/Irwan Bujang), (strong/xpixel), (rope/Billion Photos), (tape & glue/Lezel), 97 (warning sign/Istimages), (soap/Erk Kaa), (chart/Faima Vector), (diagram/Andrii\_M), (path/Alex Po), (road sign/Srdjan Randelovic), (pasta/bells7), (shoes/Anna Menta), (box/AndyOMan), (cake/Anton van Apseran), 100 (drink machine/Creativan), (eye/Sergey Dubrov), (nose/Asier Romero), (mouth/puhha), (hand/Sofia Zuhuravetc), 102 (smashed window/Review News), 109, 110, 111 (radio/PunkbarbyO), 112 (The Queen/Atlas Pictures), (Nelson Mandela/mark reinstein), (Einstein/Oleg Golovnev), 120 (cat/Ekaterina Kolomeets), 121 (man and woman), (toddlers/kryzhov), 122 (painting/Maraii aiiraM), (landscape/Taviphoto), (still life/Bequest of Stephen C. Clark, 1960/The Metropolitan Museum of Art, New York), (paintbrushes/Pongtada Kurikidcumchorn), 124 (Kathryn Bigelow/FeatureFlash Photo Agency), 125 (theatre/aboikis), 126 (bass guitar/Abramov Valery), (saxophone/AGGUESTA), (cello/Yuriy\_fx), (keyboard/Kuz\_com), (organ/Eddie JordanPhotos), (vinyl record/Alexapicso), (singer/MPH Photos), 127 (editor/goodluz), 132 (ghost/FOTOKITA), 134 (athletes/EvrenKalinbacak), (cycling/Maxisport), (fencing/ALPA PROD), (gymnastics/I T A L O), (weightlifting/CP DC Press), 135 (football team/Natursports), 136 (motor racing driver/ZRYZner), (tennis player/G-Stock Studio), (referee/kivn), (linesman/Paolo Bona), (hockey/COREPIX VOF), (baseball/Aspen Photo), (goalie/wavebreakmedia), (rugby/Marceclling Lopez), (supporters/Motortion Films), 137 (swimming pool/Fariz Abasov), 138 (La Tomatina/Iakov Filimonov), (cherry blossom/SHASAKPRACHUM), (Rio/A.RICARDO), 141 (computer mouse/iva-novi), (magic mouse/Cesare Andrea Ferrari), (mobile charger/vishalshetty), 143 (tablet/BigTunaOnline), 145 (motorbike/Ajay Tvm), 146 (praying/Pro-Stock Studio), (reading/aberCPC), 148 (train), 152 (University/Roger Utting), 154 (halls of residence/Phovoir), (studying/WAYHOME STUDIO), 157 (two women/wavebreakmedia), 158 (recruitment/Gorodenkoff), 160 (interview/wavebreakmedia), (application form/Casper1774Studio), 168 (car/Vershinin89), (woken up/Rawpixel.com), (warning sign/Thaspol Sangsee), (volume/Africa Studio), (waste paper bin/Lightfield Studios), (switch/photographyfirm), 176 (cooking/Asia Images Group), 178 (girl/Teerawit Chankowet), 179 (Boss/BIGANDT.COM), (Sam/doberrona71), (Jake/Marketa Bement), 182 (diary/fizkes), 183 (danger sign/J\_H\_B), (safety glasses/Technicsorn Stocker), (triangle warning sign/Poverty Vector), (guard dogs/Kaspri), (trip sign/HUGS\_ID), (no access/mastersky), 188 (young man/Elzbieta Sekowska), (older man/Lena Evans), 196 (candy/Nikitin Victor), (french fries/Billion Photos), (cell phone/Maxx Studio), (cookies/Olga Sv), (elevator/sirtravelalot), (tap/photopixel), (truck/Andrey Pavlov).

List of spotlight boxes .....	6
Acknowledgements .....	7
Introduction .....	8

### LEARNING

1 Vocabulary learning .....	12
2 Progress and aims .....	14
3 Using an English dictionary .....	16
4 English punctuation .....	18

### PEOPLE

5 The body .....	20
6 Appearance .....	22
7 Character .....	24
8 Feelings and emotions .....	26
9 Personal qualities .....	28
10 Friendship .....	30
11 Families .....	32
12 Marriage and divorce .....	34

### THE WORLD AROUND US

13 Geography .....	36
14 The universe and science .....	38
15 Weather conditions .....	40
16 Climate change .....	42
17 Saving the environment .....	44
18 Animals, insects and birds .....	46

### LANGUAGE FOCUS adjectives and adverbs

19 Adjectives (1) .....	48
20 Adjectives (2): opposites .....	50
21 Adverbs (1): degree and frequency .....	52
22 Adverbs (2): emphasizing and manner .....	54

### DAILY LIFE

23 Fruit, vegetables and herbs .....	56
24 Containers and quantities .....	58
25 Cooking .....	60
26 Shopping .....	62
27 Clothing .....	64
28 Fashion .....	66
29 Illness and accidents .....	68
30 Hospital .....	70

### TRANSPORT AND TRAVEL

31 Roads .....	72
32 Driving .....	74
33 Trains and buses .....	76
34 Air travel .....	78
35 Holidays .....	80

### LANGUAGE FOCUS prepositions

36 Verb + preposition .....	82
37 Noun + preposition .....	84
38 Prepositions in time phrases .....	85
39 Adjective + preposition .....	86
40 Prepositional phrases .....	88

## DESCRIBING THINGS

41 Describing objects .....	90
42 Household tasks .....	92
43 Buildings .....	94
44 How to grow something .....	96
45 Shapes and lines .....	97
46 A painting .....	98
47 The five senses .....	100

## SOCIAL AND POLITICAL ISSUES

48 Crime .....	102
49 The justice system .....	104
50 Health issues .....	106
51 Politics .....	108
52 War and peace .....	110
53 Events in history .....	112
54 Social issues .....	114

## LANGUAGE FOCUS verbs

55 Irregular verbs .....	116
56 Verb + infinitive or <i>-ing</i> form .....	118
57 Using verbs with reflexive pronouns .....	120
58 <i>take</i> .....	121

## MEDIA AND ENTERTAINMENT

59 Art .....	122
60 Films .....	124
61 Theatre .....	125
62 Music .....	126
63 TV and online viewing .....	128
64 Newspapers .....	130
65 Books .....	132
66 Sporting events .....	134
67 Sport: people and places .....	136
68 Festivals .....	138
69 The internet .....	140
70 Email and social media .....	142

## LANGUAGE FOCUS word building

71 Word building: prefixes .....	144
72 Word building: suffixes .....	146
73 Link words .....	148

## STUDY AND WORK

74 School .....	150
75 Academic life .....	152
76 Student life .....	154
77 Describing jobs .....	156
78 Careers .....	158
79 Applying for a job .....	160
80 Finance .....	162
81 Running a business .....	164
82 Marketing .....	166

**LANGUAGE FOCUS**  
phrasal verbs and idioms

83	Phrasal verbs (1): grammatical patterns .....	168
84	Phrasal verbs (2): meaning .....	170
85	Expressions (1) .....	172
86	Expressions (2) .....	174

**LANGUAGE FOCUS**  
social English

87	Likes, dislikes and preferences .....	176
88	Probability .....	178
89	Similarities and differences .....	179
90	Pleasure and annoyance .....	180
91	Making arrangements .....	182
92	Warnings .....	183
93	Opinions .....	184
94	Hopes and plans .....	186
95	Obligation .....	188
96	Asking for permission .....	189

**LANGUAGE FOCUS**  
styles of language

97	Formal and informal English .....	190
98	Write a letter or email .....	192
99	Abbreviations and short forms .....	194
100	American English .....	196
	Vocabulary building .....	198
	Common irregular verbs .....	202
	Answer key .....	205
	Word list .....	237

Title	Unit	Page	Title	Unit	Page
<i>actually</i> .....	94	186	<i>keep</i> .....	57	118
adjective + preposition .....	39	86	<i>lady and gentleman</i> .....	46	98
adjectives ending in <i>-ful</i> and <i>-less</i> (1) .....	20	51	<i>live, alive, living</i> .....	62	127
adjectives ending in <i>-ful</i> and <i>-less</i> (2) .....	72	14	<i>long, wide, deep; length, width, depth</i> .....	67	137
adverbs of manner .....	22	55	<i>market</i> .....	81	165
<i>alone, on your own, lonely</i> .....	8	26	<i>mind</i> .....	85	172
<i>as ... as possible</i> .....	50	107	noun + noun .....	41	91
<i>at last</i> .....	38	85	<i>on earth</i> .....	40	89
<i>be used to (doing) sth and be accustomed to (doing) sth</i> .....	76	154	<i>outdoor(s)/indoor(s)</i> .....	35	80
<i>birth</i> .....	11	33	politics .....	51	108
<i>block</i> .....	43	95	the prefix <i>re-</i> with verbs .....	71	145
<i>can + sense verbs</i> .....	47	100	the prefixes <i>over-</i> and <i>under-</i> .....	81	164
<i>career, job, profession</i> .....	78	158	preposition + <i>-ing</i> form .....	37	84
<i>championship and tournament</i> .....	66	134	prepositions with <i>rise</i> and <i>fall</i> .....	80	163
<i>cheers</i> .....	97	191	<i>quite, fairly, rather, pretty</i> .....	21	53
<i>cinema</i> .....	60	124	reflexive verbs .....	57	120
<i>compare and comparison</i> .....	89	179	religion .....	68	138
<i>competition</i> .....	66	134	<i>repair, fix, mend</i> .....	42	93
<i>completely, absolutely, totally</i> .....	21	52	royal families .....	53	112
compound adjectives with <i>well</i> .....	65	133	separable phrasal verbs .....	83	168
compounds with <i>driving</i> .....	32	75	<i>separate</i> .....	12	35
<i>contain and include</i> .....	2	15	<i>shape and -shaped</i> .....	45	97
<i>conversation, discussion, argument</i> .....	1	13	<i>skill</i> .....	82	166
<i>crazy, mad, stupid</i> .....	7	24	<i>so/neither do/have/can, etc.</i> .....	87	177
degree courses .....	75	152	<i>social media</i> .....	70	143
<i>depth</i> .....	67	137	<i>sore and painful</i> .....	29	68
<i>diet</i> .....	25	60	<i>steal and rob</i> .....	48	103
different meanings .....	84	170	<i>still</i> .....	73	149
different uses of <i>bother</i> .....	90	181	<i>stress and emphasize</i> .....	3	16
<i>discover or invent?</i> .....	14	39	<i>stuff</i> .....	41	90
<i>disease and illness</i> .....	50	106	<i>take/send sth back</i> .....	26	63
<i>effect n and affect v</i> .....	16	42	the suffix <i>-er</i> and <i>player</i> .....	67	136
<i>employment</i> .....	78	159	the suffix <i>-ish</i> .....	6	23
<i>enough</i> .....	30	70	the suffix <i>-ist</i> .....	62	126
<i>evidence and proof</i> .....	49	104	the suffixes <i>-ed</i> and <i>-ing</i> .....	19	49
<i>expect</i> .....	9	29	<i>tin and can</i> .....	24	58
<i>experience and experienced</i> .....	34	79	transitive and intransitive verbs .....	24	59
<i>fashion and fashionable</i> .....	28	66	<i>TV</i> .....	63	129
<i>finance</i> .....	80	162	<i>ugly</i> .....	6	22
<i>formal language</i> .....	79	160	uncountable nouns .....	42	92
<i>further</i> .....	98	192	verb + noun .....	52	111
<i>get (= become)</i> .....	8	27	verb + preposition .....	36	82
getting dressed and wearing clothes .....	27	64	verbs that mean <i>continue</i> .....	74	150
giving opinions .....	93	184	<i>whenever, wherever, whatever</i> .....	17	45
<i>go away</i> .....	85	173	<i>whether (or not)</i> .....	49	104
gradable and ungradable adjectives .....	19	48	word order with <i>like, enjoy, etc.</i> .....	87	176
<i>hardware and software</i> .....	69	140	word stress .....	71	144
<i>journey, trip, travel</i> .....	33	76	<i>worth</i> .....	26	62

## Acknowledgements

Some of the **ABOUT YOU** answers were kindly supplied by the following people:

Elżbieta Rudniak (Poland)

Eva Paulerová (Czech Republic)

Florence Waeni (Kenya)

Franky Lau (China)

Hossein Sarempour (Iran)

Katalin Elekes (Hungary)

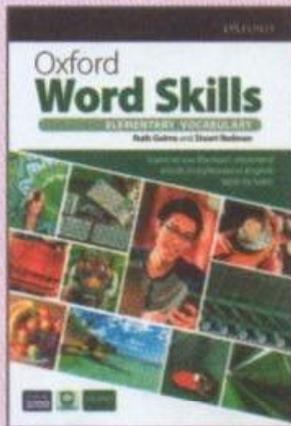
Mallika Ghosh (India)

Michael Finch (South Korea)

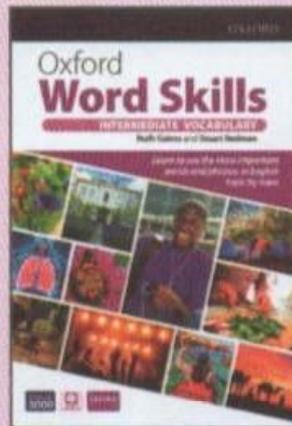
Susana Dichiera (Argentina)

## What is *Oxford Word Skills*?

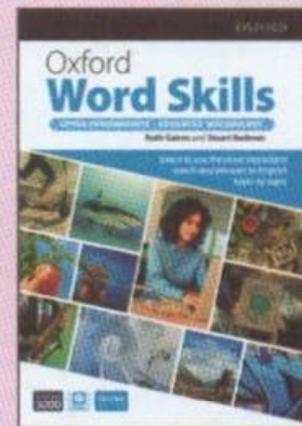
*Oxford Word Skills* is a series of three books for students to learn and practise new vocabulary.



**Level 1:**  
elementary (CEFR levels A1 and A2)



**Level 2:**  
intermediate (CEFR level B1)



**Level 3:**  
upper-intermediate – advanced  
(CEFR levels B2 and C1)

There are over 2,000 new words or phrases in each level, and all of the material can be used in the classroom or for self-study.

## How are the books organized?

Each level contains 100 units of vocabulary presentation and practice, with a unit being 1–2 pages, depending on the size of the topic. New vocabulary is presented in manageable chunks, then immediately followed up with practice exercises, usually on the same page.

The units are grouped within modules containing 3–12 units each. A majority of the modules are topic-based, e.g. Feelings and emotions, Geography, Air travel, but some modules have a language focus, e.g. Prepositional phrases, Using verbs with reflexive pronouns, Phrasal verbs.

At the front of the Intermediate level you will find:

- a list of all the 'spotlight' boxes

At the back of the Intermediate level you will find:

- a list of vocabulary-building tables
- a list of common irregular verbs
- an Answer key for all the exercises
- a Word list of all the vocabulary taught with a reference to the units where each item appears and the CEFR level for words/phrases in the Oxford 3000™/5000™ or Oxford Phrase List™.

*Oxford Word Skills* comes with the *Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary* app, which allows learners to find the meaning of new words in English and provides a pronunciation model for the words. You will find pronunciation exercises throughout the book which refer you to the  to check the correct pronunciation.

## What vocabulary is included?

At Intermediate level, the vocabulary includes:

- a wide range of common topic areas, e.g. People, The world around us, Study and work
- words and phrases needed in social interaction, e.g. Making arrangements, Warnings, Opinions
- areas of lexical grammar, e.g. Verb + infinitive or *-ing* form, Prepositions in time phrases, Word building: prefixes

Throughout the three levels the main focus is on high-frequency vocabulary in everyday spoken English, although the higher levels add more language from different styles of English as well as more figurative usage of language.

The selection of vocabulary at each level is based on frequency and usefulness, with the foundation being the Oxford 3000. This is a list of 3,000 words identified by the Oxford University Press ELT Dictionaries team as the most important words for learners of English. These items have been divided into four levels in accordance with the CEFR (A1, A2, B1 and B2).

- The Elementary level includes many items from A1, but with the majority of items at A2 level.
- The Intermediate level has a focus on B1 items from the Oxford 3000, as well as recycling some items from the A2 level, and it also includes some B2 items.
- The Upper-Intermediate – Advanced level concentrates on B2 items from the Oxford 3000, but also includes C1 items from the Oxford 5000 word list (which includes both additional B2 items and C1 words). It is not within the scope of this series to teach C2 items, as these correspond more closely to lexical needs at proficiency level.

The Oxford 3000/5000 word lists are supplemented by the Oxford Phrase List, which contains just under 1,000 CEFR-levelled phrases considered important for students at each level. The Intermediate word list also draws on topic lists from OUP's learner's dictionaries, which identify key vocabulary items across a range of 60 topics. By using the Oxford 3000 alongside the topic lists, we have been able to focus on high-frequency vocabulary, but also to include vocabulary items that may not have a high frequency overall, but will have great value in particular contexts, e.g. *turnover* and *inflation* in finance, and *selfie* and *profile* in social media. By using the Oxford Phrase List, we have also been able to ensure the best coverage of both words and phrases for each level.



We have taken great care to ensure that learners will be able to understand the meaning of all the new words and phrases by supplying a clear illustration, a simple definition, or an example of each word or phrase in use. Learners should be aware that many English words have more than one meaning. They should refer to the *Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary*  for information on other meanings.

## To the teacher

### How can I use the material in the classroom?

New vocabulary is presented through:

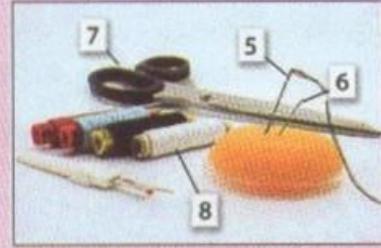
- **visuals**



You use a **hammer**<sup>1</sup> to **bang** a **nail**<sup>2</sup> into the wall to **hang** a picture on.



You use a **drill**<sup>3</sup> to make a **hole**<sup>4</sup>. A hammer and drill are **tools**.



You use a **needle**<sup>5</sup>, **pins**<sup>6</sup>, **scissors**<sup>7</sup> and **cotton**<sup>8</sup> when you're **sewing**.

- **tables**

Crime	Meaning	Verb	Criminal (= a person who commits a crime)
theft	taking sth which belongs to sb else without permission	<i>He steals cars then sells them.</i>	thief (pl thieves)
robbery	stealing from a person or place, often using violence	<i>Two men were planning to rob the bank.</i>	robber

- **different types of text**

### B Points of view

#### Yes, no or sometimes?

- I have the same **point of view** on things as my parents.
- I enjoy **expressing my opinion** online.
- I'm **against** freedom of speech in **some cases**.
- I'm **prepared to** admit when I **have no idea** about a particular **topic**.
- There are some subjects I have **fixed** ideas about, and I'm not **willing** to discuss.
- I sometimes **change my mind** when I'm

#### GLOSSARY

<b>point of view</b>	the particular opinion or attitude that sb has about sth
<b>express</b>	tell or show what you are thinking by words, looks or action: <b>express your opinions/feelings</b>
<b>be against sth</b>	If you <b>are against sth</b> , you do not agree with it. <b>or be in favour (of sth)</b>
<b>in some cases</b>	in some situations
<b>prepared to do sth</b>	happy to do sth <b>syn willing to do sth</b>
<b>have no idea (about sth) inf</b>	used to emphasize that you do not know sth
<b>topic</b>	a subject that you talk, write or learn about

Visuals provide a clear guide to meaning; the tables and texts show words used in natural sentences, with the meaning explained in a glossary. As the input in most sections occupies a page and does not usually exceed 15 items, it is very straightforward to use in the classroom. Here is a procedure you could follow:

- Students study the visuals or written text in the presentation for at least ten minutes. This allows time for them to reinforce the connection between the visual input and the meanings, or to read through the glossary carefully to check the meaning of the new items in the presentation sentences, dialogue or extended text. Tell students to look at the extra words included in the **glossary** (opposites, synonyms, derivatives, collocations and further examples) as this will help them to expand their vocabulary with minimal effort in many cases. It is also important to look at the **spotlight** boxes. This is an additional feature which picks out an item or items of particular value.

For example:

**SPOTLIGHT** degree courses

Universities give **degrees** to students who complete special courses. In the UK these are normally courses of at least three years, and up to five years for subjects such as medicine. You **do a degree** or **study for a degree**.

■ *I'm **doing a degree** in law.* ■ *My sister is **studying for a degree** in English.*

If you go on to do a higher degree, e.g. a Masters or a PhD, that is called a **postgraduate degree**. A student is then a **postgraduate** (ALSO *inf postgrad*).

- While students are working through the presentation, you can answer any questions they may have about the new vocabulary. This is also an opportunity to provide a pronunciation model for your students to repeat; otherwise the presentation stage is going to be a long silent phase. You might want to read a text aloud, or get students to read sections of it.
- Students can move on to the first exercise, which they can check for themselves using the Answer key, or you can go over the answers with the whole class. The latter is probably a better approach, as you can also discuss why they might have arrived at a wrong answer and focus on or practise pronunciation. It is sensible to work through the exercises chronologically, as they generally progress from receptive practice to controlled productive practice, and then quite often to freer productive practice in the **ABOUT YOU** / **ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY** activities.
- When you are satisfied with their answers to the first exercise, you can ask students to go on to further exercises while you monitor them as they work individually or in pairs, assisting where necessary. You will find that many of the exercises, once done – e.g. sentence completion, and particularly dialogue completion – lend themselves to controlled speaking practice. Students can practise dialogues in pairs or take it in turns to read out complete sentences to each other.
-  **TEST YOURSELF** When they have completed the written exercises, students can test themselves on the new vocabulary. The material has been designed so that students can cover the new words beneath a picture (using a piece of paper, etc.) while they look at the visuals and test themselves. They can do the same with some of the tables and glossaries: cover the new vocabulary and look at the meaning, or vice versa. This is a simple, quick and easy way for learners to test themselves over and over again, so there is no pressure on you to keep searching for different exercises. It is also useful to demonstrate this so that students can revise vocabulary in their own time using this 'cover and check' approach.
- The headings **ABOUT YOU** or **ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY** signal personalized exercises which give learners an opportunity to use the new vocabulary in a freer way, and within the context of their own lives. Students can write answers to these exercises, but they also make ideal pairwork activities in which learners can practise their spoken English while using the new vocabulary. If you use these as speaking activities, students could then write their answers (or their partner's answers) as follow-up. In the Answer key, possible answers for these activities are provided by both native speakers and proficient non-native speakers from different parts of the world. This may be of particular value to a self-study learner, as a way of comparing answers.

**How can students use the material on their own?**

The material has been designed so that it can be used effectively both in the classroom or by learners working alone. If you want your learners to use the material for self-study, you can recommend that they use the book alongside the , as it gives them a pronunciation model for items of vocabulary. For self-study learners in particular, it is also a good idea to start with the first module on the subject of learning. They can check their answers to exercises using the Answer key, and test themselves using the 'cover and check' procedure explained above. They can also select the topics that interest them, or the topics where they most need to expand their vocabulary.

## A Help with reading

### ADVICE FOR READING

When you're reading in a foreign language, you should first try to understand the **basic** meaning of the text. You will meet vocabulary you don't **recognize**, but you can often **go through** the text again later to look at this. If so, try this:

- **Identify** the new words and phrases which seem to be important. Try to **guess** the meaning from the **context**, and/or use a dictionary.
- **Keep a record** of the words in a notebook, and if possible write down any special information. For example, is the word **formal** or **informal**? Is it followed by a particular preposition?
- Write a **translation** if you think it helps; sometimes it isn't necessary.

### GLOSSARY

<b>foreign</b>	from a country that is not your own. A person from another country is a <b>foreigner</b> .
<b>basic</b>	most important and necessary
<b>recognize</b>	know what sth is or who sb is because you have seen or heard them before
<b>go through sth</b>	read sth carefully from beginning to end
<b>identify</b>	recognize and decide what sth is
<b>guess</b>	give an answer to sth without being sure of the facts <b>have a guess</b> <i>n</i>
<b>context</b>	the words before and after a new word/phrase that help you to understand the meaning
<b>keep a record of sth</b>	write sth down to help you remember it
<b>formal</b>	We use <b>formal</b> language to appear serious or official, or in some situations where we don't know people well. <b>OPP informal</b>
<b>translation</b>	text that has been changed from one language into another <b>translate</b> <i>v</i>

### 1 Replace the underlined words with a single word that has a similar meaning.

- I understood the most important and necessary ideas. basic
- We couldn't recognize and decide what language they were speaking. .....
- I think he was using very serious and official language. .....
- He's from another country. .....
- You can guess the meaning from the words before and after the new word. .....
- There was a text that I had to change from one language into another. .....
- I replied without really knowing the answer. .....

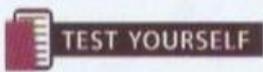
### 2 Complete the dialogues.

- ▶ Is 'How do you do' formal .....? ~ Yes, we usually just say *hello*.
- Did you understand the exercise the first time? ~ No, but we ..... it again later.
  - Did you understand everything? ~ No, but I got the ..... meaning.
  - Did you ..... all the students in the photo? ~ No, I didn't know one or two of them.
  - Were there many ..... in the group? ~ No, the people were all from this country.
  - Is there a difference between *hello* and *hi*? ~ Yeah, *hi* is more .....
  - Did you know the answer? ~ No, I had a .....

### 3 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ When you read a text in English, do you usually go through ..... it a second time? **ABOUT YOU**
- Do you often try to guess the meaning of new words from the .....? .....
  - Do you keep a ..... of new words in a notebook? .....
  - Do you write down the meaning in English, or do you write a .....? .....
  - Do you make a note of special information? For example, a note about the pronunciation, or whether a word is formal or .....? .....
  - Do you often ..... a word without being able to remember the meaning? .....

### 4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 3, or talk to another student.



## B Help with speaking and listening

- In a **conversation** in English, ask people to **repeat** words you don't understand, and **explain** the meaning if necessary.
- **Repetition** of new words using the **APP** will help you to remember them, and how to **pronounce** them.
- One **function** of the app is to help you pronounce new words, and repetition of these words will help you to remember them.
- Look for **opportunities** to practise new vocabulary. Don't be afraid to **experiment with** language, and don't worry about **making mistakes**.
- It's important to **revise** new vocabulary. If not, you may forget it quite quickly.
- Remember: there isn't just one correct **method** of learning vocabulary. Do what **works** for you.

### GLOSSARY

<b>repeat</b>	say sth again <b>repetition</b> <i>n</i>
<b>explain</b>	tell sb sth in a way that makes it clear or easy to understand <b>explanation</b> <i>n</i>
<b>pronounce</b>	make the sound of a word or letter <b>pronunciation</b> <i>n</i>
<b>function</b>	the purpose or job that sth is designed to do
<b>opportunity</b>	a time when it is possible to do sth that you want to do <b>SYN chance</b>
<b>experiment with sth</b>	try sth to see what result it has
<b>make mistakes</b>	(NOT <i>do mistakes</i> )
<b>revise</b>	study sth again <b>do revision</b> <i>n</i>
<b>method</b>	a way of doing sth
<b>work</b>	get or have the result you want: <i>I tried speaking slowly but it didn't work.</i>

### SPOTLIGHT *conversation, discussion, argument*

A **conversation** is a talk between two or more people.  
A **discussion about something** is when you talk about something seriously. **discuss** *v*.  
An **argument** is a discussion in which people disagree, often angrily. **argue** *v*

5 Write the noun forms, then underline the main stress on both verbs and nouns. Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

- |             |                   |           |       |
|-------------|-------------------|-----------|-------|
| ▶ discuss   | <u>discussion</u> | 3 explain | ..... |
| 1 repeat    | .....             | 4 revise  | ..... |
| 2 pronounce | .....             | 5 argue   | ..... |

6 Circle the correct answer.

- ▶ An argument is a conversation in which people **agree** / **disagree**.
- 1 If you revise something, you **say it again** / **study it again**.
  - 2 If something works, it is **successful** / **difficult**.
  - 3 If you experiment with something, you **try to do something** / **find something**.
  - 4 You can **do** / **make** a mistake.
  - 5 We had a **conversation** / **discussion** about politics in class yesterday. It got quite serious.
  - 6 A method is **an opportunity to do something** / **a way of doing something**.
  - 7 If you explain something, you make it easy to **say** / **understand**.
  - 8 If you make a mistake, you get something **wrong** / **right**.
  - 9 One **function** / **method** of a dictionary is to help you with the meanings of words.

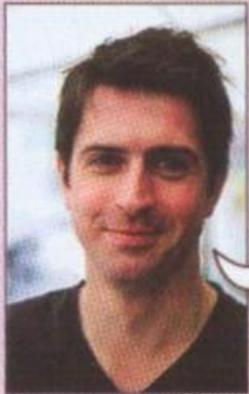
7 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ We had a conversation on the phone last night.
- 1 I never know how to ..... the word **necessary**. Pronunciation is difficult.
  - 2 My brother's got an ..... to work in Paris next year. Lucky him.
  - 3 I have to do some ..... for my exam tomorrow.
  - 4 I used a new method for cooking the rice and it really ..... You must try it.
  - 5 Do you think we'll have a ..... to revise before we take the test?
  - 6 You won't know if you can use new words until you ..... with them.
  - 7 Does ..... help you to remember new words?
  - 8 I often have ..... with my parents. We disagree about most things.



### TEST YOURSELF

## A Making progress



Felipe from Argentina

When I started learning English, I was very keen and motivated, but I found it difficult to pronounce English words, and sometimes people couldn't understand me. After a while my pronunciation got better, and I was able to express basic ideas quite effectively. It was obvious that I was improving, and that was very encouraging. But at intermediate level, my progress slowed down. There were so many new words and phrases I didn't know. I think I was also more aware of my mistakes, which was good - but also frustrating.

### GLOSSARY

<b>keen</b>	interested in sth and wanting to do it: <i>She's <b>keen</b> to learn.</i>
<b>motivated</b>	If you are <b>motivated (to do sth)</b> , you really want to do sth. <b>motivation</b> <i>n</i>
<b>find it difficult to (do sth)</b>	be difficult for sb (to do sth)
<b>after a while</b>	after a period of time
<b>get better</b>	become better <b>SYN improve</b> <i>v</i> , <b>improvement</b> <i>n</i>
<b>express effectively</b>	say or show what you think or feel in a way that gives you the result you want <b>effective</b> <i>adj</i>
<b>obvious</b>	easy to see and understand <b>SYN clear; obviously, clearly</b> <i>adv</i>
<b>encouraging</b>	If sth/sb is <b>encouraging</b> , they give you hope and make you want to continue. <b>encourage</b> <i>v</i>
<b>slow down</b>	start to go more slowly
<b>be aware of sth</b>	If you <b>are aware of sth</b> , you know about it.
<b>frustrating</b>	making you angry because you cannot be successful at sth you want to do <b>frustration</b> <i>n</i>

1 Is the pronunciation of the underlined sounds the same or different? Write S or D. Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

- ▶ find / while S
- 1 effective / difficult ..... 3 encourage / frustrating ..... 5 better / obvious .....
- 2 slow down / improve ..... 4 slow down / motivate ..... 6 aware / after .....

2 Complete the sentences using the correct form of the word in capitals.

- ▶ It's frustrating when you can't understand. FRUSTRATION
- 1 My dad was very ..... ENCOURAGE
- 2 I think my English is ..... IMPROVEMENT
- 3 He is ..... keen to do well. OBVIOUS
- 4 She did the work very ..... EFFECTIVE
- 5 He doesn't have much ..... MOTIVATED
- 6 She is ..... very intelligent. CLEAR

3 Complete the sentences with a word or phrase from the box.

aware    encouraging    slowing down    express    effective  
 keen    getting better    obviously ✓    difficult    while

### ABOUT YOU

- ▶ Repeating words obviously helps me to remember them. ....
- 1 I worried about my mistakes, but after a ..... I stopped. ....
- 2 At first I made good progress, but now I'm ..... . ....
- 3 I'm not ..... of making mistakes when I speak, but I'm sure I make lots. ....
- 4 I think I can ..... things better now than I could a year ago. ....
- 5 I listen to songs in English. I think that's an ..... way to learn. ....
- 6 I find it very ..... to concentrate when I'm learning English. ....
- 7 I'm very ..... to read books in English; it will be good for me. ....
- 8 It's very ..... when people tell me my English is ..... . ....

4 **ABOUT YOU** Are the sentences in Exercise 3 true for you? Write your answers, or talk to another student.



## B Future goals

### What are your learning goals?

Felipe Ramirez

**VOCABULARY** I can understand most native speakers of English, but my vocabulary needs to expand so that I can understand a wide range of subjects, and express more complex ideas.

**SPEAKING** I'd like to be more fluent when I'm speaking, and be able to talk about things in more detail. And I need to get better at using language that is suitable for the situation.

**READING** I can understand general things, but to achieve my aims I need to be able to read texts that are to do with my work, and some of these contain quite difficult language.

### GLOSSARY

<b>goal</b>	sth you want to be able to do in the future <b>SYN</b> aim
<b>native speaker</b>	sb who speaks a language as their first language and has not learnt it as a foreign language. A <b>native</b> is a person who was born in a particular place: <b>a native of New York</b>
<b>expand</b>	become bigger or make sth bigger
<b>a (wide) range (of sth)</b>	a (large) number of different things
<b>complex</b>	having a lot of details that make sth difficult to understand
<b>fluent</b>	able to speak easily and well <b>fluently</b> <i>adv</i>
<b>in detail</b>	fully and including a lot of information
<b>suitable</b>	right for sth or sb <b>OPP</b> unsuitable
<b>achieve</b>	do or finish sth well after trying hard <b>achievement</b> <i>n</i>
<b>be to do with sth/sb</b>	be connected with sth/sb

### SPOTLIGHT *contain and include*

**Contain and include** can have the same meaning.

- The dictionary **contains/includes** lots of important information. Sometimes we can only use one of the verbs.
- The box **contains** books. (= There are books **inside** the box.)
- The price of the book **includes** the app. (= The app is **one part** of the price.)

### 5 Replace the underlined word(s) with a word or words with a similar meaning.

Be careful with tenses.

- ▶ It was a success and he did well.
- 1 I speak Russian very well.
- 2 The text contains lots of new words.
- 3 It isn't connected to my work.
- 4 The story is difficult to understand.
- 5 He described it with lots of information.
- 6 That word isn't really right here.
- 7 My goal is to get to university.
- 8 The business got bigger.
- 9 He studies a lot of different subjects.

an achievement  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

### 6 Complete the dialogues with a suitable word.

- ▶ Did you explain it fully? ~ Yes, I described it in detail.
- 1 Are you planning to study English at university? ~ Yes, that's my \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 It wasn't the right thing to say. ~ No, I agree, it was \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 Is your English teacher from Spain? ~ No, she's British. She's a \_\_\_\_\_ speaker of English.
- 4 Was that English book useful? ~ Yes, it \_\_\_\_\_ lots of new words.
- 5 Is her vocabulary getting bigger? ~ Yes, it's definitely \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 Is the English course expensive? ~ Yes, but the price \_\_\_\_\_ all the books you need.
- 7 Can you do English at an evening college? ~ Yes, there's a wide \_\_\_\_\_ of courses.
- 8 Has she done well? ~ Yes, she has \_\_\_\_\_ everything she wanted to do.
- 9 Is English important for Joe? ~ Yes, it's to \_\_\_\_\_ with his job. He needs to speak English.
- 10 Does Marta speak English well now? ~ Yes, she's a very \_\_\_\_\_ speaker.

### 7 ABOUT YOU Write down your learning goals, or talk to another student.



# 3 Using an English dictionary

How can a learner's dictionary help you? These examples are from the *Oxford Wordpower Dictionary*.

Definitions are in simple English.  
Different meanings of a word are given.

Examples are provided to show how the word is used.

The dictionary can help you to avoid making mistakes, and gives help with grammar.

Idioms and phrasal verbs are at the end of the entry.

Phonetic symbols help with pronunciation.  
You can find out which syllable is stressed.

**win** /wɪn/ verb (winning; pt, pp won /wɒn/) **1** [I,T] to be the best, first or strongest in a race, game, competition, etc: *to win a game/match/championship* • *I never win at table tennis.* • *Which party do you think will win the next election?* **2** [T] to get money, a prize, etc. as a result of success in a competition, race, etc: *We won a trip to Australia.* • *Who won the gold medal?* • *He won the jackpot in the lottery.*

**HELP** Note that we **earn** (not **win**) money at our job: *I earn £25 000 a year.*

**IDM** **you can't win** (informal) there is no way of being completely successful or of pleasing everyone: *Whatever you do you will upset somebody. You can't win.*

**win/lose the toss** ⇨ **toss**

**PHRV** **win sb over/round (to sth)** to persuade sb to support or agree with you: *They're against the proposal at the moment, but I'm sure we can win them over.*

**mistake**<sup>1</sup> /mɪ'steɪk/ noun [C] something that you think or do that is wrong: *Try not to **make any mistakes** in your essays.* • *a spelling **mistake*** • *It was a big **mistake** to trust her.* • *I **made the mistake** of giving him my address.*

**IDM** **by mistake** as a result of being careless: *The terrorists shot the wrong man **by mistake**.*

**OTHER WORDS FOR**

**mistake**

Error is more formal than mistake: *a computing error. When you **make a mistake** you do sth wrong: I got the answer wrong.* • *You must have the wrong number (= on the phone).* Fault indicates who is responsible for sth bad: *The accident wasn't my fault. The other driver pulled out in front of me. Fault is also used to describe a problem or weakness that sb/sth has: a technical fault.*

Words that are often used together are given in bold.

It can teach you related words: this helps you build your vocabulary and choose the correct word for your needs.

It helps you with style: for instance, formal, informal, slang, etc.

**guy** /ɡaɪ/ noun **1** [C] (informal) a man or a boy: *He's a nice guy.* **2** guys [pl] (informal) used when speaking to a group of people of either sex: *What do you guys want to eat tonight?*

**SPOTLIGHT** stress and emphasize

Both verbs mean to say a syllable, word or phrase with extra loudness. The related nouns are **stress (on sth)** and **emphasis (on sth)**.

▪ Don't **emphasize** every word. The **stress** is on the first syllable.

**GLOSSARY**

<b>definition</b>	an exact statement of what a word or phrase means <b>define</b> v	<b>syllable</b>	a part of a word which contains a vowel sound. Go has one <b>syllable</b> , and prefer has two.
<b>provide</b>	give sth to sb or make sth available for sb	<b>related (to sth)</b>	connected to sth
<b>avoid doing sth</b>	If you <b>avoid</b> doing sth, you try not to do it.	<b>build</b>	make sth bigger; increase sth
<b>idiom</b>	a group of words with a special meaning	<b>style</b>	the way sth is written or spoken, e.g. <i>informal, formal</i>
<b>entry</b>	one item that is written in a dictionary, list, etc. There are three dictionary <b>entries</b> on this page.	<b>for instance</b>	<b>SYN for example</b>
<b>symbol</b>	a letter, number or sign that has a particular meaning, e.g. /ʃ/ is pronounced 'sh'.	<b>slang</b>	very informal words or phrases used in spoken language

1 Complete the words.

- ▶ d e f i n e  
 1 s \_\_\_ mb \_\_\_ l  
 2 st \_\_\_ l \_\_\_  
 3 sl \_\_\_ \_\_\_  
 4 em \_\_\_ \_\_\_ asize

- 5 id \_\_\_ \_\_\_  
 6 s \_\_\_ ll \_\_\_ bl \_\_\_  
 7 em \_\_\_ \_\_\_ asi \_\_\_  
 8 f \_\_\_ r \_\_\_ st \_\_\_ ce  
 9 d \_\_\_ f \_\_\_ n \_\_\_ t \_\_\_ n

2 Is the meaning the same or different? Write S or D.

- ▶ Does he use a lot of slang? / Does he use a lot of idioms? D  
 1 It's possible to increase your vocabulary. / It's possible to build your vocabulary. ....  
 2 Is that symbol correct? / Is that definition correct? ....  
 3 It gives words that are connected. / It gives words that are related. ....  
 4 The city is fantastic: for example, the buildings, the parks, the people, etc. /  
 The city is fantastic: for instance, the buildings, the parks, the people, etc. ....  
 5 Can you avoid mistakes? / Can you define mistakes? ....  
 6 Is that formal? / Is that slang? ....  
 7 They always stress that syllable. / They always emphasize that syllable. ....  
 8 It doesn't give all the answers. / It doesn't provide all the answers. ....

3 Complete the sentences with a word from the box.

symbols	avoid	related	entry ✓	definitions	syllable	define
instance	stress	idiom	provide	build	entry	

- ▶ In a dictionary, *foreigner* comes after the entry for *foreign*.  
 1 Dictionaries have many uses: for \_\_\_\_\_, to find out the meaning, check pronunciation, etc.  
 2 This dictionary has clear \_\_\_\_\_ which are easy to understand.  
 3 Some dictionaries can help you \_\_\_\_\_ your vocabulary if they \_\_\_\_\_ synonyms and opposites, or other \_\_\_\_\_ words.  
 4 A dictionary gives you grammar information so that you can \_\_\_\_\_ making mistakes.  
 5 You can check the pronunciation of any word in the dictionary by looking at the phonetic \_\_\_\_\_ and noticing which \_\_\_\_\_ is stressed.  
 6 *Good luck!* is given as an \_\_\_\_\_ in the dictionary, at the end of the \_\_\_\_\_ for *luck*.  
 7 Dictionaries for foreign learners \_\_\_\_\_ words in simple English.  
 8 In the word *emphasize*, the \_\_\_\_\_ is on the first syllable.

4 Look at the dictionary entries on page 16. Answer the questions.

- ▶ Which syllable is stressed in *mistake*? The second syllable.  
 1 Which related words are given for *mistake*? \_\_\_\_\_  
 2 How many definitions are there in the entry for *win*? \_\_\_\_\_  
 3 What style is the idiom *You can't win*? \_\_\_\_\_  
 4 Is *guy* a slang word? \_\_\_\_\_  
 5 Which phonetic symbols are given for *guy*? \_\_\_\_\_  
 6 What's the second definition of *guy*? \_\_\_\_\_

5 Are these sentences correct? Write Yes or No. Use the dictionary entries to correct any wrong answers.

- 1 a She turned left by a mistake. ....  
 b I haven't got the keys, but it's not my fault; Jo lost them. ....  
 2 a We're hoping to win a medal for skiing in the Olympics. ....  
 b My dad wins a lot of money in his job. ....  
 3 a There are a couple of guys at the door. Who are they? ....  
 b I like Amelie: she's a funny guy. ....

TEST YOURSELF



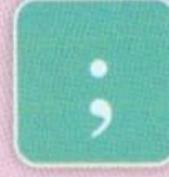
1 full stop



2 comma



3 colon



4 semicolon



5 apostrophe



6 question mark



7 slash



8 brackets



9 dash



10 exclamation mark



11 hyphen



12 quotation marks

### Some important punctuation rules

A **full stop** is used at the end of a sentence that is not a question or an exclamation, and is sometimes used in **abbreviations**. Each new sentence must begin with a **capital letter**.

A **comma** in writing is like a **pause** in speech. It is used:

- to **separate** parts of a sentence, e.g. *After we left, someone tried to phone us.*
- often between adjectives, e.g. *He bought a powerful, expensive car.*
- to separate words in a **list**, though it is usually **omitted** before *and*, e.g. *I went to France, Germany, Italy and Spain.*
- when words or phrases **interrupt** the normal order of a sentence, e.g. *I decided, however, that I needed something to eat first.*

A **colon** is often used to introduce **further details** such as an explanation or a list, e.g. *The shop is full of antiques: tables, chairs, wardrobes, mirrors and so on.*

A **semicolon** is sometimes used in formal writing **instead of** a full stop when two sentences are very closely **connected**. It is also used to separate two main clauses, e.g. *I went round this morning; nobody was there.* These are often clauses not **joined** by a link word **such as** *and* or *but*.

**Apostrophes** show where we have **left letters out** of a word, e.g. *I'm* = I am; *don't* = do not; *I'd* = I would OR I had. They are also used to show that something belongs to somebody or something, e.g. *Mark's car* = the car belonging to Mark; *the children's room*.

### GLOSSARY

<b>abbreviation</b>	a short form of a word: <i>TV is an abbreviation for television.</i>	<b>interrupt</b>	stop sth or sb so that it or they cannot continue
<b>capital letter</b>	A B C are <b>capital letters</b> ; a b c are small letters.	<b>further</b>	more, extra: <i>Do you have any further questions?</i>
<b>pause</b>	a short period of time when sb stops talking	<b>details</b>	small pieces of information about sth
<b>separate</b>	keep people or things away from each other	<b>instead of sb/sth</b>	in the place of sb/sth
<b>list</b>	a series of names, items, or numbers: <i>a shopping list, a list of countries</i>	<b>connect</b>	put two or more things together <b>SYN join</b>
<b>omit formal</b>	If you <b>omit</b> sth, you don't include it. <b>SYN leave sth out</b>	<b>such as</b>	You use <b>such as</b> to introduce an example. <b>SYN like</b>

1 Complete the words.

- |                  |                       |
|------------------|-----------------------|
| ▶ com <u>m a</u> | 4 bra _____           |
| 1 full s _____   | 5 semi- _____         |
| 2 col _____      | 6 excla _____ m _____ |
| 3 hyp _____      | 7 apo _____           |

2 What punctuation is used in 1-8 below? You don't need to repeat *full stop* each time.

- ▶ We went home early. full stop
- 1 She had beautiful, long hair. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 2 What are you doing? \_\_\_\_\_
  - 3 Congratulations! \_\_\_\_\_
  - 4 It's too late. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 5 Breakfast was incredible: fruit, eggs, toast and cheese! \_\_\_\_\_
  - 6 Someone (not me) left the door open. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 7 It was only a five-minute walk – he still took a taxi. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 8 'It's only me,' he said. \_\_\_\_\_

3 Underline the main stress in these words. Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

- |                  |              |                 |                 |
|------------------|--------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| ▶ <u>connect</u> | 3 apostrophe | 6 separate      | 9 question mark |
| 1 details        | 4 omit       | 7 connect       | 10 abbreviation |
| 2 instead        | 5 interrupt  | 8 shopping list | 11 exclamation  |

4 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ An **abbreviation** is a short form of a word.
- 1 A **pause** is a short period of time when somebody stops \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 2 If you give **details** of something, you give more \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 3 **Omit** and **leave out** have a similar meaning, but **omit** is more \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 4 **Like** and **such as** can both be used to introduce an \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 5 If you **interrupt** a conversation, you \_\_\_\_\_ it.
  - 6 If you **connect** something, you put two or more things \_\_\_\_\_.

5 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ Sentences have to begin with a capital letter.
- 1 I wrote a \_\_\_\_\_ of irregular verbs in my notebook.
  - 2 I would use this dictionary \_\_\_\_\_ of the other one; it's much better.
  - 3 We often use **and** or **but** to \_\_\_\_\_ two parts of a sentence.
  - 4 In this application form, you have to give \_\_\_\_\_ of your work experience.
  - 5 **Prep.** is an \_\_\_\_\_ for **preposition**.
  - 6 You need to use more adjectives \_\_\_\_\_ as **beautiful** and **attractive**.
  - 7 The teacher said we can \_\_\_\_\_ out Exercise 5 and go on to Exercise 6.
  - 8 You can use brackets to \_\_\_\_\_ information from the rest of the sentence.
  - 9 The director had to \_\_\_\_\_ the lesson to tell us to leave the building quickly.
  - 10 I always write a \_\_\_\_\_ list when I buy food.

6 What punctuation is missing, and where?

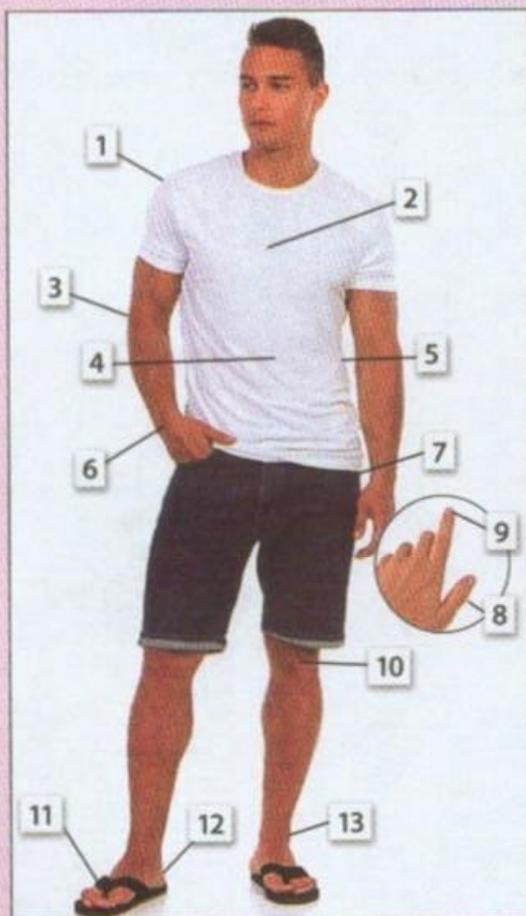
- ▶ We live there. A full stop is missing at the end of the sentence.
- 1 she works in Bristol. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 2 He's a tall thin boy. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 3 The book is *in on* the table. Which is correct? \_\_\_\_\_
  - 4 We have two choices stay here and wait, or go and look for them. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 5 This is my boyfriends watch. \_\_\_\_\_
  - 6 After that fortunately we had no more problems. \_\_\_\_\_



TEST YOURSELF

A Parts of the body

- 1 shoulder
- 2 chest
- 3 elbow
- 4 stomach
- 5 waist
- 6 wrist
- 7 hip
- 8 thumb
- 9 fingernail
- 10 knee
- 11 toe
- 12 heel
- 13 ankle
- 14 eyebrow
- 15 neck
- 16 chin
- 17 lip
- 18 throat (inside)
- 19 tongue



1 Is the pronunciation of the underlined sounds the same or different? Write S or D.

Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.

- ▶ waist / nail      S      3 shoulder / throat      .....
- 1 elbow / eybrow      .....
- 2 elbow / toe      .....
- 4 stomach / chest      .....
- 5 thumb / tongue      .....
- 6 waist / wrist      .....
- 7 stomach / thumb      .....

2 Complete the words.

- ▶ thr o a t
- 1 kn \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 l \_\_\_\_\_ p \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 t \_\_\_\_\_ g \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 h \_\_\_\_\_ s \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 f \_\_\_\_\_ g \_\_\_\_\_ n \_\_\_\_\_ l \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 ey \_\_\_\_\_ w \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 sh \_\_\_\_\_ d \_\_\_\_\_

3 What's the answer?

- ▶ Your mouth has two of these.      lips .....
- 1 You have one of these at the end of each finger.      .....
- 2 You have five of these at the end of each foot.      .....
- 3 You have four fingers, plus one of these on each hand.      .....
- 4 You often wear a watch on this.      .....
- 5 You can see this if you open your mouth.      .....
- 6 It connects your head to your body.      .....
- 7 It connects your leg to your foot.      .....
- 8 It's at the back of your foot.      .....
- 9 It's where men can grow a beard.      .....
- 10 You can rest your arms on a table on these.      .....
- 11 Food goes down through here when you eat.      .....
- 12 And then food goes into here.      .....

TEST YOURSELF

## B Using the body



wave



pour



kick



kiss



fold



sweep *pt/pp swept*



breathe



bite *pt bit pp bitten*



balance



roll



clap



bend *pt/pp bent*

### 4 Do you do these things with your mouth or your hands?

► breathe mouth

- 1 roll \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 kiss \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 fold \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 wave \_\_\_\_\_

- 5 pour \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 bite \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 sweep \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 clap \_\_\_\_\_

### 5 Match 1-6 with a-g.

- roll e
- 1 bend \_\_\_\_\_
  - 2 wave \_\_\_\_\_
  - 3 kiss \_\_\_\_\_
  - 4 bite \_\_\_\_\_
  - 5 fold \_\_\_\_\_
  - 6 clap \_\_\_\_\_

- a to a friend
- b into an apple
- c your hands together
- d clothes
- e a ball ✓
- f your boyfriend/girlfriend
- g your knee

### 6 Complete the sentences.

- I waved \_\_\_\_\_ to them from the balcony, but they didn't see me.
- 1 You have to \_\_\_\_\_ the piece of paper, then put it in the envelope.
  - 2 She \_\_\_\_\_ boiling water into the coffee pot.
  - 3 After my accident, I couldn't \_\_\_\_\_ my arm for three weeks.
  - 4 When I brush my teeth, I try to \_\_\_\_\_ on one leg at the same time – it's not easy.
  - 5 The suitcase had wheels, so luckily I was able to \_\_\_\_\_ it through the airport.
  - 6 The talk was so good that at the end everyone stood up and \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 7 My yoga teacher told us to \_\_\_\_\_ very slowly and deeply to help us relax.
  - 8 I \_\_\_\_\_ the floor every day.
  - 9 The dog \_\_\_\_\_ me when I tried to take its food away. It was very painful.
  - 10 The passenger in the seat behind me kept \_\_\_\_\_ my seat. I had to ask him to stop.

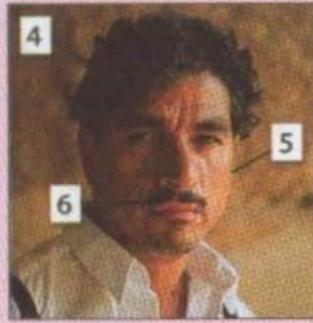


TEST YOURSELF

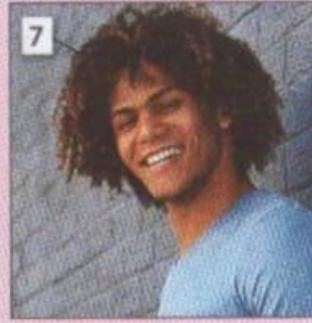
## A Male appearance



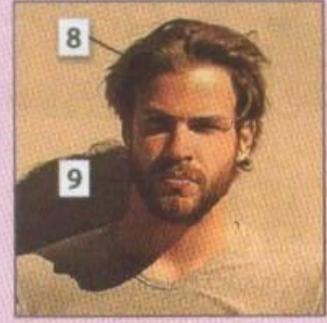
1 He's bald<sup>1</sup>, with broad shoulders<sup>2</sup> and tattoos<sup>3</sup>. His general appearance is quite ugly.



2 Jed's got wavy<sup>4</sup> hair, dark skin<sup>5</sup> and a moustache<sup>6</sup>.



3 Sam's got curly<sup>7</sup> hair, is in good shape, and always has a great tan in summer.



4 Brad's got fair hair<sup>8</sup> and a beard<sup>9</sup> with moustache. He's medium build.

SPOTLIGHT *ugly*

**Ugly** is the opposite of **beautiful**, but it's not polite to say somebody is **ugly**. It is better to say **unattractive** or **not very attractive**.

## GLOSSARY

**male** Men and boys are **male**. Women and girls are **female**. (A person's *gender/sex* can be **male** or **female**.) We also use **male** and **female** to talk about animals.

**broad** large from side to side: **broad shoulders** (NOT *wide shoulders*)

**appearance** the way that sb or sth looks or seems **appear** v

**dark skin**  
**in good/ bad shape**  
**(sun)tan**

**medium build**

OPP **pale/fair skin**

in good/bad physical condition

When you have a **(sun)tan**, your skin is brown from the sun.

not big or small, not fat or thin ALSO **of medium build**

## 1 Same or different? Write S or D.

- ▶ wavy hair / curly hair D
- 1 a moustache / a beard .....
- 2 in good shape / in good condition .....
- 3 bald / no hair .....
- 4 fat / medium build .....
- 5 narrow shoulders / broad shoulders .....
- 6 dark hair / fair hair .....
- 7 a tan / a suntan .....
- 8 pale skin / fair skin .....
- 9 ugly / unattractive .....
- 10 male / female .....

## 2 Complete the words in these questions.

- ▶ Who has got dark skin ?
- 1 Who has got f ..... h ..... ?
- 2 Has anyone got a tat ..... ?
- 3 Who has got a b ..... or m ..... ?
- 4 Who is in good s ..... ?
- 5 Who has got b ..... shoulders?
- 6 Are any men b ..... or nearly b ..... ?
- 7 Who is medium b ..... ?

## 3 Complete the questions.

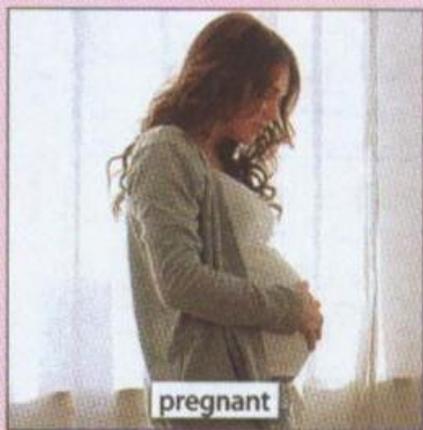
- ▶ Is that elephant male or female ?
- 1 Is your hair straight, wavy or ..... ?
- 2 Have you got dark skin or ..... skin?
- 3 Have you got broad ..... ?
- 4 Do you think you're in good ..... ?
- 5 Do you normally have a good ..... in the summer?
- 6 Are you generally happy with your ..... ?

## 4 ABOUT YOU Write answers to the questions in Exercise 2 about family or friends, and to Exercise 3 about yourself, or ask another student.



## TEST YOURSELF

## B Female appearance



1 This is my mother at 27 when she was **pregnant**; in fact, she was **expecting** me. She's **medium height**, and she had long wavy hair **at the time**, and lovely **smooth** skin.

2 Here's mum now. Her appearance hasn't changed that much. She still has a good **figure**, though she has more of a **roundish** face, and a different **hairstyle**: shorter, straighter and very **neat**. She wears **contact lenses** now, and you certainly can't tell that she's nearly 60.

### GLOSSARY

<b>be pregnant</b>	If a woman is <b>pregnant</b> , she has a baby growing in her body. <b>SYN be expecting (a baby)</b>
<b>medium height</b>	not tall or short <b>ALSO of medium height</b>
<b>at the time</b>	then; at a time in the past
<b>smooth</b>	with a completely flat surface <b>OPP rough</b>
<b>figure</b>	the shape of the body, especially that of a woman
<b>hairstyle</b>	the way your hair is cut and arranged
<b>neat</b>	tidy and carefully arranged
<b>contact lenses</b>	small round pieces of plastic you wear in your eyes to help you see better
<b>tell</b>	know or guess

### SPOTLIGHT the suffix -ish

The suffix *-ish* is used informally with some adjectives meaning 'quite'.

- a **roundish** face = a face which is quite round **ALSO tallish, youngish**, etc.

### 5 True or false? Write T or F.

- ▶ Medium height is not tall or short. T
- 1 Contact lenses are the same as glasses. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Skin can be rough or smooth. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 A tallish person is very tall. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 A pregnant woman has just had a baby. \_\_\_\_\_

- 5 Neat and tidy are similar in meaning. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 If you have a good figure, your face is attractive. \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 If you're pregnant, it means you're expecting a baby. \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 Hairstyle is the same as hairdresser. \_\_\_\_\_

### 6 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ Does she wear contact lenses \_\_\_\_\_ ?
- 1 My younger sister is medium \_\_\_\_\_, and her hair is short and very \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 She's still very slim, so you can't \_\_\_\_\_ she's \_\_\_\_\_ a baby in July.
- 3 I wouldn't say my aunt is very tall, but she's \_\_\_\_\_ - more than medium height.
- 4 My baby's skin is so \_\_\_\_\_, but my hands are really \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 My best friend eats a huge amount, but she still has a great \_\_\_\_\_ - it's so annoying!
- 6 You can \_\_\_\_\_ she's been on holiday - she's got a lovely suntan.
- 7 My sister is always changing her \_\_\_\_\_: one week it's straight, the next week it's wavy.
- 8 We moved to this house in 2020: I was eight months \_\_\_\_\_ at the \_\_\_\_\_, so it was quite difficult for me.

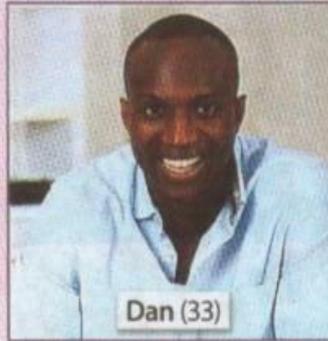
### 7 ABOUT YOUR FAMILY Write answers to the questions, or ask another student.

- ▶ Who is always very neat and tidy? My wife.
- 1 When was the last time somebody was pregnant? \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Who is of medium height? \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Who often changes their hairstyle? \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Who is shortish? \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Who has got a roundish face? \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 Who wears contact lenses? \_\_\_\_\_

### TEST YOURSELF

## HOW I SEE MYSELF

My character? I'm **ambitious** and **outgoing**, and I think I'm **generous**.



Dan (33)

I see myself as **practical**, **organized** and very **hard-working**.



Gina (45)

I'm always **cheerful**, I'm **easy-going**, and I've got lots of **energy**.



Kaz (18)

## HOW OTHERS SEE ME

Some people really like me, and like the fact I'm so **confident**. Others say I'm not very **patient**.

Other people probably think I'm very **sensible**, quite **shy** and maybe a bit **dull**.

My parents don't think I'm very **responsible**. My friends just think I'm **crazy**.

## GLOSSARY

<b>see sb as sth</b>	imagine or think of sb in a particular way	<b>organized</b>	good at planning and arranging things
<b>character</b>	the qualities that make sb different from other people <b>syn</b> <b>personality</b>	<b>hard-working</b>	able to work with effort and for a long time
<b>ambitious</b>	An <b>ambitious</b> person wants to be successful, to have power, etc. <b>ambition</b> <i>n</i>	<b>sensible</b>	able to think carefully about sth and do the right thing <b>opp</b> <b>stupid</b>
<b>outgoing</b>	friendly and interested in other people and new experiences	<b>shy</b>	not able to talk easily to people you do not know
<b>generous</b>	always ready to give people things or to spend money <b>opp</b> <b>mean</b>	<b>dull</b>	not interesting or exciting; a bit boring
<b>confident</b>	feeling sure about your own ability <b>opp</b> <b>insecure</b>	<b>cheerful</b>	feeling happy
<b>patient</b>	able to stay calm and wait for sth/sb <b>opp</b> <b>impatient</b> ; <b>patience</b> <i>n</i>	<b>easy-going</b>	relaxed and not worried by what others do
<b>practical</b>	making sensible decisions and good at dealing with problems <b>opp</b> <b>impractical</b>	<b>energy</b>	the ability to be very active without getting tired <b>energetic</b> <i>adj</i>
		<b>responsible</b>	able to act sensibly and intelligently <b>opp</b> <b>irresponsible</b>

SPOTLIGHT *crazy, mad, stupid*

**Crazy** *inf* and **mad** *inf* mean 'not sensible or practical; a bit stupid'. Both words can describe a person or an action or idea, but the meaning is not always negative. They can describe someone who is a bit out of control but just wants to enjoy life. **Stupid** is always negative.

1 Positive or negative, or possibly both? Write P, N or B.

- |                                   |   |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| ▶ She's very cheerful. <u>P</u>   | ▶ He's very ambitious. <u>B</u>           |
| 1 He's very organized. ....       | 5 He can be quite mean. ....              |
| 2 They're a bit dull. ....        | 6 He's very confident. ....               |
| 3 He is very easy-going. ....     | 7 My brother is mad, but I love him. .... |
| 4 She's extremely practical. .... | 8 Karen is so patient. ....               |

2 Underline the main stress in these words. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.

- |                   |               |              |                |
|-------------------|---------------|--------------|----------------|
| ▶ <u>cheerful</u> | 2 responsible | 4 easy-going | 6 disorganized |
| 1 energetic       | 3 generous    | 5 confident  | 7 personality  |

3 Match 1-8 with a-i.

- |  |          |               |
|--|----------|---------------|
| ▶ feeling sure about your own ability              | <u>c</u> | a organized   |
| 1 boring   | .....    | b cheerful    |
| 2 relaxed and not worried by others                | .....    | c confident ✓ |
| 3 friendly and interested in others                | .....    | d patient     |
| 4 good at planning and arranging                   | .....    | e energetic   |
| 5 able to stay calm and wait for things            | .....    | f dull        |
| 6 feeling happy                                    | .....    | g outgoing    |
| 7 not interested in giving money or helping people | .....    | h easy-going  |
| 8 active without getting tired                     | .....    | i mean        |

4 Complete the table.

ADJECTIVE	OPPOSITE	ADJECTIVE	OPPOSITE
▶ patient	<u>impatient</u>	confident	.....
responsible	.....	sensible	.....
lazy	.....	organized	.....
generous	.....	practical	.....

5 Complete the words in each sentence.

- ▶ Marcel never does any work - he's so lazy.
- 1 My brother's a bit irresponsible and does some c..... things, but he's fun.
- 2 Keiko's a good person to share a flat with: she's very e.....-g.....
- 3 Zoltan is a great person to work with: he's very p..... and o.....
- 4 Marco is very g.....: he's always the first person to buy you a drink.
- 5 Since Katy went to university and got a boyfriend, she's become more c.....
- 6 My brother's lazy, but my sisters have always been very h.....-w.....
- 7 I don't think young Aaron is r..... enough to drive a car.
- 8 Andrea has so much e..... - she's always doing something.
- 9 My sister is the s..... member of the family - thinks carefully and never does anything s.....
- 10 My cousin Sylvia has an interesting c..... Sometimes she is quite s..... and insecure, but at other times you realize she is very a..... and wants to do well and be successful.

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions, or ask another student.

- Are you ambitious? If so, in what way? .....
- Would you say you're hard-working or a bit lazy? .....
- Are you outgoing or quite shy? .....
- When are you impatient? .....
- Are you very organized? If so, in what way? .....
- Are you usually cheerful? Why/why not? .....
- How do you see yourself? Write three adjectives. ....
- Which two qualities are the most important for you: ambition, patience, energy or generosity? .....



## A Feelings

Word	Example	Meaning
anxious	He was <i>anxious</i> before he went into hospital.	worried and afraid
calm	My boss keeps <i>calm</i> in any situation.	quiet and not excited or afraid
delighted	My parents were <i>delighted</i> when I told them I was getting married.	very pleased or happy
disappointed	Jess was very <i>disappointed</i> when she failed the exam.	sad because what you wanted did not happen
embarrassed	I sometimes feel a bit <i>embarrassed</i> when I make stupid mistakes in English.	shy, worried or uncomfortable about what other people think of you
frightened	I was <i>frightened</i> when the plane took off.	SYNS <b>afraid, scared</b>
furious	Dad was <i>furious</i> when I lost his key.	very angry
miserable	You look <i>miserable</i> . What's wrong?	unhappy and depressed SYN <b>fed up inf</b>
pleased	I was <i>pleased</i> everyone enjoyed the party.	happy about a particular situation SYN <b>glad</b>
relaxed	I usually feel <i>relaxed</i> after a holiday.	calm and not worried
upset	Sarah was <i>upset</i> because no one spoke to her on the first day of the course.	sad and angry because of sth that has happened

**SPOTLIGHT** *alone, on your own, lonely*

If you are **alone** or **on your own**, you are not with other people. If you are **lonely**, you are unhappy because you are not with other people.

- Why are you sitting here **on your own**? Where are the others?
- Sarah was **upset** because nobody spoke to her. She felt very **lonely**.

**1** Positive or negative feelings? Write P or N.

- |                       |                     |                      |
|-----------------------|---------------------|----------------------|
| ▶ frightened <u>N</u> | 4 embarrassed ..... | 8 disappointed ..... |
| 1 anxious .....       | 5 lonely .....      | 9 upset .....        |
| 2 furious .....       | 6 delighted .....   | 10 pleased .....     |
| 3 relaxed .....       | 7 calm .....        | 11 miserable .....   |

**2** Write synonyms for these words and phrases.

- |                                     |                                 |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| ▶ quiet and not excited <u>calm</u> | 4 on your own .....             |
| 1 worried .....                     | 5 on your own and unhappy ..... |
| 2 fed up .....                      | 6 calm and not worried .....    |
| 3 scared .....                      | 7 very angry .....              |

**3** **ABOUT YOU** How would you feel in these situations? Write your answers using words from the table, or ask another student.

- |   |                             |
|---|-----------------------------|
| ▶ Someone hits your car because they were driving badly.                      | I'd be <u>furious</u> ..... |
| 1 You've just passed an important exam.                                       | I'd be ..... about it.      |
| 2 Your boyfriend/girlfriend is away and hasn't phoned or texted you.          | I'd be .....                |
| 3 Your lovely old dog has just died.  | I'd be .....                |
| 4 A man walks up to you in the street and puts a knife in front of your face. | I'd be .....                |
| 5 You're on holiday, but you can't go out because you've got a bad cold.      | I'd be .....                |
| 6 It's Friday evening and you have a free weekend ahead of you.               | I'd be .....                |
| 7 You thought it would rain, but it was sunny for your lunch in the garden.   | I'd be .....                |
| 8 You are going somewhere by plane and you don't like flying.                 | I'd be .....                |
| 9 You didn't get a job you wanted.  | I'd be .....                |



## TEST YOURSELF

## B How emotional are you?

### YOU AND YOUR EMOTIONS

Are you like this?

- |   |        |
|---|--------|
| a) I'm an <b>emotional</b> person and I like to <b>show my feelings</b> . | Yes/No |
| b) I don't often <b>get stressed</b> .                                    | Yes/No |
| c) I feel <b>guilty</b> if I <b>upset</b> people.                         | Yes/No |
| d) I think I get <b>jealous</b> quite easily.                             | Yes/No |
| e) I get <b>annoyed</b> when people <b>get things wrong</b> .             | Yes/No |
| f) I get <b>nervous</b> before big <b>occasions</b> .                     | Yes/No |
| g) My <b>mood</b> doesn't change much.                                    | Yes/No |

#### GLOSSARY

<b>emotional</b>	having strong feelings, and often showing them <b>emotion</b> <i>n</i>
<b>show your feelings</b>	express what you feel openly <b>OPP hide your feelings</b>
<b>stressed</b>	feeling worried because of problems in your life
<b>guilty</b>	If you feel <b>guilty</b> , you feel bad and sorry that you have done sth that you know is wrong.
<b>upset</b>	make sb unhappy or angry <b>upset</b> <i>adj</i>
<b>jealous</b>	1 angry or sad because you are afraid of losing sb's love 2 angry or sad because you want what another person has
<b>annoyed</b>	a little angry
<b>get sth wrong</b>	make a mistake
<b>nervous</b>	worried or afraid, often in a particular event or situation
<b>occasion</b>	a special event, ceremony, etc, e.g. a race, a wedding
<b>mood</b>	the way you feel at a particular time: <b>be in a good/bad mood</b>

#### SPOTLIGHT *get*

In the structure **get + adjective**, **get** means 'become'.

- I **get** annoyed/stressed/jealous, etc.
- I **get** angry/upset when people don't listen to me.

#### 4 True or false? Write T or F.

- ▶ If you're *in a bad mood*, you're not happy. T
- 1 If you *hide your feelings*, people can see you're very emotional. .....
- 2 If you do something wrong to somebody else, you may feel *guilty* about it. .....
- 3 If you're in a good mood, you're *annoyed*. .....
- 4 If you're *nervous*, you're feeling a bit worried or afraid. .....
- 5 If you're *jealous* of another person, it's because you like them. .....
- 6 If you're very *emotional*, you might shout or cry. .....
- 7 If you're *stressed*, you feel excited about something. .....
- 8 A big *occasion* is when something important happens. .....

#### 5 Complete the sentences with the correct word.

- ▶ I get a bit nervous if I have to speak in front of a lot of people.
- 1 I feel very ..... if I eat a whole bar of chocolate at once.
- 2 I'm feeling ..... at the moment because I have a lot of exams.
- 3 I sometimes ..... my parents when I don't tell them what I'm doing or I don't spend time with them. They can get quite ..... with me.
- 4 The day you get married is a very big ..... in your life.
- 5 I'm often in a bad ..... if I haven't slept very well the night before.
- 6 I don't show my ..... in front of my parents.
- 7 I get a bit ..... if my friends have a lot more money than me.
- 8 I get very ..... when I have to say goodbye to friends who I won't see for a long time.

#### 6 ABOUT YOU Complete the right-hand column in the questionnaire above, or ask another student. Then look at Exercise 5 again. Are the sentences true for you? Do you agree with them?



#### TEST YOURSELF

## A Positive

My cousin Zara is **incredibly talented**: she's a gymnastics **champion**, and is **currently** the best runner in the country in her age group.



I think my brother Luke is so **brave**. He lost a leg in a motorbike accident five years ago, but now runs marathons to **raise money** for **charity**. I'm very **proud** of him.



My gran has many great **qualities**: she's one of the **kindest**, **gentlest**, and most **loving** people I've ever met. She never has a bad word to say about anyone and is always there to help you if you need it.



## GLOSSARY

<b>incredibly</b>	extremely
<b>talented</b>	having a natural ability to do sth well <b>talent</b> <i>n</i>
<b>champion</b>	the person who is the best at a sport or game
<b>currently</b>	now; at the moment <b>current</b> <i>adj</i>
<b>brave</b>	ready to do dangerous or difficult things without fear
<b>raise money</b>	get money from other people for a special purpose
<b>charity</b>	an organization that collects money to help people who need it
<b>proud (of sb)</b>	pleased about sth you or others have done
<b>quality</b>	a thing that is part of sb's character, especially sth good
<b>kind</b>	friendly and good to other people <b>OPP unkind</b>
<b>gentle</b>	quiet and kind
<b>loving</b>	feeling or showing love and care

## 1 Complete the sentences in a logical way.

► Gentle people are quiet and kind.

- You raise money for other people because they ..... it.
- A ..... father is kind and caring.
- You feel proud if you've done something .....
- If you are a champion, you are the .....
- Brave people are prepared to do ..... things.

- Charities usually collect ..... to help other people.
- If something is currently true, it's true at the .....
- A talent is a natural .....
- If something is incredibly easy, it is ..... easy.
- If you're unkind, you aren't ..... to people.

## 2 Complete the dialogues.

► Amelia is wonderful with her children.

- Does she have a natural ability?
- Is Carlos good at tennis?
- Does Shelter collect money for homeless people?
- Has your father helped you?
- Your sister has been very kind.
- Does the charity need more money?
- Are there many students in the school?
- Tom seems to have no fear at all.
- It's amazing what Zoe has achieved already.

- ~ Yes, she's a very loving mother.
- ~ Yes, she's very .....
- ~ Yes, he's the national ..... for 16-year-olds.
- ~ Yes, it's a national .....
- ~ Yes, he's been ..... helpful.
- ~ Yes, it's one of her best .....
- ~ Yes, they need to ..... another £50,000.
- ~ Yes, there are ..... about 400, and more each year.
- ~ No, he's very .....
- ~ I know, we're all very ..... of her.

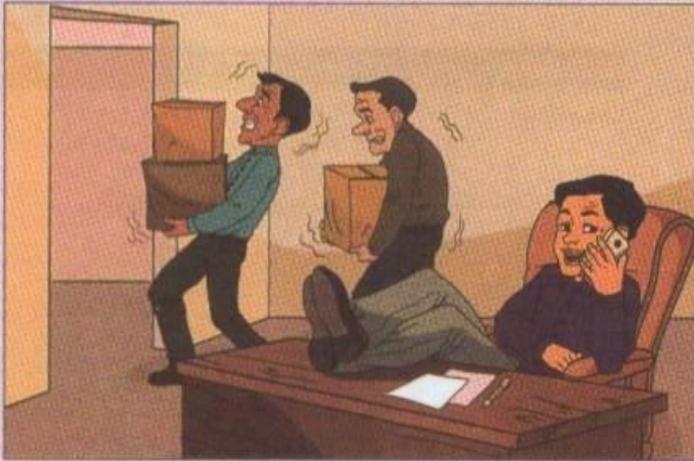
## 3 ABOUT YOU Write answers to the questions, or ask another student.

- Do you have a natural talent for something? If so, what is it? I think I have a talent for writing.
- Have you ever been a champion at anything? .....
  - Have you ever raised money for anything? If so, what? .....
  - Think of something you are proud of. ....
  - Would you describe yourself as gentle? .....
  - What's one of your best qualities? .....



## TEST YOURSELF

## B Negative



When anyone asks my colleague Otto for help, he always **pretends** to be busy and **makes up** an excuse for not having enough time. It's very **annoying** because it's part of his job to help us.

My boss can be very **difficult** as well. She has very **high standards**, which is good, but sometimes she **expects** too much of other people, and she can be a bit **cruel**.

My brother can be quite **unpleasant**. He doesn't **mean** to be, but he just sounds rather angry a lot of the time. People think he's a bit **odd**.

### GLOSSARY

<b>pretend</b>	try to make sb believe sth that is not true
<b>make sth up</b>	tell sb sth that is not true <b>SYN invent</b>
<b>excuse</b>	a reason you give to explain why you have done sth wrong, or not done sth you should have done
<b>annoying</b>	making you a little angry
<b>difficult</b>	A person who is <b>difficult</b> is not easy to please, or will not do what you want.
<b>high standards</b>	wanting people to reach a high level of quality and ability
<b>cruel</b>	very unkind <b>cruelty n</b>
<b>unpleasant</b>	unfriendly and not nice <b>OPP pleasant</b>
<b>mean (to do sth)</b>	intend (to do sth)
<b>odd</b>	strange or unusual

### SPOTLIGHT *expect*

In the text above, **expect** means 'demand that somebody does something because it is their job or responsibility'.

■ *She **expects** a lot of people who work for her.*

It can also mean 'think that something will happen or that somebody will come'.

■ *I **expect** my mother will be here soon.*

#### 4 Underline the main stress on these words. Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

▶ annoying

1 pretend

3 difficult

5 expect

7 pleasant

2 excuse

4 standard

6 cruel

8 unpleasant

#### 5 Yes or No?

▶ He's a difficult person. Do you think he'll do what you want? No

1 He pretended to be asleep. Was he? .....

2 He made it up. Was it true? .....

3 He meant to do it. Did he intend to do it? .....

4 He was pleasant. Was he nice? .....

5 He was annoying. Were you angry? .....

6 He's cruel. Is he kind? .....

7 You expect something to happen. Do you think it will? .....

8 He just made up an excuse. Was he telling the truth? .....

9 He has high standards. Is he easy to please? .....

10 She's odd. Is she normal? .....

#### 6 Complete the texts.

▶ The animals are locked up 24 hours a day. I think that's very cruel.

1 Petra is late for class most days, but always has a different ..... I think she's got a few problems at the moment. She ..... to be OK, but in actual fact, she isn't.

2 When students are late for class they are sometimes honest, but often they ..... an excuse about the buses not being on time, or that the traffic was terrible.

3 I can't keep the flat as clean and tidy as my flatmate, but that's because she has very high ..... and I don't. She puts my things away where I can't find them, which can be ....., and I sometimes get a bit angry with her. She doesn't ..... to be unkind or anything. She's just incredibly tidy.

4 My little sister has lots of problems and ..... a lot of help from me. But when I can't solve her problems, she can be quite ..... to me. She's a ..... person.



### TEST YOURSELF

## A What's a friend?

### WHAT'S IMPORTANT IN **friendship**?

Do you need to:

- **get on well?**
- **trust** each other?
- **have things in common?**
- always **keep in touch?**
- have a similar **sense of humour?**
- have similar **attitudes?**
- have the same **likes and dislikes?**
- know you can **rely on** them in a difficult situation?
- know they will **support** you?
- know they will **tell you the truth** and be **honest** with you?

#### GLOSSARY

<b>friendship</b>	the relationship between people who are friends: <b>make friends (with sb)</b> = become friends (with sb)
<b>get on (well/badly with sb)</b>	have a good/bad relationship with sb
<b>trust</b>	believe sb is good and won't do anything to hurt you
<b>have sth in common</b>	have some similar interests
<b>keep/be in touch (with sb)</b>	meet, write, phone or text sb regularly
<b>sense of humour</b>	the ability to laugh and find sth funny
<b>attitude</b>	the way you think or feel about sth
<b>dislike</b>	a thing that you do not like OPP <b>like: likes and dislikes</b>
<b>rely on sb</b>	feel sure that sb will do what they say they will do <b>reliable adj</b>
<b>support</b>	give sb help when they need it
<b>tell the truth</b>	say what is true OPP <b>tell lies</b>
<b>honest</b>	A person who is <b>honest</b> tells the truth and does not steal or cheat.

### 1 Find six more phrases in the box.

tell ✓	keep	get on	tell	have something	in touch	make
lies ✓	sense	the truth	in common	with someone	friends	of humour

▶ tell lies \_\_\_\_\_

### 2 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ Both brothers have a great sense of humour.
- 1 You can depend on my brother to help if you need it. He's very \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 2 I really \_\_\_\_\_ Marcel - that's why I feel I can tell him anything.
  - 3 It's a difficult time for Olivia, but I'm sure her friends will \_\_\_\_\_ her.
  - 4 When Ed is at work, he works. At the weekend, he doesn't think about work at all. I think that's the right \_\_\_\_\_ to work, don't you?
  - 5 I used to \_\_\_\_\_ very well with my cousin, but recently we've argued a lot.
  - 6 Sasha and I don't really have anything in \_\_\_\_\_ any longer. We've both changed.
  - 7 I manage to keep in \_\_\_\_\_ with most of my old school friends.
  - 8 Pascal can be very \_\_\_\_\_: I don't trust him.
  - 9 Scarlett and I are very similar: we both have the same likes and \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 10 I think \_\_\_\_\_ is just as important as family.

### 3 Rewrite the sentences using the word at the end in the correct form. The meaning must stay the same.

- ▶ He never tells lies. TRUTH He always tells the truth.
- 1 He forms friendly relationships easily. FRIENDS \_\_\_\_\_
  - 2 We don't phone or write to each other. TOUCH \_\_\_\_\_
  - 3 I don't have a good relationship with my father. GET ON \_\_\_\_\_
  - 4 Kate can laugh at things and find things funny. HUMOUR \_\_\_\_\_
  - 5 Jo and Ellen have a lot of similar interests. COMMON \_\_\_\_\_
  - 6 Phoebe always does what she says she will do. RELY \_\_\_\_\_

#### TEST YOURSELF

## B When things go wrong

### Perfect Weekend

Channel Six

Wednesday 9pm -11pm

This is a TV drama about a group of five young people who **got to know one another** at university, and now, five years later, **get together** for a weekend break. But things soon **go wrong**. Jack **no longer** gets on with Dan, and now **realizes** they have nothing in common, while Harry is sorry that he **broke up with** Amy, the girl he used to **go out with**. Now Amy **fancies** Dan, but he is **in a serious relationship** with Sophie, who used to be Amy's best friend. And that's just the beginning ...



#### GLOSSARY

<b>get to know sb</b>	meet sb a number of times and become friends
<b>one another</b>	used for saying that sb does the same thing as another person <b>SYN each other</b>
<b>get together</b>	(of two or more people) meet for a social reason
<b>go wrong</b>	used when a problem happens in a situation or relationship
<b>no longer</b>	not now; not as before <b>SYN not any longer</b>
<b>realize</b>	begin to understand sth that you didn't know before
<b>break up (with sb)</b>	stop being in a romantic relationship (with sb)
<b>go out with sb</b>	have sb as a boyfriend/girlfriend
<b>fancy inf</b>	like sb and want to be their boyfriend/girlfriend
<b>in a (serious) relationship</b>	having a boyfriend/girlfriend for a long time

#### 4 One word is missing from each sentence. What is it and where does it go?

▶ Shall we together for a drink?

Shall we get together for a drink?

1 Hanna is a serious relationship.

2 Lian broke with Chen last week.

3 Paula and I met another at university.

4 How did you get know Anya?

5 We used to meet but not longer.

6 She went with him for two years.

#### 5 Complete the text.

Milo and I got to ▶ know each (1) ..... when we worked together during the summer. We had a lot in common and I really (2) ..... him (he's very good-looking), but unfortunately, he was in a serious (3) ..... at the time. Then it all went (4) ..... He and his girlfriend Inez had a big argument and (5) ..... up. Soon after that, we started to (6) ..... out with (7) ..... another. But after a couple of weeks, Milo (8) ..... that he still wanted to be with Inez, and that our relationship was a big mistake.

#### 6 Complete the words in the sentences.

▶ How did you get ..... to know ..... your best friend?

1 How long have you known one ..... ?

2 How often do you get ..... ?

3 Is there anything you used to do that you don't do any ..... ?

4 Is your friend in a serious ..... ?

5 If 'yes', who is it with? If 'no', is he/she ..... with anyone?

6 If so, how did they ..... to ..... each other?

#### ABOUT YOU

#### 7 ABOUT YOU Write answers to the questions in Exercise 6, or talk to another student.



TEST YOURSELF

## A A family history

Marilyn Monroe, also known by the nicknames MM or The Blonde Bombshell, was an **only child** from a **single-parent family**. She had an unhappy **childhood** and spent much of it with **foster parents**. One couple wanted to **adopt** her, but it wasn't possible, and at the age of 16, she **got married**. In fact, in her short life (she died at 36), she had a **complicated** love life: she married three times, and **got divorced** three times. **According to Hollywood sources**, she also had many romantic relationships with people such as Marlon Brando and Frank Sinatra.



### GLOSSARY

<b>nickname</b>	an informal name, not your real name, which may be connected with your personality or appearance	<b>married</b>	having a husband or wife: <b>get married (to sb)</b> SYN <b>marry (sb)</b> v
<b>only child</b>	a child with no brothers or sisters	<b>complicated</b>	difficult to understand because it has a lot of different parts
<b>single parent</b>	a mother or father who looks after her/his children alone: <b>a single-parent family</b>	<b>divorced</b>	no longer married: <b>get divorced</b> SYN <b>divorce</b> v, ALSO n
<b>childhood</b>	the time when you are a child	<b>according to sb/sth</b>	as sb or sth says (NOT <b>according to me</b> )
<b>foster parent</b>	sb who takes care of another person's child in their home for a period of time	<b>source</b>	sb or sth that provides information, often for a piece of work or the news
<b>adopt a child</b>	take sb's child into your family and legally make them your child	<b>romantic</b>	about love; full of feelings of love

### 1 Cover the text above. True or False? Write T or F. If the sentences are false, correct them.

- ▶ Marilyn Monroe's nickname was MM. T
- 1 Her other nickname was The Blonde Baby. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 She was an only child. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 She grew up with her parents. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 She was adopted. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 She had a happy childhood. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 She got divorced twice. \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 People say she had a romantic relationship with Frank Sinatra. \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 She died at 36. \_\_\_\_\_

### 2 Match the words from the boxes.

foster ✓	a child	get	single	get	according	only
divorced	parent	to somebody	adopt	child	parents ✓	married

- ▶ foster parents \_\_\_\_\_

### 3 Complete the text.

My mother is a ▶ single parent. She had me a year after she got married, but got (1) \_\_\_\_\_ two years later, and didn't have any more children, so, I am an (2) \_\_\_\_\_ child. But, I had a happy (3) \_\_\_\_\_ and (4) \_\_\_\_\_ to my aunt, who lived with us some of the time, I never talked about my father. My aunt had a very different childhood. She was (5) \_\_\_\_\_ by my grandparents when she was five. Her name is Gloria, but everyone knows her by her (6) \_\_\_\_\_, which is Gigi. She was married to a man called Enzo, but she wasn't happy with him, and she got (7) \_\_\_\_\_ after about five years. I was told by one (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (I won't say who that is) that Gigi had a number of (9) \_\_\_\_\_ relationships with several pop stars when she was a young woman. I don't know if these stories are true, but her love life was very (10) \_\_\_\_\_



### TEST YOURSELF

## B Coincidences

I'm a **twin** (with an **identical** twin sister). My twin sister is married, and last year she **gave birth** to identical twin boys. Is that just a **coincidence**?

My sister's husband, my **brother-in-law**, has two **siblings** (who are sisters). Their husbands are from London, but **previous** generations of their families **originally** came from the same city in Poland. Another coincidence?

I also have a younger brother. His girlfriend is **related to** a family who lived in the same house as my parents, ten years before they did. Is this just another coincidence?

### GLOSSARY

<b>twin</b>	one of two people who have the same mother and were born at the same time
<b>identical</b>	exactly the same
<b>coincidence</b>	when two things happen in the same way or at the same time, both of them surprising
<b>brother-in-law</b>	1 the husband of your sister 2 the brother of your husband or wife ALSO <b>sister/mother/daughter-in-law</b> , etc.
<b>sibling formal</b>	a brother or sister
<b>previous</b>	coming or happening before or earlier
<b>generation</b>	all the people in a family born at about the same time
<b>originally</b>	in the beginning, before other things happened
<b>be related (to sb)</b>	be in the same family as sb <b>relative/ relation n</b>

### SPOTLIGHT *birth*

When a woman **gives birth**, she has a baby, and the day that baby **is born** is their **date of birth**, e.g. 07/05/1998. Every year, on the day of their birth, people celebrate their **birthday**.

#### 4 Yes or No?

- ▶ Is your mother-in-law your mother? No
- 1 Is your son your sibling? .....
- 2 Are your cousins your relatives? .....
- 3 Is your daughter-in-law your son's wife? .....
- 4 Is it a coincidence when one thing happens after another thing? .....
- 5 Are you and your father from the same generation? .....
- 6 Is your date of birth the day you were born? .....
- 7 Do identical twins look exactly the same? .....
- 8 Can a father give birth to a baby? .....

#### 5 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ I have two sisters who are identical twins.
- 1 Three ..... of my family have lived in the same house: my grandparents, my parents, and now my brother and his wife.
- 2 Some of my ..... live abroad: my father's parents are in Naples, and two of my cousins live in Paris.
- 3 What's your ..... of birth?
- 4 My .....-in-..... is always giving me advice. My wife finds him a bit annoying.
- 5 My sister gave ..... yesterday to a baby boy, weighing just over three kilos.
- 6 Both of my parents had the same family name before they got married. That's an incredible ....., isn't it?

#### 6 Complete the words in these questions.

- ▶ Have you got a brother-..... or sister.....-in-law.....?
- 1 Have you got any s.....?
- 2 Do different g..... of your family live in the same home? If so, who?
- 3 Are you r..... to any people who live in a different country? If so, who?
- 4 Where did your family come from o.....? Do you know?
- 5 Where do/did the p..... generations of your family live?
- 6 Do you know any tw.....? Are they i.....?

### ABOUT YOU

#### 7 ABOUT YOU Write your own answers to Exercise 6, or ask another student.

- ▶ Have you got a brother- or sister-in-law?  
Yes, I've got a sister-in-law called Caitlin. My brother married her two years ago.



### TEST YOURSELF

## A Weddings

In the UK, it is the **custom** for many couples to **get engaged** before they get married. For the **wedding** itself, couples can choose a **religious ceremony**, for example in a church, or a **civil ceremony**, in a **registry office** or some other building. On the day of the wedding, the woman is called the **bride**, and the man is the **groom**. After the wedding, most married couples have a **reception**, followed by a **honeymoon**. During the reception, several people **make speeches** and wish the couple a happy marriage. On the same day every year after that, the couple **celebrate** their wedding anniversary.



### GLOSSARY

<b>custom</b>	sth that people in society or a community usually do: <i>It's a custom for people to give presents to a couple getting married.</i>	<b>(wedding) reception</b>	a meal and/or party after a wedding
<b>get/be engaged</b>	If two people <b>get engaged</b> or <b>are engaged</b> , they have agreed to get married.	<b>honeymoon</b>	a holiday for a couple who have just got married
<b>wedding ceremony</b>	a time when two people get married a formal public event. A <b>religious ceremony</b> takes place in a church, mosque, temple, etc. A <b>civil ceremony</b> is a non-religious ceremony which often takes place in a <b>registry office</b> .	<b>make a speech</b>	give a formal talk to a lot of people at a special event
		<b>marriage</b>	the period when two people are married
		<b>celebrate</b>	do sth to show you are happy about a special day
		<b>anniversary</b>	a day that is exactly a year after a special event

**1 Put these words in the correct order.**

the reception .....      the couple meet .....      the anniversary .....  
 the wedding .....      the honeymoon .....      get engaged .....

**2 Underline the correct word.**

- ▶ They got engaged / married last week. The wedding is planned for June.
- 1 Jake and Emma's wedding / marriage is next Saturday.
- 2 Jake is the groom / bride.
- 3 It's a civil / religious ceremony in St Peter's Church.
- 4 The reception will be before / after the wedding ceremony.
- 5 Speeches are a custom during the ceremony / reception.
- 6 On their honeymoon, Jake and Emma will be bride and groom / husband and wife.

**3 Complete the questions with a suitable word.**

- ▶ Do couples usually get engaged before they get married?
- 1 Can couples have a religious ceremony or a \_\_\_\_\_ ceremony in a \_\_\_\_\_ office?
- 2 Does the \_\_\_\_\_ usually wear a dress of a particular colour? If so, what colour?
- 3 Is there usually a \_\_\_\_\_ after the ceremony?
- 4 Do people often \_\_\_\_\_ speeches? If so, who does it?
- 5 Is it the \_\_\_\_\_ for the wife to wear a wedding ring on her left hand?
- 6 Do couples often go on a \_\_\_\_\_ after the wedding?
- 7 Do couples usually \_\_\_\_\_ their wedding \_\_\_\_\_ every year?
- 8 Do most \_\_\_\_\_ last forever in your country?

**ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY**

.....

.....

.....

.....

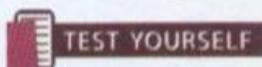
.....

.....

.....

.....

**4 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY** Write answers to the questions in Exercise 3, or ask another student. Are there any other customs you have during weddings in your country?



## B Divorce

Although most couples say they 'marry for life', recent **statistics** do not support this **belief**. Currently about 42% of married couples in the UK **separate** and get divorced, with the average marriage lasting about thirty years. Reasons for deciding to live **apart** vary, but certainly include money problems – which cause **pressure** in a relationship – **lack of** communication, one partner having a **sexual** relationship (an **affair**) with another person, **constant** arguments, and lack of **equality** in the relationship, e.g. if one person does all the housework, or one person makes all the decisions.

### SPOTLIGHT *separate* v, adj

The verb **separate** means 'stop being together'. The adjective **separate** means 'away; not together'. Listen to the **MP3** for the different ways they are pronounced.

- My parents **separated** when I was a child. (SYN **split up**)
- The older children are **separate from** the younger ones in the school.

### GLOSSARY

<b>statistics</b>	a collection of numbers that give information about sth	<b>sexual</b>	connected with sex
<b>belief</b>	a strong feeling that sth is true or real	<b>affair</b>	a sexual relationship between two people that is normally secret because at least one person in the relationship is married
<b>apart</b>	not together; <b>live apart</b> = live in separate homes	<b>constant</b>	happening all the time, or again and again ALSO <b>continuous</b> happening all the time: <b>continuous noise</b>
<b>vary</b>	be different from each other, or change according to the situation	<b>equality</b>	being the same or having the same rights <b>equal</b> adj
<b>pressure</b>	a feeling of worry and stress because of what you have to do		
<b>lack (of sth)</b>	not having sth or not having enough of sth		

5 Is the pronunciation of the underlined sounds the same or different? Write S or D. Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| ▶ separate / <u>sexual</u> ..... S        | 4 equality / <u>constant</u> .....            |
| 1 <u>equality</u> / <u>pressure</u> ..... | 5 <u>affair</u> / <u>statistics</u> .....     |
| 2 <u>vary</u> / <u>lack</u> .....         | 6 <u>belief</u> / <u>pressure</u> .....       |
| 3 <u>statistics</u> / <u>split</u> .....  | 7 <u>separate (adj)</u> / <u>affair</u> ..... |

6 Yes or No?

- |   |       |
|---|-------|
| ▶ If two people live <b>apart</b> , they don't live with each other.      | Yes   |
| 1 If something is <b>constant</b> , it happens from time to time.         | ..... |
| 2 <b>Equality</b> is about how good or bad something is.                  | ..... |
| 3 A <b>lack</b> of something is when you haven't got enough of something. | ..... |
| 4 <b>Statistics</b> give you information through numbers.                 | ..... |
| 5 When couples <b>separate</b> , they stay together.                      | ..... |
| 6 If things <b>vary</b> , they don't change.                              | ..... |

7 Complete the sentences.

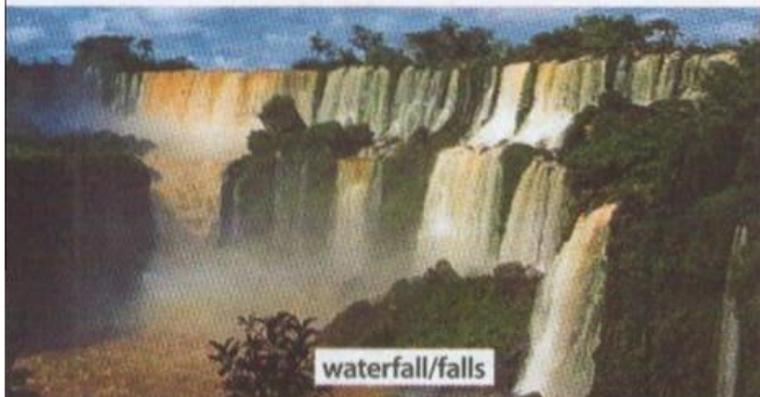
- ▶ In some cultures, there is a general belief ..... that marriage is for ever.
- 1 They were only married for four years, but now they live .....
  - 2 You can get lots of figures from ....., but they don't tell the whole truth.
  - 3 If you have money problems, it can put ..... on any relationship.
  - 4 A ..... of communication has been a ..... problem for them. They just don't talk to each other.
  - 5 Sophie's parents ..... when she was a teenager; she stayed with her mum.
  - 6 In an ..... relationship, there is less chance that a marriage will come to an end.
  - 7 His parents got divorced last year and now live in ..... houses, but they're only about a hundred metres from each other.
  - 8 Reasons for divorce ..... enormously.

8 **ABOUT YOU** Cover the text above and write down five reasons why couples get divorced. Can you also think of at least two more reasons why people get a divorce?



### TEST YOURSELF

## A Geographical features

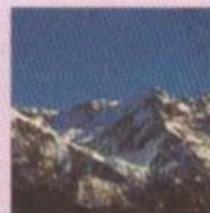


waterfall/falls

One of the most important **geographical features** in South America is the Iguazu Falls, which are the **waterfalls** of the Iguazu River. They are **located** on the border between Argentina and Brazil in the **southern** part of South America. The falls **divide** the river into the upper and lower Iguazu. The river flows **mostly** through Brazil, but the falls are **mainly** on the Argentinian side.



desert

mountainous  
region (the Alps)jungle  
(the Amazon)

## GLOSSARY

<b>geographical</b>	relating to the Earth and everything on it, such as mountains, rivers, etc. <b>geography</b> <i>n</i>
<b>feature</b>	an important part of something
<b>located</b>	in a place <b>location</b> <i>n</i> : The house is in a lovely <b>location</b> .
<b>southern</b>	connected with, in or from the <i>south</i> <b>ALSO northern, eastern, western,</b> plus <b>south-eastern, north-western,</b> etc.
<b>divide</b>	cut or separate sth into smaller parts
<b>flow</b> (of water)	move in a continuous way in one direction <b>flow</b> <i>v</i>
<b>mostly</b>	almost all <b>SYN mainly</b>

## 1 Yes or No?

- Are waterfalls usually on lakes? No
- 1 Can you swim up a waterfall? .....
- 2 Is the Alps a mountainous region? .....
- 3 Are deserts full of water? .....
- 4 Do rivers flow? .....
- 5 Do rivers sometimes divide? .....
- 6 Is a jungle like a desert? .....
- 7 Is **mainly** the same as **always**? .....
- 8 Does the location of something tell you where it is? .....

## 2 Complete the text.

Budapest is ► **located** ..... in the (1) ..... part of Hungary. The River Danube (2) ..... through the city from the north, and (3) ..... the city into two parts: hilly Buda on the (4) ..... side and the much larger and flatter Pest on the (5) ..... side. The city has a population of nearly 2 million, which lives (6) ..... in Pest. The bridges and castles are two of the most famous (7) ..... of Budapest.



## 3 Do this quiz.

► London is located on the **south-eastern** ..... side of England.

- 1 The Amazon jungle is in .....
- 2 The River Nile flows through the continent of .....
- 3 The Alps is a mountainous region in the continent of .....
- 4 Niagara Falls is a series of three waterfalls on the border between ..... and .....
- 5 The Sahara is a desert in .....
- 6 Patagonia is in the southern part of .....
- 7 In 1993, Czechoslovakia was divided into two countries: the ..... Republic and .....
- 8 The Urals are an important geographical feature of western .....

## GEOGRAPHY QUIZ

- 4 **ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY** What are some of the main geographical features in your country, and where are they located? Write your answer, or tell another student.

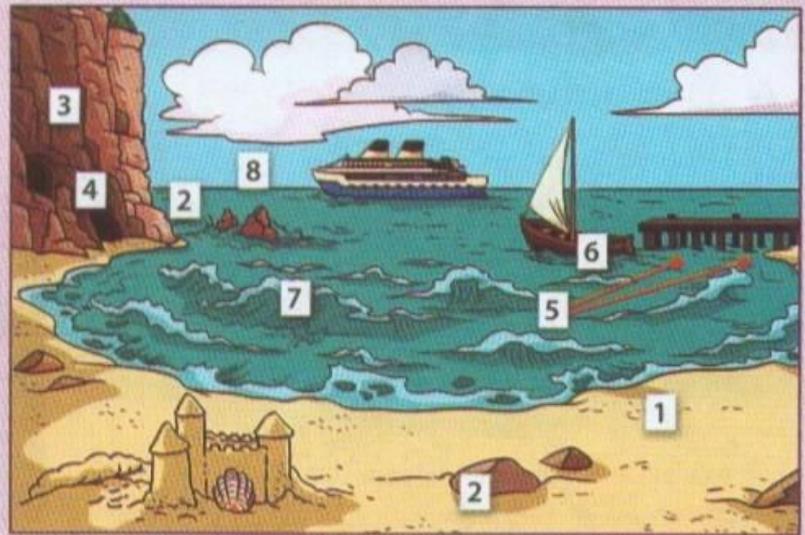


## TEST YOURSELF

## B The coast

Wanscombe, near the port of Padstow, has a lovely bay. Its beach<sup>1</sup> is sandy with a few rocks<sup>2</sup> quite near the shore. There's a cliff<sup>3</sup> behind the beach, and children often play in the caves<sup>4</sup> there.

At one end of the beach, there's a small harbour<sup>5</sup>. When the weather's bad and the sea is rough, it protects the sailing boats<sup>6</sup> from the high waves<sup>7</sup>. You can sometimes see large ships on the horizon<sup>8</sup>.



### GLOSSARY

**port** a town or city that has a large area of water where ships load goods, etc; an area where ships stop to let goods and passengers on and off  
**bay** a part of the coast where the land goes in to form a curve

**sandy** covered in the white/yellow material you find in deserts and on beaches **sand** *n*  
**shore** the land along the edge of the sea or a lake  
**rough** A **rough** sea has big waves. **OPP** calm  
**protect sb/sth (from sth)** keep sth/sb safe from sth **protection** *n*

### 5 Find the end of each word.

cave | rocksandy sailing bay horizon protect port shore beach waverough harboursand cliff

### 6 Which words are being defined?

- ▶ (of the sea) not calm
- 1 the line in the distance between the land and the sky
- 2 a large piece of stone
- 3 the land at the edge of the sea where it meets the beach
- 4 a high area of rock near the sea
- 5 a place where ships or boats are kept and protected from the sea
- 6 an area of sand or small stones beside the sea where people sit and relax
- 7 a large hole in a cliff or under the ground
- 8 A type of boat you see in a harbour

rough \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_

### 7 Complete the sentences.

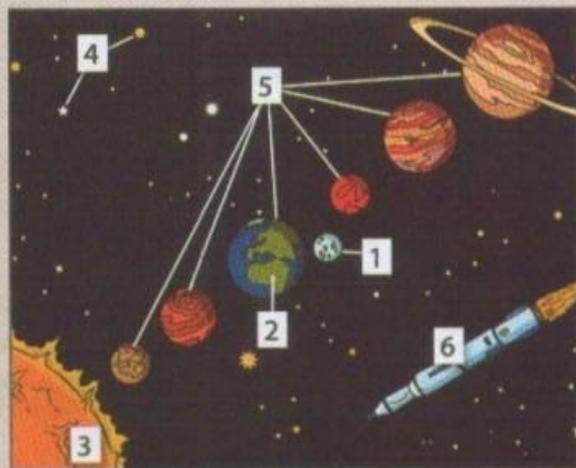
- ▶ It was a nice day, so we went to the beach.
- 1 When it's stormy, the sea gets very \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 A huge \_\_\_\_\_ hit the boat, and I almost fell out.
- 3 The harbour \_\_\_\_\_ the boats in bad weather.
- 4 Hamburg is a major \_\_\_\_\_ in Germany where about 9,000 ships call a year.
- 5 You have to climb down the \_\_\_\_\_ to get to the beach.
- 6 I looked out to sea and I could just see a boat on the \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7 We didn't swim, but we walked along the \_\_\_\_\_ with our feet in the water.
- 8 The beach is great for children because it's \_\_\_\_\_ and they can play there safely.

### 8 ABOUT YOU Do you often have holidays on the coast? Do you go to a particular bay? How do you get there? What's the beach like? Write your answers, or tell another student.

### TEST YOURSELF

**A The universe**

- The **moon**<sup>1</sup> is a **satellite** of the **earth**<sup>2</sup>; in other words, it **circles** around the earth. This takes **approximately** 28 days.
- The earth **revolves** around the sun every 365 days.
- The **sun**<sup>3</sup> is a star, but seems much larger than other **stars**<sup>4</sup> because it is so close to the earth. Light from the sun takes approximately 8 minutes to **reach** the earth.
- 9 **planets**<sup>5</sup> revolve around the sun. We call the sun and all its planets the **solar system**.
- 100 years ago, sending **rockets**<sup>6</sup> into **space** seemed **incredible**, but now it is a fact of life and we have learned a **great deal** about the **universe** since then.



**GLOSSARY**

<b>satellite</b>	an object that moves round a bigger object in space	<b>reach</b>	arrive somewhere
<b>in other words</b>	used for saying sth in a different way	<b>space [U]</b>	the area beyond the earth round the planets and stars
<b>circle</b>	go round sth in a circle <b>SYN revolve (around sth)</b>	<b>incredible</b>	difficult to believe
<b>approximately</b>	about, more or less <b>SYN roughly</b>	<b>a great deal</b>	a lot <b>SYN a good deal</b>
		<b>universe</b>	the whole of space and everything in it, including the planets and stars

**1 One word is wrong in each sentence. Cross it out and write the correct word.**

- ▶ The ~~sun~~ circles the earth. moon
- 1 The planets are in the solar space. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 The earth revolves around the moon. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 The sun is a planet. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Man first walked on the sun in 1969. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Mars is a star. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 We can send planes into space. \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 We've learned a big deal about space. \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 The world is the whole of space and everything in it. \_\_\_\_\_

**2 Complete the sentences.**

- ▶ There are billions of stars in the universe.
- 1 Is it important to send rockets into \_\_\_\_\_?
- 2 Mars, Jupiter and Venus are all \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 As far as we know, all human life lives on \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 For many people, the idea of human life in other parts of the universe is \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 It takes rockets \_\_\_\_\_ 260 days to \_\_\_\_\_ Mars.
- 6 The earth \_\_\_\_\_ around the sun every 365 days.
- 7 One of the \_\_\_\_\_ crashed when it landed.
- 8 The moon is a \_\_\_\_\_ of the earth.
- 9 The sun and all its planets are known as the \_\_\_\_\_ system.
- 10 We still don't know a great \_\_\_\_\_ about life on other planets.
- 11 The earth revolves around the sun: in other \_\_\_\_\_, the earth is a planet in our solar system.

**3 Cover the text and glossary. Look at the picture. Name five things you can see.**

- ▶ Mars \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_



## B Scientific exploration

### Why go to Mars?

Scientists have already sent **spacecraft**, including **satellites**, to **explore** the surface of Mars, and **carried out experiments** to see if they can **discover** any signs of life. **So far**, they haven't found any, but an **analysis** of the **solid** rocks brought back from Mars has **confirmed** that they were created by the presence of water and wind, so perhaps life could have **existed previously** on the planet.

#### SPOTLIGHT *discover or invent?*

If you **discover** something, you learn about or find something for the first time. **discovery** *n*

If you **invent** something, you create something that didn't exist before. **invention** *n*

- They've **discovered** a new plant.
- Who **invented** the telescope?

#### GLOSSARY

<b>scientist</b>	a person who studies the physical world
<b>science</b> <i>n</i>	<b>scientific</b> <i>adj</i>
<b>spacecraft</b>	a vehicle that travels into space, e.g. a rocket
<b>satellite</b>	electronic equipment that is sent into space and moves around a planet
<b>explore</b>	travel round a place in order to learn about it <b>exploration</b> <i>n</i>
<b>carry out sth</b>	do and complete a task
<b>experiment</b>	a scientific test in order to learn/find out sth
<b>so far</b>	up to now
<b>analysis</b>	the careful study of sth in order to explain it
<b>analyse</b> <i>v</i>	
<b>solid</b>	with no holes or spaces inside: <b>solid rock</b>
<b>confirm</b>	say or show that sth is true or definite <b>confirmation</b> <i>n</i>
<b>exist</b>	If sth <b>exists</b> , it is present in the real world. <b>existence</b> <i>n</i>
<b>previously</b>	in a way that happened before or earlier

#### 4 Circle the correct word.

- ▶ There was an experiment / *exploration* to test the levels of sugar in the blood.
- 1 These animals **only explore** / *exist* in South America – nowhere else.
  - 2 They're going to **explore** / *analyse* the area to see what they can find.
  - 3 The **discovery** / *invention* of the electric light bulb changed people's lives.
  - 4 Scientists have **carried out** / *confirmed* experiments on animals.
  - 5 Who **invented** / *discovered* the ancient city of Machu Pichu in Peru?
  - 6 We've got the information, so now we need to **analyse** / *explore* it.

#### 5 Complete the sentences using the correct form of the word on the right.

- ▶ Television was an incredible invention.
- 1 There's a report from a group of \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 2 The \_\_\_\_\_ of penicillin was of major importance.
  - 3 We're waiting for \_\_\_\_\_ of the results.
  - 4 They will \_\_\_\_\_ the findings in the laboratory.
  - 5 The 60s and 70s were an exciting period for space \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 6 Humans are always looking for the \_\_\_\_\_ of new life forms.
- INVENT  
SCIENCE  
DISCOVER  
CONFIRM  
ANALYSIS  
EXPLORE  
EXIST

#### 6 Complete the words in the sentences.

- ▶ Who discovered the planet Venus?
- 1 At the moment there is no evidence that life e\_\_\_\_\_ on Mars.
  - 2 They left camp and went to e\_\_\_\_\_ the countryside to see what they could find.
  - 3 With the use of s\_\_\_\_\_, TV can show news from anywhere in the world.
  - 4 Doctors believe they will have to c\_\_\_\_\_ o\_\_\_\_\_ further experiments with the drug.
  - 5 We have analysed the s\_\_\_\_\_ rocks brought back from the planet, but s\_\_\_\_\_ f\_\_\_\_\_ we haven't found anything interesting.
  - 6 Scientists have now c\_\_\_\_\_ that climate change is really happening.
  - 7 We are still waiting for an a\_\_\_\_\_ of the results before we reach a conclusion.
  - 8 There is now s\_\_\_\_\_ evidence that the ice cap is getting smaller.
  - 9 Do you know if life existed p\_\_\_\_\_ on other planets in the solar system?
  - 10 Scientists are developing a s\_\_\_\_\_ which will take paying passengers to the moon and back.



#### TEST YOURSELF

# 15 Weather conditions

## A Normal weather

Word	Example	Meaning
pour (with rain)	<i>It's pouring (with rain) outside!</i>	rain a lot
shower	<i>We had a heavy shower this morning.</i>	rain for a short period of time, which can be <b>heavy</b> (= a lot) or <b>light</b> (= a little)
rainfall	<i>Rainfall is low in the summer.</i>	the total amount of rain in a place over a period of time
the cold	<i>I hate the cold.</i>	cold weather
freezing	<i>It was freezing (cold) yesterday.</i>	very cold
thunder and lightning	<i>We had a lot of thunder and lightning during the storm.</i>	a loud noise in the sky when there is a storm, and then a sudden bright light in the sky
sunshine	<i>We sat outside in the sunshine.</i>	the light and heat from the sun
fog	<i>There was thick fog on the motorway this morning.</i>	Fog is cloud close to the ground which is difficult to see through. <b>Thick fog</b> is very difficult to see through. <b>foggy adj</b>
mild	<i>This has been a very mild winter.</i>	not very cold, and therefore pleasant
horrible	<i>The weather has been horrible this week.</i>	very bad or unpleasant SYN <b>dreadful, awful, terrible</b>

**1 Tick the wet weather conditions.**

▶ rainfall  sunshine  foggy  pouring  cloudy  shower  freezing  mild

**2 Match 1-6 with a-g.**

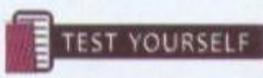
- |              |       |              |
|--------------|-------|--------------|
| ▶ don't like | c     | a weather    |
| 1 thick      | ..... | b with rain  |
| 2 a heavy    | ..... | c the cold ✓ |
| 3 horrible   | ..... | d cold       |
| 4 freezing   | ..... | e shower     |
| 5 a mild     | ..... | f fog        |
| 6 pour       | ..... | g day        |

**3 Complete the words in the texts.**

- When I woke up it was quite cloudy but ▶ mild ....., for the time of year. Then on the way to work, it suddenly got very dark and we had some t ..... and I ....., and it started p ..... with r ..... I got really wet.
- Yesterday was fantastic. It was incredibly hot, and we had about ten hours of s .....
- We've had d ..... weather this week. It's been so f ..... in the morning that you could hardly see, followed by heavy s ..... almost every day, and f ..... cold as well.

**4 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers, or talk to another student.**

- When do you get the heaviest rainfall? .....
- Do you get a lot of sunshine? If so, when? .....
- Is spring generally cold or mild? .....
- Do you get much fog? If so, when? .....
- Is it often freezing cold? If so, when? And do you like the cold? .....



## B Extreme weather



These natural disasters occur quite regularly in certain parts of the world.

**Hurricane**<sup>1</sup>: a sudden and violent storm with very strong winds, which often destroys buildings and brings down branches and trees.

**Flood**<sup>2</sup>: too much water, often the result of heavy rain, which floods the land and damages roads, bridges, buildings, etc.

**Tidal wave**<sup>3</sup>: a very large ocean wave, often caused by an extreme storm or earthquake, which destroys things when it reaches land.

**Drought**<sup>4</sup>: a long period with no rain. Crops die, and people may starve to death.

### GLOSSARY

<b>disaster</b>	sth very bad that happens causing harm or death
<b>occur</b>	happen
<b>regularly</b>	if sth happens <b>regularly</b> , it happens again and again with the same amount of time in between.
<b>sudden</b>	happening very quickly <b>suddenly</b> <i>adv</i>
<b>violent</b>	very strong and usually causing damage
<b>destroy</b>	break sth completely so it cannot be used again
<b>destruction</b>	<i>n</i>
<b>branch</b>	one of the parts of a tree that grow out from the thick main part
<b>damage</b>	break or harm sth <b>damage</b> <i>n</i>
<b>extreme</b>	very great or strong
<b>earthquake</b>	a sudden strong movement of the ground, which often opens up
<b>crops</b>	plants that are grown for food, e.g. <i>rice, potatoes</i>
<b>starve (to death)</b>	die because you do not have enough food to eat

5 Is the pronunciation of the underlined sounds the same or different? Write S or D. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.

▶ flood / moon

D

1 crop / occur

4 violent / tidal

7 damage / branch

2 occur / earthquake

5 drought / bought

8 disaster / regularly

3 disaster / starve

6 drought / out

9 flood / destruction

6 Match 1-5 with a-f.

▶ disaster

d

a a long period of very dry weather

1 flood

b sudden movement of the ground

2 tidal wave

c very strong winds

3 drought

d a very bad thing that causes harm or death ✓

4 earthquake

e a very large movement in the ocean

5 hurricane

f become filled or covered with water

7 Complete the texts.

▶ When the tidal wave reached land, it was over ten metres high.

1 48 hours of heavy rain has brought more \_\_\_\_\_ to the south-west of England. Many roads have been badly \_\_\_\_\_ and winds have also brought down \_\_\_\_\_ and entire trees. Two bridges have been completely \_\_\_\_\_ and will need to be rebuilt.

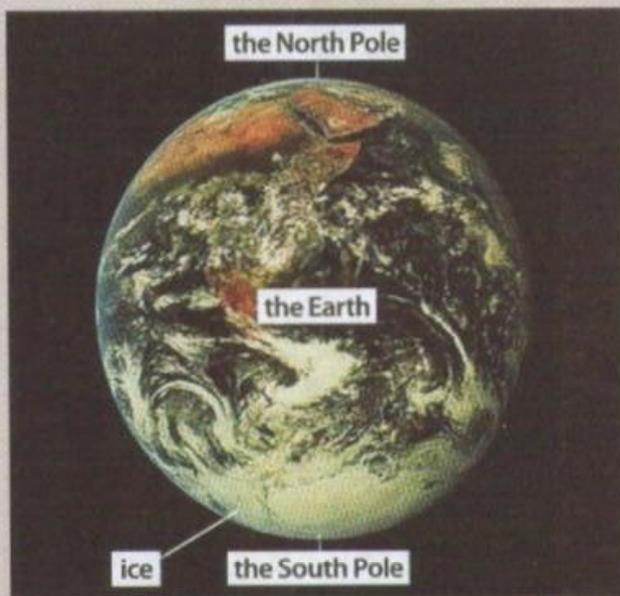
2 With no rain for months, the \_\_\_\_\_ in Ethiopia is the worst for ten years. Food is in short supply because most of the \_\_\_\_\_ have died, and now tens of thousands of people are \_\_\_\_\_ and could die unless help arrives very soon. It is one of the worst natural \_\_\_\_\_ in living memory.

3 We are getting reports of a violent earthquake in Western China. It \_\_\_\_\_ without warning, has caused a huge amount of \_\_\_\_\_ and has completely \_\_\_\_\_ whole villages.

4 California is experiencing more \_\_\_\_\_ weather conditions. After the recent floods, a \_\_\_\_\_ storm is now reaching the west coast of the state. It is accompanied by winds of over 100mph. Weather experts say that these \_\_\_\_\_ are now occurring \_\_\_\_\_: at least one a year over the past ten years.



TEST YOURSELF



Global warming is the gradual increase in the average temperature of the earth's atmosphere, and is caused by an increase of harmful gases in the environment. Many scientists believe that most of this pollution is the result of human activities. Here are some of the effects:

- As the ice at the poles melts, sea levels could rise by almost a metre in the next century.
- There will be more extreme and unpredictable weather, e.g. heatwaves or floods.
- The earth will become even warmer because rainforests are disappearing.
- Famine and disease will spread, and this will affect people, especially in poor countries. They will have to import grain, which will be too expensive.

GLOSSARY

<b>climate change</b>	changes in the earth's weather, especially the increase in the temperature of the earth's atmosphere	<b>melt</b>	If you heat ice, it <b>melts</b> : it changes from a solid to a liquid. <b>ALSO solid adj, liquid adj</b>
<b>global</b>	covering or affecting the whole world: <b>global issues/warming</b>	<b>rise</b>	increase, go higher <b>rise n</b> <b>OPP fall v, n</b>
<b>gradual</b>	happening slowly over a long period of time <b>gradually adv</b>	<b>unpredictable</b>	If sth is <b>unpredictable</b> , you can't say how it will change in the future. <b>OPP predictable; predict v</b>
<b>the atmosphere</b>	the gases around the Earth, planets, etc.	<b>heatwave</b>	a period of unusually hot weather
<b>harmful</b>	causing damage, injury or illness <b>harm v</b>	<b>disappear</b>	If sth or sb <b>disappears</b> , they go away and people cannot see them.
<b>gas</b>	a substance like air, e.g. oxygen, hydrogen, carbon dioxide	<b>famine</b>	<b>Famine</b> happens when many people die because there is not enough food in a country.
<b>the environment</b>	the natural world; the air, land and water in which people, plants and animals live <b>environmental adj</b>	<b>disease</b>	illness in people, animals or plants
<b>pollution</b>	gases, chemicals, etc. that harm the environment <b>pollute v</b>	<b>spread</b>	reach more people or places
<b>human</b>	connected with people	<b>grain</b>	the seeds of a plant that we eat, e.g. rice, corn, wheat

SPOTLIGHT **effect n, affect v**

An **effect** is a change which is caused by something.

- What are the **effects** of global warming?

**Affect** means 'change something in a particular way'.

- Climate change will **affect** all our lives.

1 Complete the words.

▶ hu ma n

1 pr    d    ct    ble

2 dis        ear

3 f    m    ne

4 atmo        ere

5 d    s    se

6 env    ro    m    nt

7 p    ll    t    n

8 h    rmf    l

9 l    qu    d

10 gr    d    al

2 Good or bad news? Write G or B.

▶ This gas won't harm anyone. G

1 Some kinds of animals are disappearing. ....

2 The animals aren't affected by the floods. ....

3 Famine is spreading. ....

4 This liquid is harmful. ....

5 There's less disease in the city now. ....

6 The earth's temperature is rising. ....

7 The ice at the poles is gradually melting. ....

8 The river is polluted. ....

9 It's not a local problem: it's global. ....

10 We have a lot of grain. ....

3 Circle the correct word.

▶ If something rises, it goes up / down.

1 Ice is solid / liquid.

2 How does the situation effect / affect you?

3 It's all very predictable / unpredictable: you never know what's going to happen.

4 My brother is studying the effect of the problem on the environment / the pollution.

5 Global warming is caused by people / human activity.

6 There was snow in the mountains, but now it's spreading / melting.

7 If there is a gradual change in something, it happens slowly / quickly.

8 Water is a liquid / gas.

9 The rainforest is gradually disappearing / melting.

10 There are harmful gases in the atmosphere / effect.

4 Complete the sentences.

▶ The earth is gradually getting warmer.

1 We had a lot of extreme weather last year: a long h    in the summer and then rain and floods in the autumn. I think it's all part of c    change.

2 If you freeze water, it changes from l    to s   .

3 The beach was p    with oil, which seriously a    the sea birds and animals.

4 Environmentalists p    that there will be a r    in sea levels in the future.

5 With g    warming, some kinds of plants and animals are d    very fast.

6 Certain diseases s    from person to person very quickly.

7 P    has a very h    effect on the environment.

8 After many months without rain, there will be only small quantities of g    to feed people, so there is a real danger of f    in this part of Africa.

9 What are the main e    of global w    ?

10 Doctors fear the d    could soon s    as far as Europe.

5 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers, or ask another student.

1 How worried are you about global warming? .....

2 Do you have rainforests in your country? If so, what is happening to them? .....

3 Has the climate changed in recent years in your country? If so, how? .....

4 Which human activities do you think are harming the environment most? .....

5 What kind of pollution is common in your country? .....



TEST YOURSELF

## A What can governments do?

Governments around the world need to do the following:

- **set targets** to **reduce** the levels of **carbon dioxide** in the atmosphere
- get **developing countries** to **sign up** to environmental targets
- **convince** certain countries that they must **take** climate change **seriously**
- introduce public information **campaigns**
- reduce air travel, which is a major **source** of pollution
- increase the use of **renewable energy**.



## GLOSSARY

<b>set</b>	decide what sth will be: <i>set a date for a meeting</i>
<b>target</b>	a result that you want to reach or achieve
<b>reduce</b>	make sth smaller or less in quantity, size, etc.
<b>carbon dioxide</b>	a gas breathed out by people and animals (CO <sub>2</sub> )
<b>developing country</b>	a country that is poor and is just starting to have modern industry
<b>developed country</b>	a country that is rich and has modern industry
<b>sign up (to do sth)</b>	agree formally to do sth
<b>convince</b>	make sb believe sth
<b>take sth seriously</b>	show that you understand sth is important
<b>campaign</b>	a plan to do a number of things to get a special result
<b>source</b>	where sth comes from
<b>renewable energy</b>	energy provided by the sun, wind and water

- 1 All the underlined letters in these words have the same sound, except one. Which is the odd one out? Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

carbon    developing    convince    country    seriously    renewable    energy

ANSWER: .....

- 2 True or false? Write T or F. Correct the false answers.

- ▶ If you **reduce** something, you make it bigger. F - If you reduce something, you make it smaller.
- 1 A **campaign** is part of the countryside. ....
  - 2 If you **convince** somebody, you tell them something that isn't true. ....
  - 3 The **source** of something is where it comes from. ....
  - 4 If you **sign up to** something, you formally agree to do it. ....
  - 5 Coal and gas are examples of **renewable energy**. ....
  - 6 A **target** is something you want to reach or achieve. ....
  - 7 A **developing country** is rich with lots of modern industry. ....
  - 8 **Carbon dioxide** is solid. ....

- 3 Cover the text at the top of the page and complete these dialogues.

- ▶ What does CO<sub>2</sub> stand for? ~ It stands for carbon dioxide.
- 1 What should governments do? ~ They need to set ..... for reducing pollution.
  - 2 What kind of targets? ~ They need to ..... the levels of carbon dioxide in the atmosphere.
  - 3 Has everyone signed up to these targets? ~ We still need the support of more ..... countries.
  - 4 Which governments do we still need to ..... that climate change is happening? ~ Quite a few.
  - 5 Why is that? ~ Because not all of them take it .....
  - 6 What kind of public ..... will help? ~ Something which gives people more information.
  - 7 What should we try to increase? ~ Different forms of renewable .....
  - 8 Why should we reduce the number of flights? ~ Because they're a major ..... of pollution.

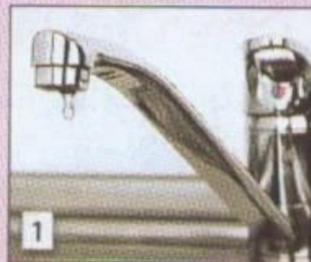


## TEST YOURSELF

## B What can individuals do?

As individuals, we can also have an impact by making a few changes in our daily lives:

- walk or cycle **instead of** getting into our cars.
- **save** water, e.g. by turning off the **tap**<sup>1</sup> when you are cleaning your teeth.
- don't **waste** energy, e.g. **switch off**<sup>2</sup> lights when you leave a room.
- don't **throw away rubbish**: **recycle** it whenever and wherever possible.
- don't **water** your grass in summer. It doesn't need it, and it will grow back.



### GLOSSARY

<b>individual</b>	one person <b>individual</b> <i>adj</i>
<b>impact</b>	the effect that sth has <b>impact on sth</b> <i>v</i>
<b>instead of sth</b>	in place of sth
<b>save</b>	use less of sth
<b>waste</b>	use too much of sth or use it badly
<b>energy</b>	the power from electricity, gas, coal, etc.
<b>switch sth off/on</b>	<b>SYN turn sth off/on</b> ; <b>Switch</b> is only used with electrical things, not taps.
<b>throw sth away</b>	put sth that you do not want in the bin
<b>rubbish</b>	things that you do not want any more
<b>recycle</b>	do sth to materials such as paper and plastic so that they can be used again <b>recycling</b> <i>n</i>
<b>water</b>	give sth water

### SPOTLIGHT *whenever, wherever, whatever*

**Whenever** = at any and every time:

- Save energy **whenever** you can.

**Wherever** = at, to or in any place:

- Think about the environment **wherever** you are.

**Whatever** = anything or everything:

- We must do **whatever** we can to help.

#### 4 Match 1-5 with a-f.

- |               |         |             |
|---------------|---------|-------------|
| ▶ save        | ..... c | a rubbish   |
| 1 switch off  | .....   | b the grass |
| 2 don't waste | .....   | c water ✓   |
| 3 recycle     | .....   | d taps      |
| 4 water       | .....   | e lights    |
| 5 turn off    | .....   | f energy    |

#### 5 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ We must do ▶ **whatever** ..... we can to help the environment.
- 1 You can s ..... a lot of water if you have a shower i ..... of a bath.
  - 2 You can save e ..... if you put on a jumper and turn the heating off.
  - 3 You can r ..... most forms of plastic, so don't just t ..... that bottle away.
  - 4 Climate change i ..... on all countries, but also on each i ..... in society.
  - 5 It is important to save water and energy w ..... and w ..... it is possible.
  - 6 It is important to believe that individuals can have an i ..... on the environment.
  - 7 Do you think r ..... bins are a good idea? Do you recycle most of your r ..... ?

#### 6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or talk to another student.

What other things, as individuals, can we do:

- to save water?
- to save energy?
- to increase recycling?
- to save the environment?



## A Animals, insects and birds



bull



tiger



camel



bear



leopard



wolf



crocodile



eagle



spider



butterfly



bee



mosquito

Many of these creatures live in the wild, which means they live in nature and not with people, e.g. tigers. You can see many of them in a zoo. A bee, a butterfly and a mosquito are all insects: small creatures with six legs and usually wings.

## 1 Write the names of these creatures in order from big to small.

bear    butterfly    eagle    camel ✓    bee    leopard    mosquito

big ▶ camel ..... small

## 2 Yes or No?

- ▶ Can lions and tigers swim? Yes
- 1 Do leopards have spots? \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Do bulls have feathers? \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Do eagles have feathers? \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Can mosquitos make you ill? \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Do bears have fur? \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 Do camels have wings? \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 Do tigers have a tail? \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 Do wolves have fur? \_\_\_\_\_
- 9 Do butterflies have wings? \_\_\_\_\_
- 10 Do spiders fly? \_\_\_\_\_
- 11 Do some butterflies have spots? \_\_\_\_\_

## 3 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ Bees ..... make honey, don't they?
- 1 They say ..... can go for months without drinking.
- 2 There are a lot of ..... in the zoo: animals, insects and fish.
- 3 You can see lots of animals in the ..... in parts of Africa.
- 4 Did you see any tigers when you went to the ..... ?
- 5 A spider has eight legs (not six), so it's not an .....
- 6 The bird had a problem with one of its ..... and it couldn't fly.
- 7 I love the ..... on tigers – they're beautiful.
- 8 Thick ..... keeps bears warm in cold winters.

## 4 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers, or ask another student.

In your country, which of the creatures at the top of the page do people kill, and why?

- ▶ People kill spiders because they don't want them in their homes, or because they're afraid of them.



## TEST YOURSELF

## B Unusual facts about animals

### Snakes

There are about 2,600 different kinds of snake. About 400 are **poisonous**, but many are **harmless**. In size, they **vary** enormously: the smallest are 12 centimetres long, the biggest are **up to** ten metres and **weigh** 250 kilos. Snakes don't need energy from food (the sun heats their bodies), so they can **survive** for months without eating.



### Sharks

The **average lifespan** of a shark is about 25 years but some can live to be 100. They are unusual in that they have no **bones** in their body, and large sharks may have up to 4,000 teeth. They are very dangerous when they **hunt**, but only a few **attack** humans: more people die from bee **stings** than from shark attacks.



### GLOSSARY

<b>poisonous</b>	If an animal or insect is <b>poisonous</b> , it produces a dangerous substance ( <b>poison</b> ) that can kill or harm you.	<b>average</b>	normal or typical
<b>harmless</b>	not causing damage, injury or illness <b>OPP harmful; harm n, v</b>	<b>lifespan</b>	the time that sth is likely to live (For people, we say <b>life expectancy</b> .)
<b>vary</b>	(of a group of similar things) be different from each other	<b>bone</b>	
<b>up to</b>	used when saying the most an amount can be	<b>hunt</b>	go after sth, usually an animal, to catch and kill it
<b>weigh</b>	have a certain <b>weight n</b> , which is how heavy sth is	<b>attack</b>	try to hurt sb/sth by using physical force <b>attack n</b>
<b>survive</b>	continue to live in a difficult situation <b>survival n</b>	<b>sting</b>	a sudden pain caused by poison sent into the skin <b>sting v</b> Bees <b>sting</b> , but mosquitos and snakes <b>bite</b> .

### 5 True, false or both according to the text? Write T or F. If the sentences are false, correct them.

- ▶ The average lifespan of a snake is 25 years. F - The average lifespan of a shark is 25 years.
- 1 Most snakes are poisonous. \_\_\_\_\_ 4 Snakes can weigh up to 250 kilos. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Most sharks are harmless to humans. \_\_\_\_\_ 5 Sharks have 400 bones in their body. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Snakes can survive without the sun's heat. \_\_\_\_\_ 6 Sharks sting when they attack. \_\_\_\_\_

### 6 Answer the questions. Do you know ...?

- ▶ if **attack** is a noun, a verb, or both? both
- 1 the noun from the verb **survive**? \_\_\_\_\_ 4 the adjective from **poison**? \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 the time that people are likely to live? Life \_\_\_\_\_ 5 the two adjectives from the noun **harm**? \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 the noun from the verb **weigh**? \_\_\_\_\_ 6 the verb from the noun **sting**? \_\_\_\_\_

### 7 Complete the words in these animal facts.

- ▶ The average **lifespan** \_\_\_\_\_ of most bees is 30-35 days.
- 1 Some snakes can s \_\_\_\_\_ for almost a year without food.
- 2 Nobody knows the a \_\_\_\_\_ lifespan of a snake, but in zoos they can reach 30.
- 3 People h \_\_\_\_\_ sharks for their meat and skin, but also for sport.
- 4 Over 100 people a year die from a bee s \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 Snakes can grow u \_\_\_\_\_ to nine metres long.
- 6 The size of sharks can v \_\_\_\_\_ from the size of your hand to the size of a bus.
- 7 P \_\_\_\_\_ from some snakes can kill you.
- 8 Some snakes can w \_\_\_\_\_ as much as 250 kilos.



### TEST YOURSELF

**A Gradable and ungradable adjectives**

We had an **enormous** meal to celebrate my birthday.

I was **amazed** at the size of the statue.

My son's new flat is really **tiny**.

The food at the pub was **awful**. Don't go there.

I was **absolutely exhausted** after the long walk.

Dad was **absolutely furious** when I took his car.

It's **essential** that you buy a good dictionary.

Marcel had a **brilliant** game. He was the best player.

You must go to Istanbul - it's a **fascinating** place.

We're both **really terrified** of dogs. It's stupid, I know.

**GLOSSARY**

<b>enormous</b>	very big SYN <b>huge</b>	<b>amazed</b>	very surprised
<b>tiny</b>	very small	<b>awful</b>	very bad SYN <b>dreadful</b>
<b>exhausted</b>	very tired	<b>furious</b>	very angry
<b>essential</b>	very important SYN <b>vital</b>	<b>brilliant</b> <i>inf</i>	very good
<b>fascinating</b>	very interesting	<b>terrified</b>	very frightened

**SPOTLIGHT** gradable and ungradable adjectives

**Gradable adjectives**, e.g. *good, big*, can be used in comparative and superlative forms, and can be used with **very**.  
 ■ **very good/big**  
**Ungradable adjectives**, e.g. *fantastic, tiny*, cannot be used in comparative and superlative forms, and are used with **absolutely**.  
 ■ **absolutely fantastic/tiny** (NOT *absolutely-good*)  
 You can use **really** with gradable and ungradable adjectives.  
 ■ **really good/interesting**, etc. ■ **really essential/fascinating**, etc.

**1 Match the gradable adjectives from Box A with the extreme adjectives from Box B.**

A **angry** ✓ small tired interesting good bad important big frightened

B enormous dreadful vital furious ✓ tiny terrified fascinating brilliant exhausted

▶ angry/furious \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_

**2 Underline the correct answer. Be careful: both answers may be correct.**

- ▶ I thought the film was very good / awful.
- 1 He was absolutely frightened / terrified at sea.
- 2 I was very tired / exhausted by the end of the day.
- 3 The orchestra was really good / brilliant.
- 4 Matt was absolutely angry / furious when he found us in the garage.
- 5 Her books about India are really interesting / fascinating.
- 6 A dictionary is absolutely important / essential.
- 7 We were really surprised / amazed at how many people were there.
- 8 The programmes on Central Asia were very good / brilliant.

**3 Complete the dialogues.**

- ▶ Was it a bad film? ~ Yes, absolutely awful.
- 1 Did you find the book interesting? ~ Yes, really \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 Was it a big place? ~ Yes, absolutely \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 It was a good match, wasn't it. ~ Oh yeah, really \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 I expect you were tired at the end of the day. ~ Yes, absolutely \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 Were you frightened in the hospital? ~ Yes, absolutely \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 I think he's a bad actor. ~ I agree - really \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7 It's a very small car, isn't it? ~ Yes, absolutely \_\_\_\_\_.
- 8 Were you surprised your brother was there? ~ Yes, really \_\_\_\_\_.

**TEST YOURSELF**

## B -ed / -ing adjectives

-ed / -ing adjectives	Examples	Meaning
amazed amazing	<i>I was amazed at the quality of the dancing. (The quality of the dancing was amazing.)</i>	very surprised, often in a positive way; very surprising SYN <b>astonished</b> ; <b>astonishing</b>
confused confusing	<i>I was confused by the train timetable. (The train timetable was confusing.)</i>	unable to think clearly; not clear
disappointed disappointing	<i>I was disappointed with my exam results.</i>	upset because sth was not as good as you expected; upsetting
embarrassed embarrassing	<i>I was embarrassed when I forgot his name.</i>	feeling uncomfortable because of sth stupid you have done; making you feel uncomfortable
fascinated fascinating	<i>I was fascinated by the painter's use of colour.</i>	very interested; very interesting
frightened frightening	<i>I was frightened watching that film.</i>	afraid, scared; making you afraid/scared
relaxed relaxing	<i>I felt very relaxed on holiday.</i>	able to rest and not feel worried; making it possible to rest
worried worrying	<i>I was worried when Kiko didn't arrive.</i>	unhappy because you think sth bad will happen or has happened; making you unhappy

### SPOTLIGHT the suffixes -ed and -ing

Adjectives that end with **-ed** describe feelings. Adjectives that end with **-ing** describe the person or thing that makes you have these feelings.

- I was **bored** in the lesson.
- The lesson was **boring**.
- I'm **interested** in photography.
- Photography is **interesting**.

#### 4 Circle the correct answer.

- Some of the beaches on Corfu were absolutely amazing / amazed.
- I think everyone felt *relaxing* / *relaxed* at the party.
  - Marcel was a bit *confusing* / *confused* during the lesson.
  - The hotel didn't have a restaurant, which was rather *disappointing* / *disappointed*.
  - I was *astonishing* / *astonished* by his reaction.
  - I thought China was a *fascinating* / *fascinated* place to visit.
  - I think Jose felt a bit *embarrassing* / *embarrassed* about the cost of the meal.
  - We were all a bit *worrying* / *worried* when the storm started.
  - It was a bit *frightening* / *frightened* when the window got broken.

#### 5 Complete the dialogues with adjectives from the table.

- Were you frightened? ~ Yes, absolutely terrified.
- Did you know which direction you were going in? ~ No, I was a bit .....
  - You wore jeans to a formal party?! ~ Yes, I felt a bit .....
  - The weather was awful for the whole holiday. ~ Oh, that's very .....
  - Did you say you lost your passport in Australia? ~ Yes, it was very .....
  - It's hard to believe the children are only 8 or 9. ~ I know. They're .....
  - Were you afraid? ~ Yes, it was a bit .....
  - Do you like sitting in the sun? ~ Yes, I find it very .....
  - Was your father pleased with the hotel? ~ No, he was a bit ....., actually.

#### 6 In the table above there are two examples for the first two adjectives. Write a second example for the other adjectives.

- I was amazed at the quality of the dancing. The quality of the dancing was amazing.



### TEST YOURSELF

## A Describing qualities

People have **mixed feelings** about the new city hotel.  
Here are some comments:

The rooms were **pleasant** but I didn't like the **artificial** flowers.

I quite like the **modern** design – simple but **effective**.

Most of the staff were **temporary**, but they seemed very good.

Our room was nice, but we thought the **public** areas were a bit dull.



They put chocolates in our room, which was very **unexpected**.

We were **pleased** our room was at the back, where it was quiet.

Being in the centre of town, it was very **convenient**.

### GLOSSARY

<b>mixed feelings</b>	both <b>positive (+)</b> and <b>negative (-)</b> feelings about sth
<b>pleasant</b>	(of a place) nice, attractive
<b>artificial</b>	made by people and used instead of sth natural OPP <b>real</b> OR <b>natural</b>
<b>modern</b>	of the present time OPP <b>old-fashioned</b>
<b>effective</b>	successful and giving the result you want OPP <b>ineffective</b>
<b>temporary</b>	only continuing for a short time OPP <b>permanent</b>
<b>public</b>	free for anybody to use OPP <b>private</b>
<b>pleased</b>	happy about a particular event or situation OPP <b>unhappy</b>
<b>unexpected</b>	If sth is <b>unexpected</b> , it surprises you because you didn't know it was going to happen. OPP <b>expected</b>
<b>convenient</b>	near to a place or easy to get to OPP <b>inconvenient</b>

### 1 Match 1–6 with a–g.

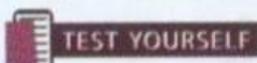
- |                    |               |                |
|--------------------|---------------|----------------|
| ▶ an old-fashioned | ..... f ..... | a worker       |
| 1 mixed            | .....         | b result       |
| 2 a private        | .....         | c party        |
| 3 a temporary      | .....         | d light        |
| 4 an unexpected    | .....         | e architecture |
| 5 natural          | .....         | f dress ✓      |
| 6 modern           | .....         | g feelings     |

### 2 Replace the underlined adjective with an opposite.

- |   |                       |   |       |
|---|-----------------------|---|-------|
| ▶ I had <u>negative</u> feelings.             | <u>positive</u> ..... | 4 Is that <u>real</u> snow?             | ..... |
| 1 They had <u>old-fashioned</u> furniture.    | .....                 | 5 We were <u>unhappy</u> with the meal. | ..... |
| 2 It's a really <u>convenient</u> location.   | .....                 | 6 It was an <u>effective</u> method.    | ..... |
| 3 I wanted to meet in a <u>private</u> place. | .....                 | 7 The visit was <u>expected</u> .       | ..... |
|   |                       | 8 It's a <u>temporary</u> arrangement.  | ..... |

### 3 Complete the sentences with suitable adjectives.

- ▶ She's only a temporary member of staff. I think she's leaving next week.
- I have ..... feelings about working abroad: part of me wants to, but I'd miss my family.
  - The doctor gave me tablets for the pain, but they weren't very ..... My back still hurts.
  - I was very ..... with the decorators. They did a great job.
  - She wears clothes that make her look like something from the 1990s – they're very old .....
  - My sister's going to have a baby. It was completely ....., but we're all very happy about it.
  - My flat is very ..... for the station – it's only a five-minute walk away.
  - A lot of people don't like ..... art because they don't understand it.
  - Sometimes Ava is very positive, but she can also be quite .....
  - I had a temporary contract, but they've made it ..... now, which is good.
  - My son hasn't worked hard so he isn't ..... to pass the exam.



## B Pairs of opposites

### TELL US ABOUT YOU AND YOUR OPINIONS!

- Do you like books or films about **imaginary** worlds?
- Do you prefer wearing **baggy** jeans or **tight** jeans?
- Do you prefer **indoor** swimming pools or **outdoor** pools?
- Do you own anything which is **rare**?
- When you drive somewhere, do you always look for the most **direct** route?
- In English law, you are **innocent** until proven **guilty**. Do you agree with that idea?
- Is it always good to be a **careful** driver?
- What's the most **useful** piece of advice anyone has given you?

### GLOSSARY

<b>imaginary</b>	not real; only in your mind <b>OPP real</b>
<b>baggy</b>	If clothes are <b>baggy</b> , they are big and loose. <b>OPP tight</b>
<b>indoor</b>	done or used inside a building <b>OPP outdoor</b>
<b>rare</b>	If sth is <b>rare</b> , you do not find or see it often. <b>OPP common</b>
<b>direct</b>	as straight as possible, without turning or stopping <b>OPP indirect</b>
<b>innocent</b>	If you are <b>innocent</b> , you have not done anything wrong. <b>OPP guilty</b>
<b>careful</b>	thinking about what you are doing so that you do not make a mistake or have an accident <b>OPP careless</b>
<b>useful</b>	good and helpful for doing sth <b>OPP useless</b>

### SPOTLIGHT adjectives ending in *-ful* and *-less* (1)

Some adjectives are formed by adding *-ful* to the noun, with the meaning 'full of' or 'having a lot of', e.g. **careful**, **useful**, **painful**, **powerful**. The opposite is sometimes formed by adding *-less* (= without) to the noun, e.g. **careless**, **useless**, **powerless** and **painless**. This is not always true, e.g. **wonderful** (NOT **wonderless**).

4 Is the pronunciation of the underlined sounds the same or different? Write S or D. Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| ▶ baggy / <u>imaginary</u> <u>D</u>      | 4 <u>powerful</u> / <u>wonderful</u> ..... |
| 1 <u>careful</u> / <u>rare</u> .....     | 5 <u>imaginary</u> / <u>innocent</u> ..... |
| 2 <u>guilty</u> / <u>tight</u> .....     | 6 <u>innocent</u> / <u>useless</u> .....   |
| 3 <u>common</u> / <u>wonderful</u> ..... | 7 <u>useful</u> / <u>careful</u> .....     |

5 Good news or bad news? Write G or B.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| ▶ We've got a real problem. <u>B</u>    | 4 This tin opener is useless.     ..... |
| 1 He's got a rare illness.     .....    | 5 They found her innocent.     .....    |
| 2 The injection was painless.     ..... | 6 They found her guilty.     .....      |
| 3 It's a direct route.     .....        | 7 The book was useful.     .....        |

6 Replace the underlined word with an opposite.

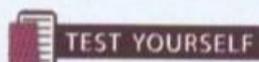
- |  |  |
|--|--|
| ▶ an <u>indoor</u> game <u>an outdoor game</u> | 4 a <u>powerful</u> group     .....      |
| 1 a <u>tight</u> shirt     .....               | 5 <u>real</u> people in a book     ..... |
| 2 a <u>common</u> mistake     .....            | 6 a <u>careless</u> driver     .....     |
| 3 a <u>direct</u> route     .....              | 7 an <u>innocent</u> man     .....       |

7 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ Will is a common name these days. I know lots of people called Will.
- 1 Mika needs to check his work more: he makes lots of ..... mistakes.
  - 2 This belt is very .....: it's difficult to breathe.
  - 3 The teacher said that George stole the pen, but George says he's .....
  - 4 It's not a very cold climate, so it's ..... to have temperatures below zero degrees.
  - 5 I want to take a ..... train so that I get there as quickly as possible.
  - 6 They found him ..... of several crimes. He'll be in prison for four years.

8 **ABOUT YOU** Write your answers to the questions at the top of the page, or talk to another student.

- ▶ Yes, I do - especially films, such as The Shape of Water.



**A Some other ways of saying 'very'**

All the adverbs underlined below mean 'very', 'very much' or 'a lot'. They are used with particular adjectives or verbs.

Jack was seriously injured in a car accident.

It's highly unlikely the boys will get here on time – they're nearly always late.

The children were terribly sorry they couldn't come to the party.

It's vitaly important to revise vocabulary you learn – otherwise you forget it.

I love Lucy, but she's completely mad.

This author's first book was totally different to this one.

I strongly believe that political party is wrong about immigration.

I absolutely love Chinese food.

My boss has travelled widely in Asia.

Prices have risen sharply in the last year.

**GLOSSARY**

<b>seriously</b>	badly and in a serious way: <i>seriously injured/ill/damaged</i>
<b>injured</b>	If you are <b>injured</b> , your body is hurt, often from an accident.
<b>highly</b>	very, very much: <i>highly likely/unlikely</i>
<b>unlikely</b>	If sth is <b>unlikely</b> , it probably will not happen. <b>OPP likely</b>
<b>terribly</b>	very: <i>terribly sad/sorry</i>
<b>vitaly</b>	extremely: <i>vitaly important</i>
<b>mad inf</b>	stupid, but sometimes in a funny way <b>SYN crazy</b>
<b>strongly</b>	in a way that shows serious opinions: <i>strongly believe; feel strongly</i>
<b>widely</b>	in or to a lot of places: <i>travel widely</i>
<b>rise pt rose pp risen</b>	go up; increase
<b>sharply</b>	suddenly and by a lot: <i>rise/fall sharply</i>

**SPOTLIGHT** *completely, absolutely, totally*

**Completely, absolutely** and **totally** are used with a range of ungradable adjectives (see Unit 19).

- **completely/absolutely/totally unnecessary/sure**
- **I completely/absolutely/totally agree/understand.**

Sometimes we use **completely/totally** with certain adjectives, but not **absolutely**.

- **completely/totally wrong/different** (NOT *absolutely wrong/different*)

**1 Add a suitable adverb to each sentence.**

- ▶ It's / important to go. vitaly/terribly/highly
- 1 He's been ill. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 I love his new musical. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 That man is mad. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 I feel we should change. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 He's likely to move to another city. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 It's a sad film. \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 It was unnecessary to do that. \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 My gas bill has risen. \_\_\_\_\_

**2 Complete the sentences with a suitable word.**

- ▶ I absolutely love \_\_\_\_\_ the music you hear in the street.
- 1 I think he's right. I completely \_\_\_\_\_ with him.
- 2 Smoking can seriously \_\_\_\_\_ your health.
- 3 I'm terribly \_\_\_\_\_. I completely \_\_\_\_\_ to bring my homework.
- 4 He \_\_\_\_\_ widely when he was in South America.
- 5 We both \_\_\_\_\_ strongly that the government should change its policy on forests.
- 6 I'm not totally \_\_\_\_\_ that he knows what he's doing with that camera.
- 7 They're highly \_\_\_\_\_ to be on holiday now – it's a normal working week.
- 8 My bag has completely \_\_\_\_\_. Have you seen it anywhere?
- 9 The price of printing has \_\_\_\_\_ sharply – that's fantastic news.

**3 Replace very with a different adverb in each sentence.**

- ▶ She's very sorry about the mistake. terribly
- 1 A good dictionary is very important. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 It's very unlikely that he'll come. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 He's been very ill. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 It used to be quiet round here, but it's very different now. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 A bigger flat is very unnecessary. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 That story of the missing girl is very sad. \_\_\_\_\_



## B Frequency and degree

- Axel** Do you and Mac still go to concerts regularly?
- Harry** No, we rarely see each other these days. The last time was roughly a year ago.
- Axel** Oh. Why's that?
- Harry** I mainly get about by bike, and that's too far to cycle.
- Axel** But you still go to concerts, don't you?
- Harry** No, not so frequently - I think I'm getting slightly old for rock concerts. Generally, I listen to music at home now.
- Axel** Don't you miss the excitement of live concerts?
- Harry** No, not really. I find the noise and hysteria rather annoying, actually.

### GLOSSARY

<b>regularly</b>	happening quite often, with the same amount of space or time in between
<b>rarely</b>	not often SYN <b>seldom</b>
<b>roughly</b>	about, not exactly SYN <b>approximately</b>
<b>mainly</b>	mostly
<b>frequently</b>	often
<b>slightly</b>	a little SYN <b>a little bit</b>
<b>generally</b>	usually, most of the time SYN <b>on the whole</b>

### SPOTLIGHT *quite, fairly, rather, pretty*

These words all mean 'not very; to a certain degree'. **Pretty** is more informal.

- It's **quite** warm today.
- He's **fairly/rather** lazy.
- The film was **pretty** good.

If you use **rather** with a positive adjective, you are often surprised and pleased.

- It's a very cheap restaurant, but the food is **rather** good.

#### 4 Same or different? Write S or D.

- ▶ The town is mostly industrial. / The town is mainly industrial. S
- 1 They rarely work at weekends. / They regularly work at weekends. ....
- 2 Generally, it's very quiet here. / On the whole, it's very quiet here. ....
- 3 He's slightly ill. / He's seldom ill. ....
- 4 They seldom work late. / They rarely work late. ....
- 5 There were roughly 40. / There were generally 40. ....
- 6 The book was rather good. / The book was pretty good. ....

#### 5 Replace the underlined word with a different word or phrase with the same meaning.

- ▶ I go to the gym regularly. quite often
- 1 Generally, I walk into town if the weather's nice. ....
- 2 The students were mostly Italian. ....
- 3 There were roughly 30 people at the party. ....
- 4 The dictionary was quite useful. ....
- 5 We seldom go out during the week. ....
- 6 My family often get together for a meal. ....
- 7 I expected your sister to be short, but actually she's quite tall. ....
- 8 On the whole, the weather was quite good. ....

#### 6 Cover the sentences in Exercises 5 and look at your answers. Write a synonym for each of your answers, then look at the sentences to see if you're right.

#### 7 ABOUT YOU Write your own answers, or talk to another student.

- ▶ Something that you do frequently. I frequently go for a long walk on Sunday morning.
- 1 Something that is generally true for you. ....
- 2 Something that you rarely do now, but often did in the past. ....
- 3 Something that you do regularly. ....
- 4 Something you have seen or read recently that was pretty good. ....
- 5 Something that you have seen or read recently that was fairly boring. ....
- 6 Something that you find slightly annoying. ....



### TEST YOURSELF

## A Emphasizing

I hate being at home all the time, **especially** in winter, so **naturally**, I was really pleased when a couple of friends suggested a trip to the Canary Islands in December. It's **obviously** an expensive time to go there when the weather is so good, but **actually**, we managed to find a cheap flight and a hotel in our price range that was **perfectly** acceptable. I **specifically** asked for a room with a sea view, so I was disappointed to find myself in a dark room at the back. **Eventually**, they found me a room with a balcony. I heard later that they **simply** offered another guest a big discount if he would move, which rather embarrassed me. I had a good time, though: I **hardly** moved from the beach all week. I would recommend the area for a great winter break, but **not necessarily** that hotel.

Send

### GLOSSARY

<b>especially</b>	more than usual or more than others <b>SYN particularly</b>
<b>naturally</b>	in a way that you expect <b>SYN of course</b>
<b>obviously</b>	in a way that is easy to see or understand <b>SYN clearly</b>
<b>actually</b>	a word you use to introduce a surprising fact <b>SYN in (actual) fact</b>
<b>perfectly</b>	completely
<b>specifically</b>	If you ask <b>specifically</b> for sth, you want one particular thing and not any others: <i>I <b>specifically</b> asked him to get brown bread, not white bread.</i>
<b>eventually</b>	after a long time, and often after some difficulty
<b>simply</b>	a word you use when you want to show how easy sth is; just
<b>hardly</b>	almost not; only just
<b>not necessarily</b>	possibly but not definitely or always true

### 1 Same or different? Write S or D.

- ▶ They were perfectly happy. / They were eventually happy. D
- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1 He was obviously keen to go. / He was clearly keen to go. ....                           | 5 We eventually waited for them. / We specifically waited for them. ....       |
| 2 The food was actually quite good. / The food was naturally quite good. ....              | 6 We hardly left the building. / We eventually left the building. ....         |
| 3 The house is actually very nice. / In fact, the house is very nice. ....                 | 7 Naturally, everyone spoke English. / Of course, everyone spoke English. .... |
| 4 The food was good, especially the fish. / The food was good, particularly the fish. .... | 8 You simply add sugar. / You obviously add sugar. ....                        |

### 2 Complete the sentences.

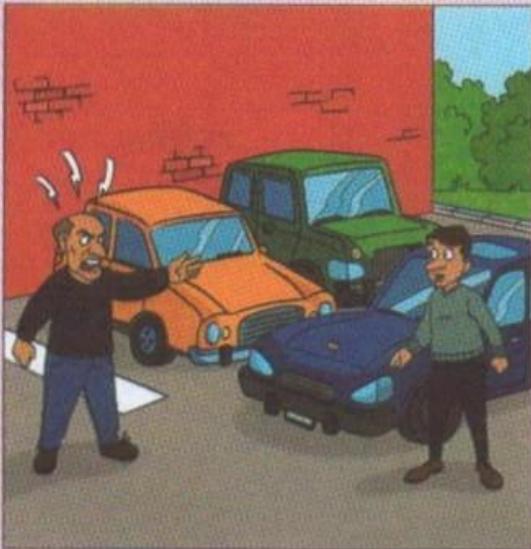
- ▶ It's easy to get cheap tickets: you simply need to book a month before you travel.
- It took us about two hours, but ..... we found the place.
  - Is it always busy? ~ Not ..... It can be very quiet sometimes.
  - We loved all the animals we saw, but ..... the elephants.
  - It was a very long day, so ..... we were pretty tired by the end of it.
  - They told us entry was free, but ..... we had to pay £10 each.
  - I ..... asked the waiter if there were any nuts in the food because I have an allergy.
  - You don't look well. Are you OK? ~ Yes, I'm ..... all right.
  - Maria is doing well. Last year she could ..... speak a word of English.

### 3 Complete the sentences in a logical way.

- ▶ We hadn't eaten all day, so naturally we were very hungry .....
- Marie was an hour late, so obviously I .....
  - He said he'd bought the car this year, but in actual fact he .....
  - I enjoy most Olympic sports, but especially .....
  - They said it was a ten-minute walk, but actually .....
  - With the snow in my face I could hardly .....
  - Ethan and Ed were a couple of hours late, but eventually .....
  - It's easy to get drinks from the machine. You simply .....



## B Manner



He shouted at me **angrily** when I refused to move my car.  
 My parents are **happily** married.  
 Ollie's horse died **suddenly**, so we were all quite shocked.  
 When we left the house, it was raining **heavily**.  
 He spoke very **calmly** about his wartime experience, which was surprising.  
 The new marketing team are now working quite **effectively**.  
 She speaks very **clearly**, so I can understand most of what she says.  
 The photocopier isn't working **properly** – I must speak to the engineer.  
 Sofia completed her studies **successfully**. Now she wants a good job.  
 Brad always asks very **politely** if he wants something.  
 The meeting was **badly** organized.  
 They did everything very **secretly**, so nobody knew about it.

### SPOTLIGHT adverbs of manner

Some adverbs tell you how something happens. They are often formed from the related adjective *-ly*.  
**polite/politely bad/badly angry/angrily**  
 They usually go after a verb, but can go before past participles.

- I **drove** *carefully*.
- She **spoke** *quietly*.
- The food was **well** *cooked*.

### GLOSSARY

<b>suddenly</b>	quickly and when you do not expect it
<b>heavily</b>	a lot
<b>calmly</b>	in a way that shows you are not excited, nervous or upset
<b>effectively</b>	in a way that gives a positive result
<b>clearly</b>	in a way that is easy to see, hear or understand
<b>properly</b>	well or correctly
<b>successfully</b>	having got or done what you wanted
<b>secretly</b>	without other people knowing <b>SYN in secret</b>

### 4 Yes or No?

- ▶ If somebody asks you a question politely, are you pleased? Yes
- 1 If it rains heavily and you haven't got an umbrella, are you pleased? \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 If something works effectively, are you angry? \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 If something happens suddenly, are you surprised? \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 If you do something successfully, are you pleased? \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 If you respond angrily, are you happy? \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 If something works properly, are you pleased? \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 If you do something secretly, do other people know about it? \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 If you hear something clearly, do you hear it well? \_\_\_\_\_

### 5 Complete the sentences with a suitable adverb.

- ▶ When I was a child, we lived happily without mobile phones.
- 1 It was raining \_\_\_\_\_ when we left the cinema.
- 2 The storm was a shock because it started so \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 Remember to speak \_\_\_\_\_ so people can hear you and understand what you're saying.
- 4 They've got a new system, and it's working very \_\_\_\_\_, which is great.
- 5 It's incredible. My brother can carry on working \_\_\_\_\_ when people around him are shouting.
- 6 He spoke very \_\_\_\_\_ when he was leaving the room – he was so annoyed with his colleagues.
- 7 They organized the party \_\_\_\_\_, so it was a big surprise for their father.
- 8 That radio hasn't worked \_\_\_\_\_ for ages: there's a buzzing noise all the time.
- 9 There was ice on the road so mum drove very \_\_\_\_\_.
- 10 My essay was so \_\_\_\_\_ written that my teacher told me to do it again.

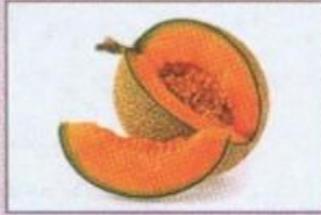


### TEST YOURSELF

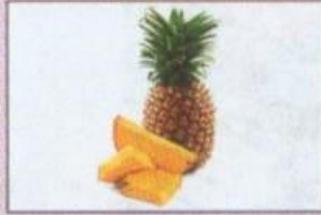
## fruit



(a bunch of) grapes



melon



pineapple



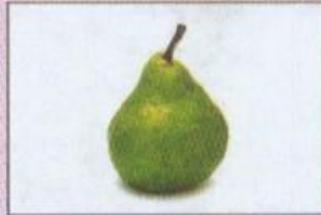
mango



(a bunch of) cherries



watermelon



pear

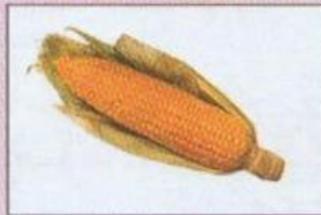


fruit salad

## vegetables, salad and herbs



cabbage



sweetcorn



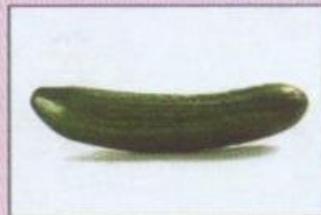
lettuce

mixed vegetables  
(fresh or frozen)

garlic



courgette



cucumber



mint

green beans  
(ALSO French beans)

red pepper



broccoli



parsley

Mint and parsley are herbs.

1 Cover the pictures. Tick the items that are usually green on the outside.

- |   |                  |                    |                   |
|---|------------------|--------------------|-------------------|
| ▶ parsley <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | 3 lettuce .....  | 6 watermelon ..... | 9 sweetcorn ..... |
| 1 cherries .....                              | 4 garlic .....   | 7 cucumber .....   | 10 mint .....     |
| 2 green beans .....                           | 5 broccoli ..... | 8 cabbage .....    | 11 mango .....    |

2 Is the pronunciation of the underlined sounds the same or different? Write S or D.

Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.

- |  |  |   |
|--|--|---|
| ▶ fruit salad / <u>c</u> ourgette <u>D</u> | 4 melon / sweet <u>c</u> orn .....                     | 8 <u>p</u> ear / <u>h</u> erbs .....                  |
| 1 cabbage / <u>g</u> arlic .....           | 5 mango / bro <u>cc</u> oli .....                      | 9 <u>b</u> eans / <u>s</u> weetcorn .....             |
| 2 lettuce / <u>c</u> ucumber .....         | 6 <u>p</u> arsley / <u>g</u> arlic .....               | 10 <u>p</u> ineapple / <u>m</u> ixed vegetables ..... |
| 3 <u>c</u> ucumber / <u>b</u> unch .....   | 7 <u>c</u> our <u>g</u> ette / <u>v</u> egetable ..... | 11 <u>f</u> rozen / <u>m</u> ango .....               |

3 Circle the odd one out in each group. Write why they are different.

- |                 |                |                |                |                                       |
|-----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|---------------------------------------|
| ▶ a) peach      | b) watermelon  | c) <u>mint</u> | d) pineapple   | <u>A, b and d are types of fruit.</u> |
| 1 a) red pepper | b) broccoli    | c) lettuce     | d) pear        | .....                                 |
| 2 a) garlic     | b) melon       | c) grapes      | d) fruit salad | .....                                 |
| 3 a) cabbage    | b) green beans | c) parsley     | d) cucumber    | .....                                 |
| 4 a) sweetcorn  | b) herbs       | c) courgette   | d) cabbage     | .....                                 |
| 5 a) mango      | b) pineapple   | c) bunch       | d) cherries    | .....                                 |

4 Cover page 56 and complete the words.

- |   |                       |                          |
|---|-----------------------|--------------------------|
| ▶ p <u>a</u> <u>r</u> <u>s</u> <u>l</u> <u>e</u> <u>y</u> | 6 p _ _ _ a _ _ _ e   | 12 c _ _ rr _ _ s        |
| 1 m _ _ _ n   | 7 l _ tt _ _ e        | 13 p _ _ rs              |
| 2 c _ _ _ a _ e   | 8 g _ _ _ n b _ _ _ s | 14 g _ _ l _ c           |
| 3 w _ _ term _ _ l _ _ n                                  | 9 m _ _ _ g _ _       | 15 r _ _ d p _ _ _ _ _ r |
| 4 g _ _ _ p _ _ s   | 10 c _ _ rg _ _ _ e   | 16 c _ c _ m _ _ _       |
| 5 br _ _ c _ _ l _ _                                      | 11 s _ _ _ tc _ _ _   |                          |

5 Write the words in Exercise 4 in the correct column.

FRUIT	VEGETABLES
.....	.....
.....	.....
.....	.....

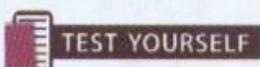
6 Which of the words in the table do people usually eat with their fingers?

- ▶ pear .....

7 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

Do you like these foods? If so, how often do you eat them?

- grapes Yes, I like grapes and eat them a lot in the summer.
- mint No, I don't like mint, and I never add it to anything I eat.
- mixed vegetables \_\_\_\_\_ fruit salad \_\_\_\_\_
- courgettes \_\_\_\_\_ pears \_\_\_\_\_
- watermelon \_\_\_\_\_ sweetcorn \_\_\_\_\_
- garlic \_\_\_\_\_ mango \_\_\_\_\_
- parsley \_\_\_\_\_ frozen green beans \_\_\_\_\_
- cherries \_\_\_\_\_



## A Containers



a tin of crab



a can of fizzy drink



a packet of peanuts



a packet of cocoa powder



a jar of honey



a carton of juice



a vase of flowers



a basket of fruit



a tube of glue

### GLOSSARY

- container** a thing you can put other things in, e.g. a packet, a tin  
**contain v.** The packet **contains** Italian biscuits.  
**fizzy** (of a drink) containing many small **bubbles** (= balls of air or gas). A **fizzy drink** is a non-alcoholic sweet drink with bubbles in it.  
**powder** a dry substance like flour that is made of very small pieces: **soap powder, chilli powder**  
**cocoa** a dark brown powder made from cocoa beans and used for making chocolate

### SPOTLIGHT *tin and can*

In British English, we usually say **tin** when there is food inside, and we say **can** if it contains liquid (water, drinks, etc.).

- a **tin** of tuna/beans
- a **can** of cola/beer

**1 Study the pictures for one minute, then cover them. Did you see these things? Write Yes or No.**

- |                           |           |                     |            |                        |       |
|---------------------------|-----------|---------------------|------------|------------------------|-------|
| ▶ a jar of peanuts        | <u>no</u> | ▶ a carton of juice | <u>yes</u> | 7 a can of cola        | ..... |
| 1 a tin of beans          | .....     | 4 a jar of jam      | .....      | 8 a vase of flowers    | ..... |
| 2 a fizzy drink can       | .....     | 5 a tube of glue    | .....      | 9 some containers      | ..... |
| 3 a packet of soap powder | .....     | 6 a tin of crab     | .....      | 10 a basket of oranges | ..... |

**2 True or false? Write T or F. If the sentences are false, correct them.**

- |   |                                    |       |
|---|------------------------------------|-------|
| ▶ A jar is made of metal. <u>F - It is made of glass.</u> | 4 Peanuts are kinds of containers. | ..... |
| 1 Bees make honey.  | 5 You put apples in a vase.        | ..... |
| 2 A carton can contain liquids.                           | 6 A tin usually contains food.     | ..... |
| 3 A fizzy drink doesn't contain bubbles.                  | 7 You can eat soap powder.         | ..... |

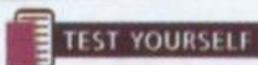
**3 Put the items in the correct column below. Some words can go in more than one column.**

coffee ✓    beer    milk    tomatoes    a fizzy drink    crisps    peanuts    olives  
 toothpaste    jam    fruit juice    tuna    cola    chilli powder    glue    flowers

CAN	TIN	CARTON	JAR	TUBE	PACKET	VASE
					▶ coffee	

**4 Complete the shopping list.**

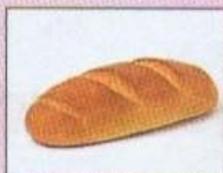
- |                           |                         |
|---------------------------|-------------------------|
| ▶ a <u>tin</u> of crab    | a large _____ of crisps |
| a _____ of milk (1 litre) | a _____ of fizzy _____  |
| two _____ of tuna         | a _____ of cola         |
| a _____ of cocoa          | a _____ of peanuts      |
| a _____ of toothpaste     | a _____ of glue         |
| a _____ of raspberry jam  |                         |



## B Quantities



a slice of bread



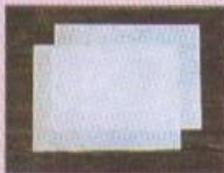
a loaf of bread



a roll



a spoonful of sugar



two sheets of paper



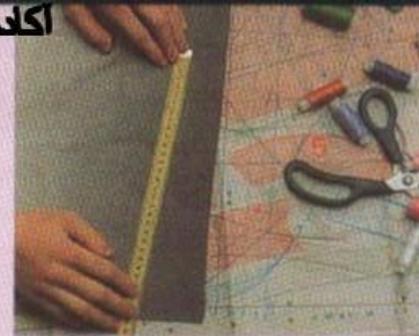
a couple of pens



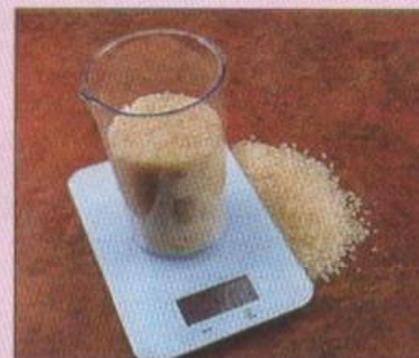
several biscuits



a small quantity of oil



I measured the material. I needed approximately 2m (= metres), and it was more or less the right length. It measured 1.95 m.



I weighed the rice. I needed the exact amount. It weighed 404g. (= grams)

### GLOSSARY

several	more than two, but not many
quantity	how much of sth that there is <b>SYN amount</b>
approximately	about, not exactly <b>SYN more or less; approximate adj</b>
exact	correct, accurate <b>exactly adv</b>
length	how long sth is

### SPOTLIGHT transitive and intransitive verbs

**Measure** and **weigh** can be used transitively (= with an object) or intransitively (= without an object).

- She **measured** the bed. = She used a ruler to find out the size of the bed.
- It **measured** 2 m by 1 m. = The size of the bed was ...
- I **weighed** the baby. = I measured the baby to see how heavy it was.
- The baby **weighed** 8 kg. = The baby's weight was ...

### 5 Find the end of each word or phrase.

roll / several amount weigh length approximate loaf exactly a couple of more or less

### 6 Is the meaning the same or different? Write S or D.

- I bought several rolls. / I bought a few rolls. S
- 1 Did you measure yourself? / Did you weigh yourself? .....
- 2 I need two sheets of paper. / I need a couple of sheets of paper. ....
- 3 The picture measures 20 cm by 30cm. / The picture is 20 cm long and 30 cm wide. ....
- 4 We had a roll for lunch. / We had a slice of bread for lunch. ....
- 5 That car weighs exactly 2,000 kg. / That car weighs approximately 2,000 kg. ....
- 6 They had a large amount of money. / They had a large quantity of money. ....

### 7 One word is missing in each sentence. What is it, and where does it go?

- Could you let me have a / of paper? sheet
- 1 The room approximately 4 metres by 3 metres. ....
- 2 I only take one of sugar in my coffee, thanks. ....
- 3 Sergio Aguero is 1.7 m tall, or less. ....
- 4 There are a of men standing outside. Oh, it's Yusuf and Omer! ....
- 5 He had a sandwich with two of ham in it and a tomato. ....
- 6 Could you buy a small of bread at the supermarket? Thanks. ....
- 7 We only need a small of butter to make this cake. ....
- 8 The height of Burg Khalifa in Dubai is 828 m – no more and no less. ....
- 9 I think there were 30 people at the meeting, but I didn't count them. ....
- 10 What is the of an Olympic swimming pool? ~ I think it's 50 m. ....



### TEST YOURSELF

A Advice for cooks

- **Recipes** aren't always perfect, but the most important thing is to have good **ingredients** and **plenty of flavour**.
- Develop your **skills** and learn to **slice** vegetables in the **proper** way. Always **invest in** good quality knives, and keep them **sharp**.
- You **have a responsibility** to look after people who are **dieting** to lose weight, or who **are on** a special **diet**.

GLOSSARY

<b>recipe</b>	a set of instructions that tells you how to cook sth
<b>ingredient</b>	one of the items of food you need to make sth to eat
<b>plenty of sth</b>	a large amount; as much of sth as you need
<b>flavour</b>	how food or drink tastes
<b>skill</b>	the ability to do sth well, especially when you have practised it
<b>slice</b>	cut meat, vegetables, bread, etc. into thin, flat pieces
<b>proper</b>	right, suitable or correct
<b>invest in sth</b>	buy sth, especially sth that you will need and use a lot
<b>sharp</b>	with an edge or point that cuts or makes holes easily <b>OPP blunt</b>
<b>responsibility</b>	sth that you must do to look after sb or sth, so that it is your fault if sth goes wrong

SPOTLIGHT *diet*

A person's **diet** is the food they eat. It can be a **balanced diet** (all the right food the body needs), or a **bad diet** (too much of the wrong food). Some people **diet**, **go on a diet** or **are on a diet**, which means eating less to **lose weight**.

1 Good or bad? Write G or B.

- |                          |                                |                     |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------|---------------------|
| ▶ a sharp knife <u>G</u> | 3 blunt scissors               | 6 not much flavour  |
| 1 a balanced diet        | 4 you have skills              | 7 fresh ingredients |
| 2 plenty of water        | 5 the proper knife for the job | 8 a sharp pencil    |

2 Replace the underlined words with a word or phrase from the box.

have a responsibility to flavour	sliced ✓ a recipe	invest in skills	lose weight go on a diet	proper
----------------------------------	----------------------	------------------	-----------------------------	--------

- ▶ The bread was cut into thin pieces. sliced
- 1 If you want to get thinner, don't eat sugar. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 I'll make a lasagne, but I need cooking instructions. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 You'll need a frying pan, so buy yourself a good one. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 As a parent, you have to feed your children healthily. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Do you know how to slice salmon in the correct way? \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 Do you have the ability and knowledge to cook in a restaurant? \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 I'm going to stop eating food that makes me fat. \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 I don't like the taste of this sauce. \_\_\_\_\_

3 Complete the sentences with a suitable word.

- ▶ I think diets are a very bad idea.
- 1 You need great cooking \_\_\_\_\_ to work in a local family restaurant.
- 2 It's very important to cook chicken \_\_\_\_\_, or it can be bad for you.
- 3 I use a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ when I'm cooking.
- 4 I don't usually use a \_\_\_\_\_ - I prefer to cook my own way.
- 5 I eat a very balanced \_\_\_\_\_ with a lot of fresh food.
- 6 I drink \_\_\_\_\_ of water. It's good for you.
- 7 I like food with a strong \_\_\_\_\_.

ABOUT YOU

.....

.....

.....

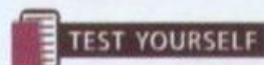
.....

.....

.....

.....

4 ABOUT YOU Are sentences 3-7 in Exercise 3 true for you? Write Yes or No, or tell another student.



## B Cooking

### Recipe for Cottage pie



#### Ingredients

300g **minced**<sup>1</sup> beef  
 300g potatoes  
 1 large onion  
 1 carrot  
 2-3 chopped tomatoes  
 300 ml beef **stock**  
 1 large spoonful of **flour**  
 butter, salt and pepper

#### Method

First **boil** the potatoes in a **pan**<sup>2</sup> until just cooked. **Mash** them with butter. **Chop** the onion and carrot. Then, **fry**<sup>3</sup> the meat quickly **along with** the vegetables, **add** the flour and cook for a minute. Add the stock, tomatoes, salt and pepper, and let it all cook slowly for 20 minutes. Put it in a large dish and cover with the mashed potato and some butter. **Bake**<sup>4</sup> in a hot oven for 20 minutes.

#### GLOSSARY

<b>stock</b>	water with added flavour of meat, fish or vegetables
<b>flour</b>	a soft white or brown powder used in making bread, cakes, etc.
<b>method</b>	a way of doing sth
<b>boil</b>	cook sth in water, usually in a <b>pan/saucepan</b> <sup>2</sup>
<b>mash</b>	press and mix food to make it soft
<b>chop</b>	cut sth, e.g. onions, carrots, etc. into pieces with a knife <b>chopped</b> <i>adj</i>
<b>fry</b>	cook sth in oil, usually in a <b>frying pan</b> <sup>3</sup>
<b>along with sth</b>	In addition to sth <b>SYN together with sth</b>
<b>add</b>	put sth together with sth else
<b>bake</b>	cook sth in the oven without oil or fat (with oil or fat = <b>roast</b> )

#### 5 Which word is being defined?

► use a machine to cut meat into very small pieces

1 cut into many pieces

2 put something with another thing

3 press and mix until soft and smooth

4 cook in water

mince

5 cook in the oven without oil or fat

6 cook in the oven with oil or fat

7 a liquid with added flavour used in soups

8 a container that you boil food in

9 a way of doing something

#### 6 Complete the words in each sentence.

I made a lovely fish soup the other day. First, I made some ► **stock** with fish bones.

I (1) **c** some tomatoes and peppers, and then (2) **f** some onions, along

(3) **w** some garlic in a little olive oil. I put all this (4) **t** with the stock in a big

(5) **p**. I then (6) **a** salt and pepper and cooked it gently for half an hour – you mustn't let it (7) **b**. Finally, I put some pieces of fish in the (8) **f** pan and cooked them for a couple of minutes, then put these in the soup. Delicious!

This is a very simple (9) **m** of making a pasta sauce using (10) **m** beef, onions, garlic and tomatoes. Put some oil in a large (11) **s** and (12) **f** the beef until it's brown. Move it to another dish while you cook the vegetables. Finally, put it all together and add some (13) **s** and wine. Cook it slowly for about 45 minutes.

#### 7 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Complete with food that is typical in your country.

1 minced beef, lamb, pork

2 fried

3 roast

4 boiled

5 baked

6 mashed



#### TEST YOURSELF

## A Spending habits

### YOUR SPENDING HABITS

- Do you usually try to buy **goods** that are **reduced** in price?
- If there is something wrong with the goods, do you ask for a **discount**?
- Do people who sell goods in markets ever **charge** you too much money?
- Do you ever buy **used** goods online?
- Have you ever **placed an order** for anything very **valuable** online?
- Do you ever feel that what you have bought is not **worth** the money you paid?

#### GLOSSARY

<b>goods</b> <i>pl</i>	things that you buy and sell
<b>reduce</b>	make sth less or smaller in quantity, price, size, etc: <b>reduce the price of sth</b>
<b>discount</b>	money that sb takes off the price of sth to make it cheaper: <b>get/ask for a discount</b>
<b>charge (sb for sth)</b>	ask sb to pay a certain price for sth <b>charge n</b>
<b>used</b>	sth that has belonged to another person before SYN <b>second-hand</b>
<b>order</b>	a request asking for sth to be sent: <b>place an order; order v</b>
<b>valuable</b>	worth a lot of money <b>value n; What's the value of that ring?</b>

#### SPOTLIGHT *worth*

- 1 having a particular value:  
*The ring cost £200, but in fact it's **worth** £2,000.*
- 2 used as a way of recommending or advising.  
**Worth** is usually followed by a noun or an *-ing* form:  
*The local market is **worth a visit**.*  
*It's **not worth** asking Anna for money; she hasn't got any.*

### 1 In each sentence, one word is missing, or there is one word too many. Correct them.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| ▶ He charged me / the petrol. <u>for</u> ..... | ▶ I got <del>for</del> a discount. ....         |
| 1 What the watch worth? .....                  | 6 I ordered to some new glasses. ....           |
| 2 They reduced down the price. ....            | 7 We asked a discount. ....                     |
| 3 We placed order for a new car. ....          | 8 Is the market worth to seeing? .....          |
| 4 Did she charge to you for the coffee? .....  | 9 There was no for drinks: they were free. .... |
| 5 I bought a second-of-hand car. ....          |   |

### 2 Rewrite the questions using the words in capital letters. The meaning must stay the same.

- |  |          |   |
|--|----------|---|
| ▶ What's the car worth?                            | VALUE    | What <u>'s the value of the car</u> ..? |
| 1 Did you ask him to take some money off the coat? | REDUCE   | Did ..?                                 |
| 2 Is the furniture worth a lot?                    | VALUABLE | Is ..?                                  |
| 3 Were the things you bought expensive?            | GOODS    | Were ..?                                |
| 4 Is the car second-hand?                          | USED     | Is it ..?                               |
| 5 Did you order the new printer this morning?      | PLACE    | Did you ..?                             |
| 6 What's the value of Julio's flat?                | WORTH    | What ..?                                |
| 7 Did they ask you to pay for the repairs?         | CHARGE   | Did ..?                                 |
| 8 Did the shop assistant bring the price down?     | DISCOUNT | Did ..?                                 |

### 3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questionnaire at the top of the page, or ask another student.



## B Making complaints

I had to **make a complaint** last week about a kitchen **gadget** that I bought in town. When I got home it didn't **work** properly, so I **took it back** to the shop and asked for a **refund**. As I didn't have the **receipt**, the manager refused, but said that he would **exchange** it for another one.

I ordered a **set** of glasses online, but when the **package** was **delivered**, two of the glasses were broken. I **sent them back** and the company sent me a new set immediately.

### SPOTLIGHT *take/send something back*

**take sth back** return to a shop with sth because you are not happy with it:

▪ *I'm going to **take** these shoes **back** to the shop. They're uncomfortable.*

**send sth back** return sth by post because you are not happy with it:

▪ *She **sent** the shirt **back** to the seller and asked for a refund.*

### GLOSSARY

<b>complaint</b>	When you <b>make a complaint</b> , you say that you do not like sth or are not happy with it. <b>complain</b> v
<b>gadget</b>	a small machine or useful tool
<b>work</b>	If a machine <b>works</b> , it goes correctly or does what it should do.
<b>refund</b>	money that is paid back to you because you are not happy with the goods you bought, or you have paid too much <b>refund</b> v
<b>receipt</b>	a piece of paper or an electronic document that shows you have paid for sth
<b>exchange sth (for sth)</b>	give one thing and get another thing for it
<b>set</b>	a group of things of the same kind that belong together: <b>a set of keys</b>
<b>package</b>	sth that is wrapped in paper, cardboard or plastic <b>SYN parcel</b>
<b>deliver</b>	take goods, letters, etc. to the person they have been sent to

#### 4 Circle the correct word.

- ▶ I made a **complain** / **complaint** in the market about the quality of the fruit.
- The computer keyboard doesn't **deliver** / **work** very well.
  - When did they deliver the **receipt** / **package**?
  - The shop is quite near here, so I'll **take** / **send** the phone back.
  - I had to **complain** / **complaint** about the service. It was terrible.
  - The postman **refunded** / **delivered** the parcel this morning.
  - Leo's got a complete **parcel** / **set** of Harry Potter books – all seven of them.
  - The customer **exchanged** / **complained about** the goods.
  - This **gadget** / **parcel** doesn't work very well. I'll have to send it back.

#### 5 Complete the dialogues.

- ▶ Can you prove you bought the jeans there? ~ No, I haven't got a receipt.
- Has the postman come with your parcel yet? ~ Yes, it was \_\_\_\_\_ this morning.
  - Are there six knives and forks in the box? ~ Yes, it's a complete \_\_\_\_\_.
  - What does Molly want for her birthday? ~ Oh, some electronic \_\_\_\_\_ for editing photos.
  - Could you turn the heater on, please? ~ I'm sorry, it isn't \_\_\_\_\_.
  - Did you say you were unhappy with the service? ~ Yes, actually I've made a \_\_\_\_\_.
  - Did you return the package to the seller? ~ Yes, I've \_\_\_\_\_.
  - Did you ask for your money back? ~ I did, and the seller has given me a \_\_\_\_\_.
  - Did you take the jeans back to the shop? ~ Yes, and they \_\_\_\_\_ them for a bigger size.

#### 6 ABOUT YOU True or false? Write T or F. If false, change the sentences to make them true for you.

- ▶ Some of my gadgets don't work properly. F - I only have a few gadgets and they work OK.
- I've never made a complaint in a shop. \_\_\_\_\_
  - I always take goods back if I'm not happy with them. \_\_\_\_\_
  - I've got a lot of gadgets, but they aren't always useful. \_\_\_\_\_
  - I always lose receipts when I buy things. \_\_\_\_\_
  - I don't like having to ask for a refund. \_\_\_\_\_
  - If I buy something online, it's always delivered very quickly. \_\_\_\_\_



### TEST YOURSELF



Gabby



Sarah



Logan

Gabby's dressed in casual clothes.

Sarah's got earrings on.

Logan's got gloves on.

- 1 cap
- 2 patterned top  
pattern *n*
- 3 wool/woollen jacket
- 4 denim skirt
- 5 coloured tights

- 6 earrings
- 7 a striped cotton blouse  
stripe *n*
- 8 necklace
- 9 fur jacket
- 10 baggy trousers

- 11 a plain shirt
- 12 raincoat
- 13 gloves
- 14 tight jeans



underwear [U]:

1 bra

2 knickers *pl*

3 underpants *pl* /  
pants *pl inf*

4 vest

**SPOTLIGHT** getting dressed and wearing clothes

**have/have got sth on** be wearing sth:  
 ■ Gabby **has / has got** a cap **on**.

**be dressed (in sth)** wearing clothes of a particular type or colour:  
 ■ Sarah's **dressed in** brown.

**get dressed** put your clothes on:  
 ■ Sarah **got dressed** quickly this morning. **OPP get undressed**

**do sth up** fasten a jacket, blouse, etc.:  
 ■ Sarah **did** her blouse **up**. **OPP undo sth**



A Fashion advice

THREE GOLDEN RULES  
for fashion

Fashion experts say that every **stylish** woman should have a 'capsule wardrobe' – a set of a few **essential** items for every **occasion**. The main **elements** are: a little black dress, the perfect jeans, a leather handbag, a fine wool jumper, white shirt, black skirt, etc. Being stylish is about what **suits** you and your body shape. Here are three golden rules:

- Spend as much as possible on the essential items (your capsule wardrobe) and don't worry too much about **fashionable** clothes. Buy good quality **brands** whenever you can.
- Choose safe colours: black, cream, white and dark blue. These look **smart**, and are easy to **match**.
- A simple **outfit** can be improved with the **latest** bags and accessories.

GLOSSARY

<b>stylish</b>	attractive and fashionable <b>style</b> <i>n</i>
<b>essential</b>	completely necessary
<b>occasion</b>	a time when sth happens; a special time
<b>element</b>	one important part of sth
<b>suit</b>	If something <b>suits</b> you, it looks good on you.
<b>brand</b>	one or more products sold under a particular name, e.g. Nike, Zara
<b>smart</b>	wearing clean, tidy and fashionable clothes
<b>match</b>	If one thing <b>matches</b> another, or if two things <b>match</b> , they are the same or similar, and look good together.
<b>outfit</b>	a set of clothes that you wear together
<b>latest</b>	new or very recent

SPOTLIGHT *fashion and fashionable*

**Fashion** means a popular style of clothes or hair, at a particular time or place. Clothes can be **in fashion** (= popular now) or **out of fashion** (= unpopular now).

- Long skirts are **in fashion** now. Long hair has **gone out of fashion**.

**fashionable** *adj* **OPP** **unfashionable**

1 Circle the correct answer.

- ▶ I don't like the style / *fashion* of these boots. They look very ugly.
- 1 You should buy that blouse – it *suits* / *matches* your skirt.
- 2 She wore a very *fashionable* / *stylish* jacket but it looked awful.
- 3 I need to get a new *element* / *outfit* for my brother's wedding.
- 4 This coat is the latest *brand* / *fashion*, but I don't particularly like it.
- 5 I think that dress really *matches* / *suits* you.
- 6 A good pair of boots is an *essential* / *unfashionable* part of your capsule wardrobe.

2 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ Jamelia never wears red – it doesn't suit her.
- 1 I bought this sweater because it \_\_\_\_\_ my blue skirt.
- 2 I'd love to be like Maria; she looks so \_\_\_\_\_ whatever she wears.
- 3 I want a pair of those trousers – they're the \_\_\_\_\_ fashion.
- 4 I need a new outfit for the ceremony. It's a very important \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 Is there a \_\_\_\_\_ of trainers that you usually wear? ~ Yes, Adidas.
- 6 People used to wear big sunglasses, but they're \_\_\_\_\_ these days.
- 7 What are the most important \_\_\_\_\_ of a capsule wardrobe?

3 Complete the sentence on the right so that it means the same as the sentence on the left.

- ▶ Lou's birthday was a happy special day. Lou's birthday was a happy occasion.
- 1 This is an item I really need. This is an \_\_\_\_\_ item.
- 2 Her bag's the same colour as her shoes. Her bag \_\_\_\_\_ her shoes.
- 3 People don't wear denim jackets now. Denim jackets are \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 These boots are the latest fashion. These boots are \_\_\_\_\_ at the moment.
- 5 Her clothes are so attractive and fashionable. Her clothes are very \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 I need a new skirt and jacket for work. I need a new \_\_\_\_\_ for work.



TEST YOURSELF

## B Attitudes to fashion

I don't understand why people buy such **poor quality** items of clothing, wear them a few times and then throw them away. It's terrible for the environment.

I hate the fashion **trade**. I read somewhere that companies can sell a dress for £5, but they don't make any **profit**. They're just **aiming to attract** more **consumers** to their websites so that they'll spend more money.

My brother's a fashion **designer**, but I think **designer labels** are a **waste of money**. I just shop in **high street** stores and I only buy **casual** clothes.

### GLOSSARY

<b>poor quality</b>	being cheap and not well made (NOT bad quality) OPP <b>high/good quality</b>
<b>trade</b>	a particular type of business: <b>the fashion/building/tourist trade</b> <b>trade v</b>
<b>profit</b>	money that you get when you sell sth for more than it costs to buy or make
<b>aim to do sth</b>	try or plan to do sth
<b>attract</b>	make sb/sth come to you or a particular place
<b>consumer</b>	a person who buys or uses sth
<b>designer</b>	sb whose job is to make drawings to show how sth will be made <b>designer adj</b>
<b>label</b>	a piece of paper attached to sth that gives information about it, e.g. the price, the designer's name: <b>a designer label</b> <b>label v</b>
<b>a waste of money</b>	a situation in which money is not spent in a good or useful way <b>waste v</b>
<b>the high street</b>	the main street in a town where most shops, banks, etc. are
<b>casual</b>	not formal

#### 4 Underline the main stress in these words. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.

▶ profit

1 casual

2 designer

3 attract

4 quality

5 label

6 consumer

#### 5 Complete the texts.

I know that I ▶ waste a lot of money on clothes, but I love going shopping in the (1) \_\_\_\_\_ street. I really love (2) \_\_\_\_\_ like Ralph Lauren and Tommy Hilfiger; I always try to buy good (3) \_\_\_\_\_ clothes that will last a long time. I have to wear smart outfits for work and even wear them at the weekend, so I don't really have any (4) \_\_\_\_\_ clothes, apart from a pair of jeans.

A British company selling trainers have made an enormous (5) \_\_\_\_\_ of over £90 million this year. They aim to (6) \_\_\_\_\_ more young people with special offers on big brands. I don't understand why these designer (7) \_\_\_\_\_ are so popular, though.

#### 6 Complete the sentences.

▶ Giorgio Armani is my favourite fashion ▶ designer \_\_\_\_\_.

1 I don't wear formal outfits very often. I tend to wear \_\_\_\_\_ clothes.

2 I think \_\_\_\_\_ are changing their habits and spending less on clothes.

3 I always \_\_\_\_\_ to recycle clothes as much as possible.

4 A lot of clothes in the shops are very poor \_\_\_\_\_ these days.

5 The fashion \_\_\_\_\_ is very important to the economy of my country.

6 Expensive trainers are a waste of \_\_\_\_\_.

### ABOUT YOU

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

#### 7 ABOUT YOU Do you agree with the sentences in Exercise 6? Write your answers, or tell another student.



TEST YOURSELF

**A Symptoms**



1 have a temperature



2 cough



3 a sore throat

The chemist asked me about my **symptoms**. I had a **high temperature**<sup>1</sup>, as well as a **cough**<sup>2</sup> and a **sore throat**<sup>3</sup>, plus my neck was very **painful**.

I ate some fish which didn't taste good, and it gave me an **upset stomach**.

I went to see my doctor for a **check-up** because I felt extremely tired and **lacked** energy. **At times** I felt **confused**, and my husband thought I looked very **pale** too.

**GLOSSARY**

- symptom** sth that shows you have an illness
- check-up** a general examination by a doctor to see if you are healthy
- lack** If you **lack** sth, you have none, or you don't have enough of it. **lack n a lack of energy/time/money**
- at times** sometimes, but not often
- confused** not able to think clearly
- pale** with not much colour in your face, perhaps because you are ill
- an upset stomach** an illness in the stomach that makes you sick or needing to go to the toilet very often

**SPOTLIGHT** *sore and painful*

- If a part of your body is **sore**, it hurts, especially because of infection or too much exercise.
- a **sore throat**
  - *My feet are **sore** after walking all day.*
- If something is **painful**, it hurts or gives you **pain**.  
OPP **painless**.
- *My back was **painful**.* ▪ *It was a **painful** injury.*

1 Is the pronunciation of the underlined sounds the same or different? Write S or D. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.

- ▶ symptom / think ..... S
- 1 throat / confused ..... 3 stomach / lunch .....
- 2 upset / stomach ..... 4 pale / painful .....
- 6 cough / enough .....
- 7 temperature / check-up .....
- 8 throat / board .....

2 Circle the correct word.

- ▶ Do you have a **big** / **high** temperature?
- 1 The little girl looked very **pale** / **painful**. I think she was quite ill.
- 2 I don't feel well if I have a **lack** / **lot** of sleep.
- 3 My grandfather's memory isn't so good, and he's often a bit **confused** / **painful**.
- 4 Most people feel tired and have no energy at **time** / **times**.
- 5 Some types of cheese can give me an **unhappy** / **upset** stomach.
- 6 People sometimes make a lot of noise when they have a **sore throat** / **cough**.
- 7 Danni spoke to the doctor about her **symptoms** / **energy**, such as feeling tired all the time.

3 Complete the words in the questions.

- ▶ Do you look **pale** \_\_\_\_\_ if you are very cold?
- 1 Do you l \_\_\_\_\_ energy early in the morning?
- 2 Do you know what the s \_\_\_\_\_ of flu are?
- 3 Is any part of your body p \_\_\_\_\_ at the moment?
- 4 Is there any kind of food that gives you an u \_\_\_\_\_ stomach?
- 5 What do you do if you have a s \_\_\_\_\_ throat?
- 6 If you have a high t \_\_\_\_\_, what do you do about it?
- 7 When you've got a cold, do you often get a c \_\_\_\_\_ as well?
- 8 Do you ever feel c \_\_\_\_\_ when you wake up suddenly?
- 9 When did you last go for a c \_\_\_\_\_ at the doctor's?

**ABOUT YOU**

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

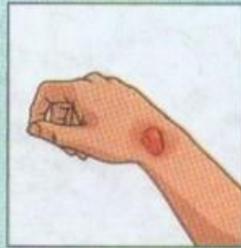
4 **ABOUT YOU** Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 3, or ask another student.

**TEST YOURSELF**

## B Injuries and emergencies



muscles



burn *n, v*  
(*pt/pp burnt*)



trip (over)



bite *v, n*  
(*pt bit pp bitten*)

### Have you ever ...

injured a muscle<sup>1</sup> by doing too much exercise?

suffered from a serious burn<sup>2</sup>?

tripped over<sup>3</sup> and broken a bone?

been bitten<sup>4</sup> by a dog or cat?

accidentally eaten something poisonous?

had a bad reaction to milk or cheese?

had bleeding from your nose or ear?

### GLOSSARY

<b>injure</b>	hurt yourself or sb else, especially in an accident <b>injured</b> <i>adj</i> <b>injury</b> <i>n</i>	<b>poisonous</b>	Something <b>poisonous</b> will make you very ill or kill you if you eat or drink it. <b>poison</b> <i>n, v</i>
<b>suffer from sth</b>	feel pain, sadness or another bad feeling	<b>reaction</b>	If you <b>have a reaction to</b> sth you have eaten or drunk, it makes you ill.
<b>accidentally</b>	in a way that was not planned or intended <b>SYN</b> <b>by accident</b> <i>I hit him by accident.</i>	<b>bleeding</b>	losing blood from your body <b>bleed</b> <i>v</i> ( <i>pt/pp bled</i> )

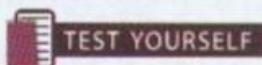
### 5 True or false? Write T or F.

- ▶ You have muscles in your arms. T
- 1 A burn is a type of injury. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 You can't suffer from a headache. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 A bite is not painful. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 You press hard on a bad cut to stop the bleeding. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 People trip over by accident. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 You can have a bad reaction to certain medicines. \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 Poison is good for you. \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 If you do something accidentally, you want to do it. \_\_\_\_\_

### 6 One word is missing in each line. What is it, and where does it go?

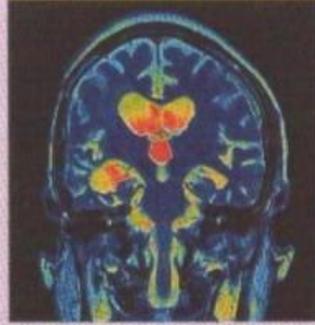
- ▶ Julia had a very bad / to the drugs the doctor recommended. reaction
- 1 I over in the street and hurt my knees. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 The boy was from a nasty cut on his arm. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Potatoes are when they go green, and they can make you ill. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Nobody was killed, but three people were in the accident. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 My sister has from a serious illness all her life. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 I was by a cat when I was young, so I don't go near them now. \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 I need to do exercises to make the in my arms stronger. \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 The fire started by and three people were badly burnt. \_\_\_\_\_

### 7 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questionnaire at the top of the page, or ask another student.





X-ray



scan



operation



patient

## Going into hospital

- You go to your doctor feeling very **unwell**.
- She **examines** you, and **arranges** for you to see a **consultant**.
- You may have **tests**, **X-rays**<sup>1</sup>, or **scans**<sup>2</sup> and the nurses may take blood **samples**.
- The consultant decides how to **treat** you.
- You may **have an operation**<sup>3</sup> immediately if it is an **emergency**.
- The consultant explains the **benefits** and **risks** to you, the **patient**<sup>4</sup>.
- After the operation, nurses **care for** you while you **recover**.
- The operation is **successful**.
- When you are **well enough**, you can go home to recover completely.

**go into hospital** go for treatment and stay there for a night or more

**go to (the) hospital** go there for treatment, but not stay in

**go to the hospital** go as a visitor

**unwell** not well; ill

**examine** look carefully at sb or sth to see if there is anything wrong

**arrange** organize or plan sth

**consultant** a senior doctor in a hospital who knows a lot about a particular medical subject

**test** a medical examination on part of your body, e.g. an **eye test**, a **blood test**

**sample** a small amount of sth that is looked at, tested, examined, etc. to find out what the rest is like

**treat** give medical help to make sb better  
**treatment** *n*

**operation** In an **operation**, the doctor cuts open the body (**operates**) to take out or repair a damaged part.

**emergency** a sudden dangerous situation when sb needs help quickly

**benefit** sth that has a good or helpful result

**risk** a danger that sth bad may happen

**care for sb** look after sb SYN **take care of sb**

**recover from sth** become well after you have been ill SYN **get over sth**

**successful** If sth is **successful**, it has gone well.

### SPOTLIGHT *enough*

You can use **enough** after adjectives and adverbs. It means as much or as many as you need. In negative sentences, it means less than you need.

■ *He's **strong enough** to get up.* = He has the strength he needs to get up.

■ *She's **not well enough** to go out.* = She needs to feel better before she can go out.

You can also use **enough** before uncountable and plural nouns.

■ *I've got **enough** money.* = I've got all the money I need.

■ *There **aren't enough** doctors.* = We need more doctors.

1 Complete the table with the words below according to their stress patterns. Use the **APP** to help you. Pratisie saying the words.

recover ✓	treatment	benefit	unwell	get over	operate	patient
sample	arrange	successful	hospital	consultant	enough	take care of
decide	doctor	remember				personal
.....	.....	▶ recover	.....	.....	.....	.....
.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....

2 Circle the correct answer.

- ▶ The patient / nurse has the operation.
- The *consultant* / *patient* goes into hospital.
  - The *consultant* / *patient* arranges the tests.
  - The *consultant* / *patient* may have to have an X-ray.
  - The *nurse* / *patient* may take a blood sample.
  - The *doctor* / *patient* may need treatment as an emergency.
  - The *doctor* / *patient* explains the benefits of the treatment.
  - The *patient* / *nurse* cares for the person after the operation.
  - The *consultant* / *patient* gets over the operation.
  - The *nurse* / *patient* is strong enough to leave hospital.

3 Which words are being defined?

- ▶ a person who is ill and having medical treatment patient
- give sb medical help to make them better
  - a danger that sth bad might happen
  - sth that has a good or helpful result
  - look after sb, especially if they are ill
  - a small amount of sth that shows what the rest is like
  - a sudden situation where sb needs help
  - ill
  - photos or pictures of the inside of a body
  - cut sb's body open to repair sth or take out a part
  - getting the result you want

4 Complete the words in the text.

- A Hi, Safieh. How are you?  
 B Well, I'm a bit worried, actually. I've just been to the ▶ hospital to see a consultant about my eye. He (1) e..... me to see what was wrong, and then arranged for some (2) t..... too. I've got a problem at the back of my eye, and I need to have an (3) o.....  
 A Oh, dear. Is it (4) an e.....?  
 B Yes, I have to have it done immediately – in fact, I've got to go (5) i..... hospital tomorrow.  
 A And are there any (6) r..... with the treatment?  
 B I don't think so. It's quite a simple operation, and it's usually very (7) s.....: 98% of people can see better afterwards.  
 A And when will you be well (8) e..... to start work again?  
 B He said I'll need a week to (9) g..... o..... the operation. My sister is going to (10) t..... c..... of me at home.  
 A Well, good luck! I hope it goes well.

5 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

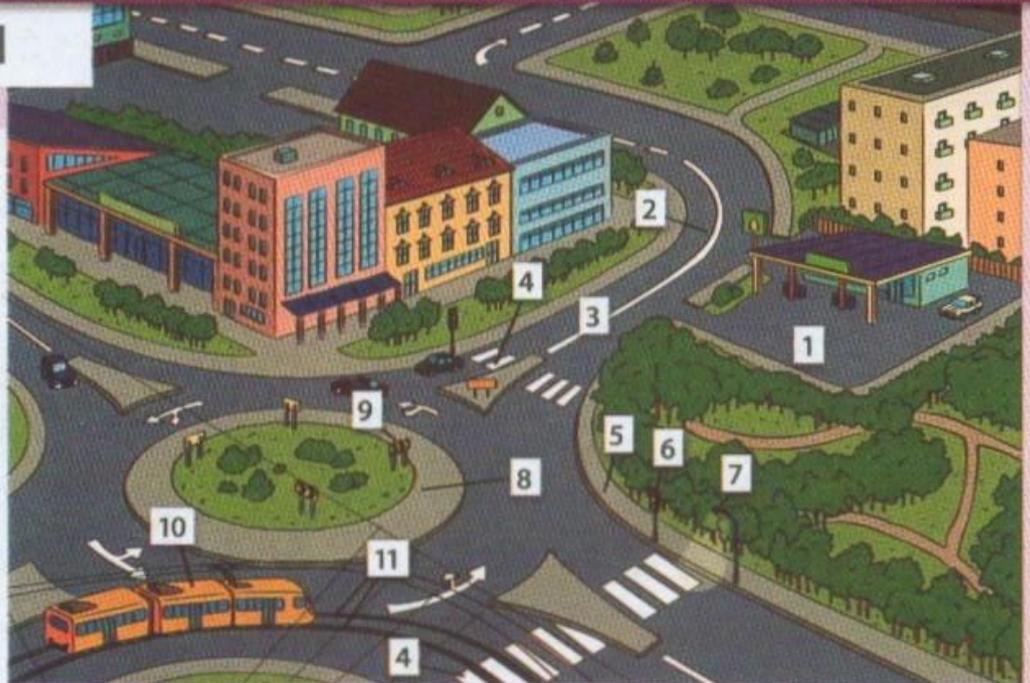
- When did you last go to hospital, and why? .....
- Have you ever been into hospital for a few days or longer? When? .....
- In your country, when patients are in hospital, do the nurses take care of them, or does the family look after them too? .....
- Can you see a consultant immediately in your country, or do you have to wait? .....
- Do you have to see your doctor first before you go and see a consultant? .....
- Where do patients usually go to recover after an operation? .....



TEST YOURSELF

## A On the road

- 1 petrol station
- 2 bend n, v
- 3 main road
- 4 crossing
- 5 pavement
- 6 traffic lights
- 7 street light
- 8 roundabout
- 9 road sign
- 10 tram
- 11 tracks



The main road is straight coming into the town centre, but bends at the petrol station. It then divides at the roundabout.

- 1 Is the pronunciation of the underlined sounds the same or different? Write S or D. Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

- |                                    |       |                                 |       |
|------------------------------------|-------|---------------------------------|-------|
| ▶ straight / <u>main</u>           | S     | 4 pavement / <u>straight</u>    | ..... |
| 1 <u>div</u> ide / <u>sign</u>     | ..... | 5 <u>light</u> / <u>sign</u>    | ..... |
| 2 <u>rou</u> ndabout / <u>road</u> | ..... | 6 <u>pet</u> rol / <u>ben</u> d | ..... |
| 3 <u>st</u> ation / <u>pet</u> rol | ..... | 7 <u>tr</u> acks / <u>tr</u> am | ..... |

- 2 Circle the correct word.

- |                                   |                               |                                |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| ▶ road ( <u>sign</u> ) / camera   | 2 main <u>sign</u> / road     | 4 petrol station / <u>sign</u> |
| 1 traffic <u>station</u> / lights | 3 <u>street</u> / tram tracks | 5 street <u>bend</u> / light   |

- 3 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ If a road changes from straight to a curved shape, it bends.
- 1 You fill your car up at a \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 2 If it's dark at night, there are \_\_\_\_\_ so that you can see where you're going.
  - 3 If a road is straight, it doesn't have a \_\_\_\_\_ in it.
  - 4 A \_\_\_\_\_ is a big road in a town or between towns.
  - 5 Cars drive in a circle at a \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 6 People should walk on the \_\_\_\_\_, not in the road.
  - 7 If a road goes into two parts, it \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 8 You have to stop at the \_\_\_\_\_ until they go green.
  - 9 A \_\_\_\_\_ in the street gives drivers information and instructions.
  - 10 A \_\_\_\_\_ must go down this street - there are tracks.

- 4 **ABOUT YOU** From your home, which of these can you see? Tick the boxes, or ask another student.

- |                      |                          |                  |                          |                 |                          |                  |                          |
|----------------------|--------------------------|------------------|--------------------------|-----------------|--------------------------|------------------|--------------------------|
| a road sign          | <input type="checkbox"/> | traffic lights   | <input type="checkbox"/> | a straight road | <input type="checkbox"/> | a bend in a road | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| a road which divides | <input type="checkbox"/> | street lights    | <input type="checkbox"/> | a roundabout    | <input type="checkbox"/> | a main road      | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| tram or train tracks | <input type="checkbox"/> | a petrol station | <input type="checkbox"/> | a pavement      | <input type="checkbox"/> | a crossing       | <input type="checkbox"/> |



## TEST YOURSELF

## B A road accident

### Here is the latest travel news ...

There has been a **serious** accident on the A31 outside Winchester. It occurred just after 7.00 a.m., when a **sports car**<sup>1</sup> skidded on the **wet road surface** in the slow lane, and hit a **cyclist**<sup>2</sup> with great force.

**Emergency services** are at the scene of the accident, and an **ambulance**<sup>3</sup> has taken the injured cyclist to hospital. He is thought to be in a **serious condition**. The road is still **blocked**, and drivers are being advised to **avoid** the area.



### GLOSSARY

<b>serious</b>	very bad: a <b>serious accident/injury</b>
<b>occur formal</b>	happen, especially in a way that has not been planned
<b>skid</b>	suddenly move forwards or sideways without any control
<b>surface</b>	the top layer of sth
<b>lane</b>	one part of a wide road: <b>the fast/slow lane</b>
<b>force</b>	the physical strength shown by one thing hitting another
<b>emergency services</b>	the police, ambulance, and/or fire service
<b>scene</b>	the place where sth happened, e.g. an accident or a crime
<b>condition</b>	the state that sb/sth is in: <b>be in a serious condition; a road in very bad condition</b>
<b>block</b>	make it difficult for anything to pass a road, etc.
<b>avoid</b>	stay away from sb/sth

### 5 Find the missing letter and write the correct word.

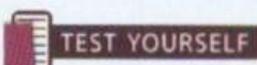
- ▶ conditon condition
- 1 amblance \_\_\_\_\_      4 emegency \_\_\_\_\_      7 avid \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 sene \_\_\_\_\_      5 ocur \_\_\_\_\_      8 sport car \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 serius \_\_\_\_\_      6 bloc \_\_\_\_\_      9 forc \_\_\_\_\_

### 6 Replace the underlined words with other words or phrases that have the same meaning.

- ▶ Was it a bad accident? serious
- 1 The top of the road was very icy. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 You should stay away from the area: it's very busy. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 When did the police arrive at the place where the accident occurred? \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 The car went sideways out of control on the icy road. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 The police and an ambulance arrived within minutes. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 The accident happened late last night. \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 The accident made it difficult for cars to pass on the road. \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 The physical state of the road through the mountains is terrible. \_\_\_\_\_

### 7 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ There was oil on the surface of the road, which made the driver skid.
- 1 We couldn't get through to the village because a tree had fallen and \_\_\_\_\_ the road.
- 2 The \_\_\_\_\_ of the waves pushed me over.
- 3 My brother had a \_\_\_\_\_ injury from an accident on his motorbike.
- 4 You should move into the fast \_\_\_\_\_ to pass a slower car on a motorway.
- 5 Some people have been injured. Please call for an \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 Rinka has an expensive bike, and I believe she's a very good \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7 Someone came past me in a little low \_\_\_\_\_ car.
- 8 I think the driver must have \_\_\_\_\_ on the wet road.



## A Driving tips

### TIPS FOR SAFER DRIVING

- Always **be prepared** for bad road conditions, and **concentrate** 100% of the time.
- Remember that **alcohol** has a serious **effect** on your ability to drive safely.
- Never drive when you're very tired, or you **risk falling asleep** and causing an accident.
- Be aware of other drivers around you as well as the road **ahead**.
- **Keep to the speed limit** and don't drive too **close** to the vehicle in front.

### GLOSSARY

<b>tip</b>	a piece of practical advice
<b>be prepared for sth</b>	be ready and able to deal with any problems
<b>concentrate (on sth)</b>	give all your attention to sth
<b>alcohol</b>	drinks such as beer and wine that can make people drunk <b>alcoholic</b> <i>adj</i>
<b>effect</b>	a change that happens because of sth <b>have an effect (on sb/sth)</b> <i>SYN affect sth/sb</i>
<b>risk (doing) sth</b>	put yourself or sth in danger <b>risk</b> <i>n</i>
<b>fall asleep</b>	start sleeping
<b>ahead</b>	in front
<b>keep</b>	continue or stay in a particular place or condition; <b>keep to the speed limit</b> stay at or below the speed limit; <b>keep left</b> stay on the left
<b>speed limit</b>	the highest legal speed you can drive on a road
<b>close (to sth/sb)</b>	near sth/sb

### 1 Good or bad? Write G or B.

- ▶ I've been given some tips on motorway driving. G
- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1 You're risking your life in that car. ....      | 5 I wasn't aware of the speed limit. ....   |
| 2 She's concentrating on driving. ....            | 6 The road ahead is empty. ....             |
| 3 She had an alcoholic drink before driving. .... | 7 The poor light affected his driving. .... |
| 4 She fell asleep while driving. ....             | 8 He always keeps to the speed limit. ....  |

### 2 Complete the dialogues.

- ▶ Would you like some wine? ~ No, thanks. It's bad to drink alcohol before driving.
- 1 Did the accident affect you? ~ Yes, it had a very big \_\_\_\_\_ on me.
- 2 Megan talks a lot in the car. ~ I know. She doesn't \_\_\_\_\_ when she's driving.
- 3 What caused the accident? ~ The driver \_\_\_\_\_ asleep for a few seconds.
- 4 Did Mo give you any advice on the driving test? ~ Yes, she gave me some useful \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 Were you looking behind you? ~ No, I was looking \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 Did you see what was going to happen? ~ No, I wasn't \_\_\_\_\_ for it.
- 7 What's the matter? ~ You're driving too \_\_\_\_\_ to the car in front of us.
- 8 Were you driving too fast? ~ No, I \_\_\_\_\_ to the speed limit.

### 3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- Are the tips in this unit useful, or did you know them already? .....
- What is the speed limit in towns in your country? .....
- Do people usually keep to it? .....
- Do you have to be prepared for bad weather on the roads in your country? How? .....
- Apart from alcohol, what other things can have a negative effect on drivers? .....

### TEST YOURSELF

## B Driving problems

I'm a terrible driver. The first time I took my driving test, I forgot to fasten my seat belt, so I failed. The second time, I didn't signal when I was turning left, and I failed again. When I finally passed and got my driving licence, a police officer stopped me for speeding. A few weeks later, I went through a red light and hit another car. Luckily, the other car wasn't damaged, but I had to pay £350 on my insurance to get my car fixed. And then I ended up getting a fine for driving through the red light.



### SPOTLIGHT compounds with driving

When people learn to drive, they often have driving lessons before they take their driving test. If they pass, they get a driving licence (=a document which shows that you are allowed to drive).

### GLOSSARY

<b>fail</b>	do badly in a test or an exam <b>OPP pass</b>	<b>damage</b>	break or harm sth <b>damage n</b>
<b>signal</b>	When you are driving and you signal, you show that you want to turn left/ right, etc. <b>signal n</b>	<b>insurance</b>	an agreement where you pay money to a company, so that it will give you money if sth bad happens
<b>speeding</b>	driving faster than the legal speed limit <b>speed v</b>	<b>fix</b>	repair sth
<b>red light</b>	a signal telling a driver to stop <i>go through a red light</i> = not stop	<b>end up</b>	get into in a place or situation when you did not plan it
<b>luckily</b>	= it is lucky that ... <b>SYN fortunately; luck n</b>	<b>fine</b>	money that you must pay because you have done sth wrong

#### 4 Circle the correct words or phrases. Be careful: in two questions, both answers are correct.

- ▶ The driver *got* / went through a red light, but a police officer stopped him.
- 1 My cousin was stopped by the police for *speeding* / *signalling*.
- 2 Fortunately I passed, so I've got my *driving test* / *driving licence* now.
- 3 She never remembers to *do up* / *fasten* her seat belt.
- 4 You have to have *insurance* / *a fine* to drive a car in this country.
- 5 The driver *signed* / *signalled* to turn left, but in fact he turned right.
- 6 We were planning to go home, but we *ended* / *ended up* at Milly's house.
- 7 It was a long journey, but *luckily* / *fortunately* we got home before the snow.
- 8 I wasn't injured, but my bicycle was badly *damaged* / *hurt* in the accident.
- 9 Did you have to pay *insurance* / *a fine* when the police officer stopped you?
- 10 I fell asleep for a few seconds and it was just *luck* / *luckily* that I didn't hit anything.

#### 5 One word is missing in each line. What is it, and where does it go?

I was a very slow learner, and I had driving / for two years before I the driving test. I was very nervous, and I went through a light, which was extremely dangerous, and, of course, I the test. The second time, I was less nervous and did better: I and got my driving. I bought an old car from a friend and paid a lot of money for to protect the car. However, it had a lot of problems: I couldn't the seat belt, and I couldn't to turn left or right. It also had some to the passenger door from an earlier accident my friend had, so I up having to pay a garage to some of the faults.

- ▶ lessons
- 1 \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 \_\_\_\_\_
- 9 \_\_\_\_\_
- 10 \_\_\_\_\_
- 11 \_\_\_\_\_



### TEST YOURSELF

## A Train and bus journeys

If there is a **direct train**, it is usually the fastest way to travel from A to B in Britain. A **stopping train** stops at a lot of smaller stations between **main stations**. An **express (train)** provides a faster **service** to your **destination**, and avoids the problem of **traffic jams** on the bus services.

For **rail travel**, you might need a single or a return ticket. Many people buy a **travel card**, which allows them to travel on any bus or train in a specific area for a period of time for less money. A **bus pass** lets you do the same for bus routes. You can buy rail tickets online, from a **ticket machine** or at the **ticket office / booking office** in the station.

If you get a train or bus **in time**, you **catch** it. If you are late, you may **miss** it. You may need to **change** trains or buses.

### GLOSSARY

<b>service</b>	a system or organization that provides the public with sth that it needs: <b>a bus/train service</b>
<b>destination</b>	the place where sb/sth is going
<b>traffic jam</b>	a long line of cars, buses, etc. that cannot move or that moves very slowly
<b>in time</b>	not late, early enough
<b>change trains/buses</b>	get off one train/bus and get on another one

### SPOTLIGHT *journey, trip, travel*

A **journey** is used to talk about going from one place to another.

- *my journey to school*
- *a journey through Asia*

A **trip** is used to describe the whole visit, including your stay in a place.

- *I've been on a trip to Spain for three weeks.*

**Travel** [U] is used to talk about the activity of moving from one place to another. **travel** v

- *Rail travel is slower than flying, but I prefer it.*
- *Do you enjoy travelling by train?*

You **go on a journey/trip** (NOT *go on a travel*).

### 1 Circle the correct word.

- |  |                                       |  |
|--|---------------------------------------|--|
| ▶ direct <i>fare</i> / <u>train</u>      | 4 main <i>station</i> / <i>travel</i> | 8 <i>stopping</i> / <i>journey</i> train   |
| 1 booking <i>machine</i> / <i>office</i> | 5 ticket <i>machine</i> / <i>pass</i> | 9 <i>travel</i> / <i>bus</i> card          |
| 2 <i>traffic</i> / <i>travel</i> jam     | 6 <i>in</i> / <i>at</i> time          | 10 bus <i>pass</i> / <i>machine</i>        |
| 3 <i>express</i> / <i>rail</i> train     | 7 go on a <i>trip</i> / <i>travel</i> | 11 rail <i>destination</i> / <i>travel</i> |

### 2 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ A direct train only stops at your destination.
- 1 You can buy a ticket at a booking office or a \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 2 A stopping train usually stops often between the \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 3 The bus company provides a very good \_\_\_\_\_ for its customers.
  - 4 It takes five hours from London to Strasbourg, so it's a long \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 5 Flying is generally the fastest way to \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 6 If you don't want to pay for your bus ticket each time, get a \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 7 If you arrive in time for your train, you will \_\_\_\_\_ it, but if you are late, you will \_\_\_\_\_ it.
  - 8 Too many cars and buses on the road might mean there will be a \_\_\_\_\_.

### 3 Complete the text with words from the box in the correct form.

miss rail travel time destination booking change journey trip ✓

Last year my sister Cally and I went on a ▶ trip to Madrid. My sister loves (1) \_\_\_\_\_ travel, so we decided to take the train from London to Atocha Station in Madrid. It's a very long (2) \_\_\_\_\_ - it takes all day, really. You have to (3) \_\_\_\_\_ trains twice, once in Paris and again in Barcelona. We were surprised to find that train tickets are incredibly expensive, and Cally spent hours at the (4) \_\_\_\_\_ office trying to find the cheapest tickets. On the day we left, it snowed and we didn't get to the station in (5) \_\_\_\_\_ to catch the train, and then we (6) \_\_\_\_\_ another train in Paris, so we had problems for the rest of the day. We finally got to our (7) \_\_\_\_\_ after midnight. I've told Cally I don't enjoy (8) \_\_\_\_\_ by train any more.



### TEST YOURSELF

## B Train problems

The train **broke down**, and we didn't arrive at our destination until after midnight.

Sorry, I was **held up**. My train was **due** at 9.42, but it didn't **get in** until 10.25.

I **commute** to the city every day, but the train I catch is often **cancelled** without **warning**.

My train to London got in late, so I **missed my connection** to Brussels.

My sister was **meant to pick me up** at the station, but she forgot.

### GLOSSARY

<b>break down</b>	If a train/car, etc. <b>breaks down</b> , it stops working.
<b>hold sb up</b>	(often passive) make sb slow or late <b>hold-up</b> n SYN <b>delay</b>
<b>due</b>	expected to arrive or happen
<b>get in</b>	(usually of a train or plane) SYN <b>arrive</b> OPP <b>leave, depart</b>
<b>commute</b>	travel a long way from home to work every day
<b>cancel</b>	decide that sth that has been planned will not happen
<b>warning</b>	a piece of information that sth bad may happen
<b>connection</b>	a train, plane, etc. that leaves soon after another arrives, so that people can change from one to the other <b>miss a connection</b>
<b>be meant to (do sth)</b>	If sb <b>is meant to do sth</b> , they have been asked to do it and have a responsibility to do it.
<b>pick sb/sth up</b>	go to a place and collect sb/sth, usually in a car

#### 4 Good or bad? Write G or B.

- ▶ I caught my connection to Rome. G
- |                                    |       |  |       |
|------------------------------------|-------|--|-------|
| 1 The train was cancelled.         | ..... | 6 They didn't get held up.                   | ..... |
| 2 The train's due in a minute.     | ..... | 7 We had a delay on the way to the station.  | ..... |
| 3 I commute two hours every day.   | ..... | 8 We had no warning about the accident.      | ..... |
| 4 Dad picked me up at the airport. | ..... | 9 There weren't any hold-ups on the journey. | ..... |
| 5 Our car broke down.              | ..... | 10 When I got there, the train had departed. | ..... |

#### 5 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ My husband was meant to meet me, but he missed the train.
- They've just said the train is ..... in five minutes, so that's good.
  - The plane to Paris was late, so I missed my ..... to Bordeaux.
  - We had problems at the border: we were ..... for two hours.
  - Our teacher arrived late because the train company ..... two trains this morning.
  - I used to ..... from Cambridge to London every day for work.
  - What time does your train ..... in?
  - My father has gone to the airport to ..... his brother .....
  - I waited an hour for the train, then it was cancelled without .....
  - There was a long ..... at the airport and we didn't leave until midnight.
  - Our train ..... just outside Milan. We sat there for two hours until it was fixed.

#### 6 ABOUT YOU True or false? Write T or F. Write your answers, or tell another student.

- ▶ Some of my family have to commute to work. T - My father and brother both commute to Warsaw.
- Trains are often cancelled where I live because of the weather. ....
  - I often get held up when I'm travelling by train. ....
  - I've never missed a connection. ....
  - I've never been on a train that broke down. ....
  - You are meant to have a ticket to go on the station platform. ....
  - I was once delayed for over three hours on a train journey. ....

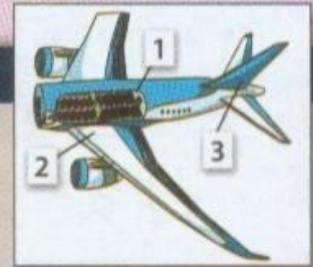


### TEST YOURSELF

A Flying

FLYING QUESTIONNAIRE

- 1 Do you always look for the cheapest **airfare**? .....
- 2 At the airport **check-in**, are there often long **queues**? .....
- 3 What kinds of things do you do in the **departure lounge**? .....
- 4 On a flight, do you prefer **take-off** or **landing**? .....
- 5 In the **cabin**<sup>1</sup>, do you prefer to sit near the **wing**<sup>2</sup> or the **tail**<sup>3</sup>? .....
- 6 Do you keep your seatbelt fastened **throughout** the flight? .....
- 7 Have you ever been **airsick**? .....
- 8 Did the last flight you took leave and arrive **on schedule**? .....
- 9 Have you ever flown in a **helicopter**<sup>4</sup>? If not, would you like to? .....



GLOSSARY

<b>airfare</b>	the money you pay to travel by plane	<b>landing</b>	coming down onto the ground in a plane <b>land</b> v
<b>check-in</b>	the place where you go to in an airport to leave your suitcases and show your ticket <b>check in</b> v	<b>throughout</b>	during the whole period of time of sth
<b>queue</b>	a line of people waiting to do sth <b>queue</b> v	<b>airsick</b>	feeling that you are going to vomit when you are on a plane ALSO <b>travel-sick/seasick/carsick</b>
<b>departure</b>	leaving a place. OPP <b>arrival</b> You wait in <b>departures / the departure lounge</b> before you get on the plane. OPP <b>arrivals</b>	<b>schedule</b>	a plan of activities and when they will happen. If a plane leaves <b>on schedule</b> , it leaves at the time it was expected to leave. SYN <b>on time</b>
<b>take-off</b>	the moment when an aeroplane starts to fly <b>take off</b> v		

1 Is the pronunciation of the underlined letters the same or different? Write S or D.

Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.

- ▶ throughout / bathroom S.....
- |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|
| 1 <u>q</u> ueue / <u>th</u> roughout ..... | 3 <u>ch</u> eck-in / <u>ch</u> emist ..... | 5 <u>l</u> ounge / <u>ch</u> ange .....      |
| 2 <u>d</u> eparture / <u>m</u> atch .....  | 4 <u>s</u> chedule / <u>s</u> chool .....  | 6 <u>h</u> elicopter / <u>a</u> rrival ..... |

2 Write the words in the table.

tail ✓ be airsick check-in queue wing take-off landing arrivals cabin departure lounge

IN THE AIRPORT BUILDING	IN OR ON THE PLANE
.....	▶ tail .....
.....	.....
.....	.....

3 Replace the underlined phrases with a word or phrase. The meaning must stay the same.

- ▶ A bird flew into the part of the plane where passengers sit. cabin .....
- 1 We arrived at the airport and went to the desk with our bags and tickets. .....
  - 2 Children were making a lot of noise during the whole of the flight. .....
  - 3 The money we paid for the plane ticket was very cheap. ....
  - 4 We sat and talked in the place where you wait before getting on the plane. .....
  - 5 The plane left the ground and started to fly in heavy rain. ....
  - 6 We landed in Lima at the planned time. .....
  - 7 My brother was waiting for me in the place where people get off the plane. .....
  - 8 I stood in a long line of people for an hour at the airport. ....
  - 9 Passengers should check in ninety minutes before they leave. .....
  - 10 Have you checked the plane timetable? .....

4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questionnaire, or ask another student.



## B Choosing your seat

### WHICH SEAT IS BEST?

It doesn't matter if you travel for business or pleasure, the choice of ticket is an important one. Most of us can't afford to travel first class, but business class is less expensive and has certain advantages over economy class. Pay more, and you get the following benefits:

- board more quickly
- enjoy a higher standard of food
- enjoy greater luxury
- be served by very experienced flight attendants
- have more private space
- have access to a greater variety of entertainment

### SPOTLIGHT *experience/experienced*

If you **have experience** [U] of something, you know about it and have done it before.

- I **have** a lot of **experience** with children.

An **experience** [C] is something that has happened to you.

- Living in India was an interesting **experience**.

**Experienced** *adj*

- She's a very **experienced** teacher.

### GLOSSARY

<b>pleasure</b>	the feeling of being happy and enjoying sth
<b>afford</b>	if you <b>can afford</b> sth, you have enough money to pay for it.
<b>first class</b>	the part of the plane which is more expensive to travel in <b>business class</b> (cheaper than first class) <b>economy class</b> (the cheapest class of air travel)
<b>advantage</b>	sth that helps you or is useful OPP <b>disadvantage</b>
<b>board</b> (a plane, boat, etc.)	get on (a plane, boat, etc.)
<b>standard</b>	how good sb or sth is
<b>luxury</b>	a way of living where you have all the beautiful and expensive things you want
<b>private</b>	for one particular person or small group only
<b>have access to sth</b>	have the opportunity to use sth
<b>entertainment</b>	anything that people think is interesting or funny: films, concerts, theatre, etc.

### 5 Underline the main stress on these words. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.

- |                      |             |                 |                 |
|----------------------|-------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| ▶ <u>ex</u> perience | 3 advantage | 6 economy       | 9 luxury        |
| 1 access             | 4 pleasure  | 7 business      | 10 disadvantage |
| 2 private            | 5 standard  | 8 entertainment |                 |

### 6 Complete the dialogues.

- |  |                                      |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| ▶ Have you got on the plane yet?                     | ~ Yes, we've just <u>boarded</u> .   |
| 1 Can I go in this part of the plane?                | ~ No, I'm sorry, it's p.....         |
| 2 There are plenty of things to watch on the flight. | ~ Yes, there's lots of e.....        |
| 3 They've worked for the airline for many years.     | ~ Yes, they are very e.....          |
| 4 First class is too expensive for me.               | ~ I agree. I can't a..... it either. |
| 5 Can you use the internet on this flight?           | ~ Yes, we have a..... to it.         |
| 6 Flying is something that makes you very happy.     | ~ Yes, it gives me a lot of p.....   |
| 7 On long night flights, you can sleep.              | ~ Yes, that's a big a.....           |
| 8 The service on the plane was excellent.            | ~ Yes, it was of a very high s.....  |

### 7 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ I can afford ..... to fly first class.
- 1 I've had lots of interesting ..... when travelling.
- 2 I've always had a high ..... of service when flying.
- 3 I usually have ..... to the internet and entertainment on a flight.
- 4 Flying is no ..... for me; I hate it.
- 5 I hate queueing to ..... a plane or train.
- 6 I would love the ..... of first class travel, but unfortunately I've never had it.

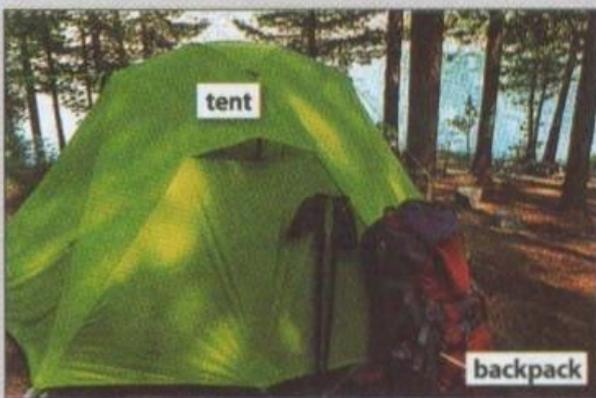
### ABOUT YOU

### 8 ABOUT YOU Are the sentences in Exercise 7 true for you? If not, change them to make them true.

- ▶ I can afford to fly first class. I certainly can't afford to fly first class. I can't even afford economy class!



# A Camping



## Advice for campers

- When you're **camping**, don't try and **put up** a tent **unless** the ground is completely **level**.
- Choose **campsites** with a good variety of **facilities** and entertainment **in case** the weather is terrible and you can't spend much time **outdoors**.
- If you want to explore the **countryside** and you're **hiking** during the day, **be sure to** have a small **backpack** for water, maps, lunch, etc.

## GLOSSARY

<b>camp</b>	stay in a tent for a short time ( <b>go camping</b> <i>n</i> )
<b>put sth up</b>	build sth such as a tent, a wall or fence
<b>unless</b>	if not; except if
<b>level</b>	flat; with no part higher than any other
<b>campsite</b>	a place where people on holiday stay in tents, usually with toilets, water, etc.
<b>facilities</b>	a building, service, piece of equipment that makes it possible to do sth, e.g. showers, a swimming pool, sports equipment
<b>in case</b>	because of the possibility of sth happening
<b>countryside</b>	land outside towns and cities with fields, woods, etc.
<b>hike</b>	go for a long walk in the country, often for pleasure
<b>be sure to do sth</b>	used to tell sb to do sth

## SPOTLIGHT *outdoor(s) and indoor(s)*

**Outdoors** is an adverb and means 'not inside a building'.  
**OPP indoors** Notice the underlined stress.

▪ *It's sunny - let's go **outdoors**. It's raining - let's go **indoors**.*

**Outdoor** and **indoor** are adjectives.

▪ **outdoor/indoor** sports

▪ **an outdoor/indoor** swimming pool

### 1 Underline the main stress in these words. Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

- |                    |                       |                    |
|--------------------|-----------------------|--------------------|
| ▶ <u>u</u> nless   | 4 level               | 8 facilities       |
| 1 <u>i</u> ndoors  | 5 <u>o</u> utdoor     | 9 <u>i</u> ndoor   |
| 2 <u>b</u> ackpack | 6 <u>c</u> amping     | 10 <u>o</u> tdoors |
| 3 <u>c</u> ampsite | 7 <u>c</u> ountryside |                    |

### 2 Complete the second sentence. The meaning must stay the same as the first sentence.

- ▶ I love hiking on the hills and in the fields. / I love hiking in the countryside.
- Remember to check the weather forecast. / Be \_\_\_\_\_ to check the weather forecast.
  - Make sure that the ground is flat and not on a hill. / Make sure that the ground is \_\_\_\_\_.
  - The campsite has no water, services or sports equipment. / The campsite has no \_\_\_\_\_.
  - Do you like sleeping in a tent on holiday? / Do you like \_\_\_\_\_?
  - Take a jacket because it might be cold. / Take a jacket in \_\_\_\_\_ it's cold.
  - Don't go out. / Stay \_\_\_\_\_.
  - I don't like swimming pools in the open air. / I don't like \_\_\_\_\_ pools.
  - We walked ten kilometres across the hills. / We \_\_\_\_\_ ten kilometres across the hills.

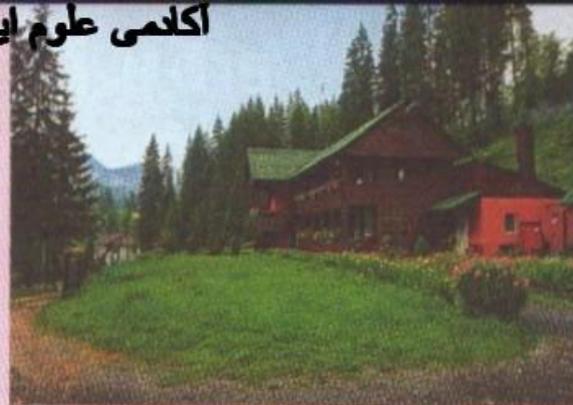
### 3 Complete the text.

I love the ▶ outdoor \_\_\_\_\_ life, and I'd been thinking of going to the Black Forest in Germany, because the (1) c\_\_\_\_\_ there looks spectacular. I found a (2) c\_\_\_\_\_ which had good (3) f\_\_\_\_\_ : hot showers, a café and a small food store. Unfortunately, I arrived at night and had to (4) p\_\_\_\_\_ up my (5) t\_\_\_\_\_ in the dark. I knew I wouldn't sleep well (6) \_\_\_\_\_ I took a sleeping pill, but I still had a cold and uncomfortable night. In the morning, I decided that I would (7) h\_\_\_\_\_ to the nearest town which was 15 kilometres away. I tried to jump across a small river, but I fell and dropped my (8) b\_\_\_\_\_ in the water, so I lost my sandwiches and water bottle. It was a miserable day.



## B A seaside break

My friend Carol and I decided to have a short **break** at the **seaside** for a few days. We **made a reservation** at a **hostel** in South Wales where the prices were very **reasonable**. We were **looking forward to** a few days of **sunbathing**, seeing the **sights** and eating delicious food. However, it **turned out** that the hostel was in a very **remote** location with no beaches, cafés or facilities nearby. Seeing the heavy rain, we **headed** home the following day.



### GLOSSARY

<b>break</b>	a short holiday: <i>a short/weekend break</i>	<b>look forward to (doing) sth</b>	be happy and excited about sth that is going to happen
<b>seaside</b>	an area or place next to the sea where people often go on holiday <i>seaside adj: a seaside holiday</i>	<b>sunbathing</b>	lying in the sun so that your skin becomes darker <i>sunbathe v</i>
<b>reservation</b>	a room, restaurant table, train seat, etc. that you have asked sb to keep for you: <i>make a reservation</i>	<b>sights pl</b>	interesting places that are often visited by tourists
<b>hostel</b>	a place like a cheap hotel where you can stay: <i>youth hostel</i>	<b>turn out</b>	happen in a particular way, especially one that you did not expect
<b>reasonable</b>	(of prices) not expensive	<b>remote</b>	far away from other towns, cities and people
		<b>head</b>	move in a particular direction

4 Is the pronunciation of the underlined sounds the same or different? Write S or D. Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

- break / reservation S
- 1 remote / location ..... 3 sunbathe / break ..... 5 reasonable / remote .....
- 2 seaside / head ..... 4 hostel / look forward to ..... 6 seaside / sights .....

5 True or false? Write T or F. If they are false, write true sentences.

- Making a reservation at a hotel is the same as booking a room there. T
- 1 Your skin usually changes colour when you sunbathe. ....
- 2 A break is a long holiday. ....
- 3 In a holiday location, a police station is one of the usual sights. ....
- 4 You would be happy if the price of something was reasonable. ....
- 5 If a place is remote, there are a lot of people there. ....
- 6 If you're looking forward to an event, you want to go to it. ....
- 7 A hostel is a place where you can sleep. ....
- 8 If you head home, you are leaving home. ....

6 Complete the questions using words from the box in the correct place.

break sunbathing seaside make out sights remote forward youth ✓

### ABOUT YOU

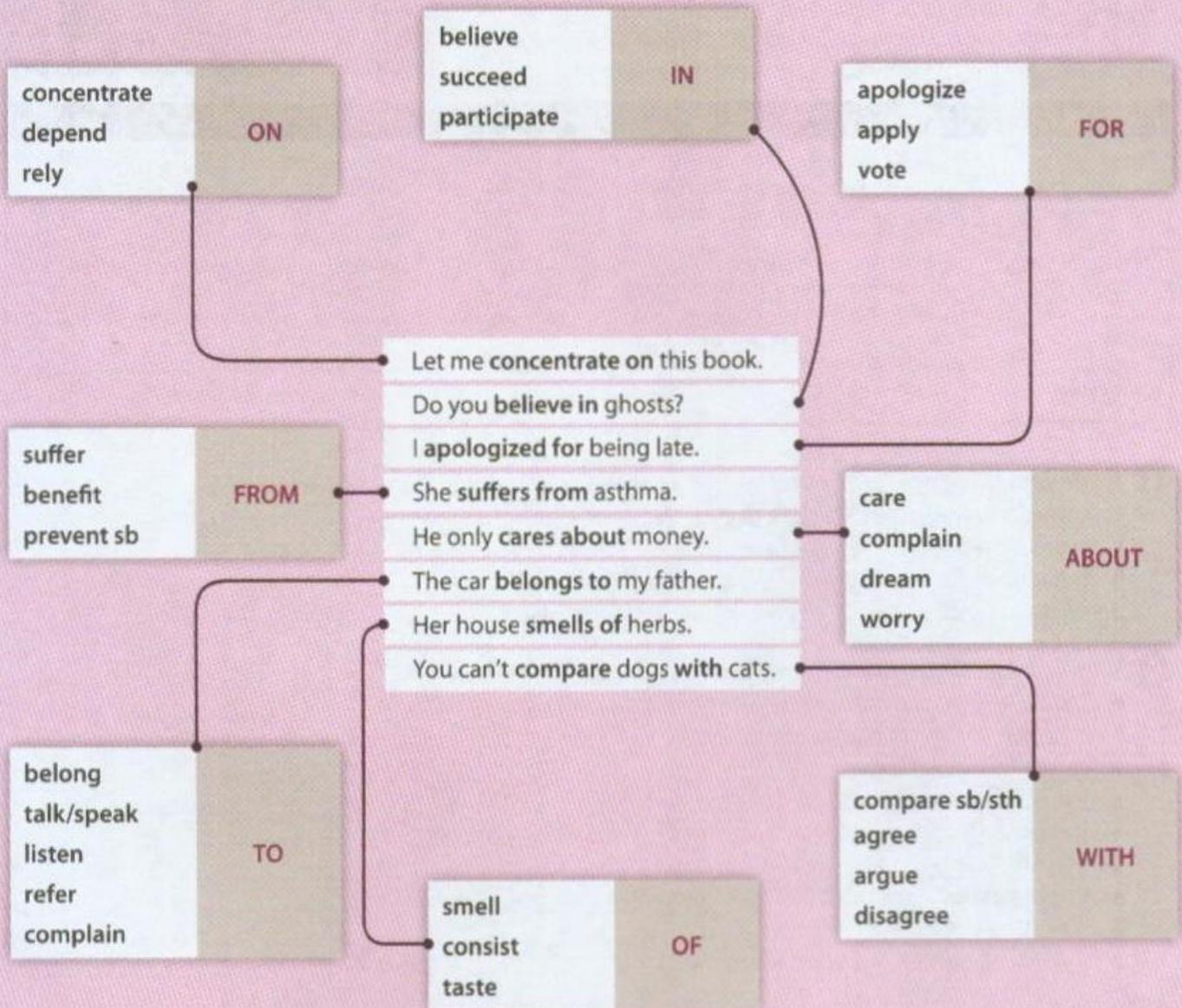
- Have you ever stayed in a / hostel? youth .....
- 1 Do you like at the seaside? .....
- 2 Do you prefer to stay in a town or a more location? .....
- 3 When you go on holiday, do you always a reservation? .....
- 4 Do you enjoy going to see the in a new city? .....
- 5 In the summer, do you prefer to have a holiday? .....
- 6 Do you ever go away on a weekend? .....
- 7 Do you look to travelling, or do you worry about it? .....
- 8 Do your holidays always turn as you expected? .....

7 **ABOUT YOU** Write your answers to Exercise 6, or ask another student.

- Have you ever stayed in a youth hostel? Yes, quite often. I travelled in Europe when I was a student and stayed in several. They were great, and I met a lot of people.

### TEST YOURSELF

Some of the verbs are explained in the glossary, others are explained in different parts of the book. Use the APP or the Word List to help you if necessary.



### SPOTLIGHT verb + preposition

Some verbs can be followed by different prepositions.

#### argue with sb:

- I **argued with** my brother.

#### argue about sth:

- We **argued about** the holiday.

You **talk/speak/complain to sb**, but **talk/speak/complain about sth** or **sb**, and **agree/disagree with sb** but **agree/disagree about sth**.

### GLOSSARY

**concentrate (on sth)**

**rely on sb/sth**

give all your attention to sth

1 need sb or sth: *She **relies on** her parents.*  
2 be sure that sb or sth will do what they say they they will do: *You can **rely on** him for help.* **SYN depend on sb/sth**

**participate (in sth) formal**

**apologize (for sth) formal**

**benefit (from sth)**

**suffer (from sth)**

do sth together with other people

say sorry for sth

get sth good or useful from sth

feel pain, sadness or another unpleasant feeling because of sth

**prevent sb from (doing) sth**

**care (about sth/sb)**

**consist of sth**

**refer to sb/sth**

stop sb doing sth

think that sth/sb is important

be made from two or more things

talk about sb/sth: *In the interview, he **referred to** his old science teacher.*

**1 Underline the main stress in these verbs. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.**

- |               |               |            |            |
|---------------|---------------|------------|------------|
| ▶ depend      | 3 concentrate | 6 disagree | 9 complain |
| 1 participate | 4 succeed     | 7 compare  | 10 apply   |
| 2 apologize   | 5 benefit     | 8 prevent  | 11 rely    |

**2 Circle the correct preposition.**

- ▶ Do you ever listen to / from the radio?
- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1 We compared our exam results <i>from</i> / <i>with</i> the other class's. | 5 I can't concentrate <i>on</i> / <i>in</i> my work when it's noisy.   |
| 2 Martha still depends <i>of</i> / <i>on</i> her parents a lot.             | 6 This soap smells <i>from</i> / <i>of</i> honey.                      |
| 3 I don't think she cares <i>about</i> / <i>for</i> the money.              | 7 Emma is worried <i>for</i> / <i>about</i> her brother.               |
| 4 Do you believe <i>on</i> / <i>in</i> life after death?                    | 8 Edward succeeded <i>on</i> / <i>in</i> passing all his exams.        |
|   | 9 This soup tastes <i>with</i> / <i>of</i> cheese, and it's delicious. |

**3 Complete the sentences with the correct preposition.**

- ▶ British people often talk about the weather.
- Does the group always agree \_\_\_\_\_ you?
  - I often dream \_\_\_\_\_ my dog.
  - Both my brothers suffer \_\_\_\_\_ migraines.
  - Does this book belong \_\_\_\_\_ anyone?
  - Ava is going to apply \_\_\_\_\_ that job.
  - We had to complain \_\_\_\_\_ the food – it was terrible.
  - Marcus wasn't referring \_\_\_\_\_ you when he said some students were lazy.
  - I didn't want to participate \_\_\_\_\_ the discussion.
  - The book consists \_\_\_\_\_ three sections.
  - I'm not sure who will benefit \_\_\_\_\_ the changes in the law.
  - Olivia wants to concentrate \_\_\_\_\_ criminal law when she finishes her degree.
  - A good education will help you to succeed \_\_\_\_\_ finding an interesting job.

**4 Complete the sentences with the correct verb and preposition.**

- ▶ If you compare this phone with the other one, you can see this one is much better.
- The job advert looked interesting, so I'm going to \_\_\_\_\_ it.
  - I'm afraid I \_\_\_\_\_ my wife all the time – she does everything for me.
  - Did George \_\_\_\_\_ being late?
  - Who did you \_\_\_\_\_ in the last election?
  - He locked the door, and that \_\_\_\_\_ us \_\_\_\_\_ leaving.
  - I'm afraid my sister and I never \_\_\_\_\_ each other – we argue all the time.
  - He doesn't \_\_\_\_\_ other people: he's only interested in himself.
  - Somebody gave me some toothpaste that \_\_\_\_\_ apples. It was very odd.
  - The service was very slow so I \_\_\_\_\_ the manager.

**5 ABOUT YOU Finish these sentences in a way that is true for you. If possible, compare with another student.**

- ▶ I often listen to music on my phone when I'm going to work
- I think I rely \_\_\_\_\_
  - In the past I have complained \_\_\_\_\_
  - I will never vote \_\_\_\_\_
  - I sometimes dream \_\_\_\_\_
  - My family sometimes argue \_\_\_\_\_
  - I sometimes have to apologize \_\_\_\_\_
  - I sometimes worry \_\_\_\_\_
  - I often disagree \_\_\_\_\_
  - I don't want to depend \_\_\_\_\_



### WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- Is there an **alternative to** prison for serious crime or less serious crime?
- Should young people have **experience of** working when they are still at school?
- What do you think about the **rise in** the number of women in politics?
- What are the **advantages of** living in a big city?
- Do you think young people should have more **respect for** older people?
- Is there a **need for** more and better roads in your country?
- What is the **connection between** drugs and crime?
- What is the main **cause of** poverty in our society?
- Do you have any **doubts about** the safety of the food we produce?

### GLOSSARY

<b>alternative (to sth/sb)</b>	a thing that you can choose instead of another thing
<b>experience (of sth)</b>	knowing about sth because you have seen it or done it
<b>rise (in sth)</b>	when the amount or level of sth goes up OPP <b>fall (in sth)</b>
<b>advantage (of sth)</b>	sth that helps you or is useful OPP <b>disadvantage (of sth)</b>
<b>respect (for sb/sth)</b>	the feeling you have when you have a high opinion of sb/sth
<b>need (for sth)</b>	a situation in which you must do (sth) or have sth
<b>connection (between A and B)</b>	the way that one thing is joined or related to another
<b>cause (of sth)</b>	a thing or person that makes sth happen
<b>poverty</b>	the state of being poor: <i>A lot of people are living in poverty.</i>
<b>doubt (about sth)</b>	a feeling of being uncertain about sth or not believing in sth

### SPOTLIGHT preposition + -ing form

If a preposition is followed directly by a verb, it will be an *-ing* form, not an infinitive.

- *What is the advantage **of staying** here?*
- *I don't have any experience **of living** in another country.*

### 1 Underline the main stress in these words. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.

- ▶ respect 1 alternative 2 advantage 3 experience 4 connection 5 poverty 6 disadvantage

### 2 Complete the sentences with the correct preposition.

- ▶ Do you have experience of working abroad?
- 1 There is a need for much better medical services.
  - 2 I think the weather is the main advantage of living here.
  - 3 Do people have respect for police officers in your country?
  - 4 What is the main cause of plane crashes?
  - 5 There is obviously a connection between health and diet.
  - 6 I don't have any doubts about the politician I voted for this year.
  - 7 Better public transport is the only alternative to more cars on the roads.
  - 8 There has been a fall in the birth rate.

### 3 Complete the sentences with the correct noun and preposition.

- ▶ Why is there a need for more houses?
- 1 There has been a rise in global temperatures in the last ten years.
  - 2 I think noise is the main disadvantage of living in the city centre.
  - 3 Some experts have serious doubts about the safety of nuclear power.
  - 4 A lot of people don't like politicians and don't have respect for them.
  - 5 I have worked with adults but I don't have any experience of working with children.
  - 6 What do you think is the main cause of cancer?
  - 7 Is there a cheap alternative to petrol cars?
  - 8 I think there is a strong connection between poverty and crime.

### 4 ABOUT YOU Write answers to the questions at the top of the page, or talk to another student.



### TEST YOURSELF

I'm afraid I can't stop and talk - I'm **in a hurry**.

I'm going to Jo's wedding and I have to get to the church **on time**.  
If I get the 3.30 train, I'll be there **in time** to walk to the church.

It'll be great: I haven't seen my cousins **for ages**.

I enjoy weddings, but **at times** I get emotional and cry.

The ceremony is quite short, so we won't be in the church **for long**.

**By the time** the wedding ceremony is over though, I'll be hungry.  
We're all going to the reception afterwards, and we'll be there **for a while**.

Jo told me last year she was getting married. **At the time** I was very surprised!

It was difficult finding anywhere to live, but **at last** they've bought a flat.  
They can't move in yet. **In the meantime**, they'll live with Jo's parents.

**SPOTLIGHT** *at last*

**At last** means 'in the end' or 'finally', but is often used after there has been a long wait and/or a number of problems.

- We spent all day looking for a pharmacy, then **at last** we found one.
- (NOT We went to the cinema, had a meal, then *at last* went home.)

**GLOSSARY**

<b>in a hurry</b>	needing or wanting to do sth very quickly
<b>on time</b>	not late or early; at exactly the correct time
<b>in time (for sth/ to do sth)</b>	not late
<b>for long</b>	(used in questions and negative sentences) for a long time
<b>by the time</b>	used for saying what has already happened when sth else happens
<b>for a while</b>	a period of time (not usually a long time)
<b>for ages</b>	for a very long time
<b>at times</b>	sometimes: <i>My job is difficult at times.</i>
<b>at the time</b>	(referring to a past time) then
<b>in the meantime</b>	in the time between two things happening <b>SYN meanwhile</b>

**1 Make seven more time phrases using words the box.**

by ✓	in	in the	at	ages	time	meantime	the time ✓
for	for a	at	in a	while	times	last	hurry

▶ by the time \_\_\_\_\_

**2 Complete the sentences.**

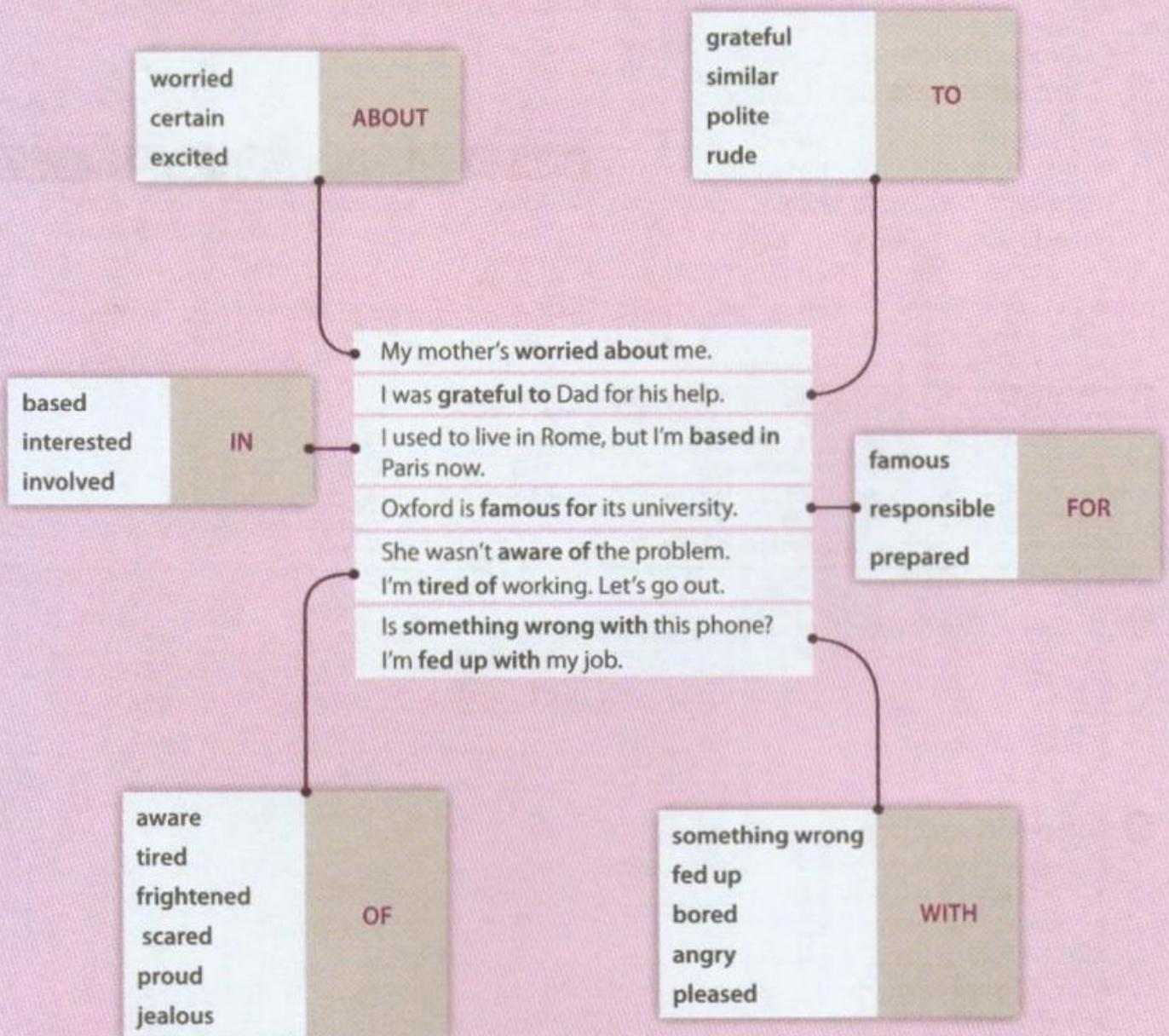
- ▶ The students are usually here on time.
- 1 I ran back to the shop, but by the \_\_\_\_\_ I got there, it was closed.
- 2 Seb's not here, but he won't be out for \_\_\_\_\_ because it's nearly dinner time!
- 3 Li went to the beach, so he'll be gone for a \_\_\_\_\_. In the \_\_\_\_\_, let's chat.
- 4 I was standing in the rain for half an hour and then at \_\_\_\_\_ they got here.
- 5 Martin was in a \_\_\_\_\_, so he couldn't stop for lunch.
- 6 Do you know, I haven't seen my next-door neighbour for \_\_\_\_\_.

**3 Complete the sentences with a suitable time phrase.**

- ▶ It's usually warm here, but at times \_\_\_\_\_ it can get cold in the evenings.
- 1 It doesn't matter if you're early. Just make sure you're there \_\_\_\_\_ for the meal.
- 2 When Max says 8 p.m., he means 8 p.m., so be there \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 We haven't been outside Europe \_\_\_\_\_: it must be about five years.
- 4 When I got there, Sylvia was studying, so I didn't stay \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 I don't remember much about the cottage. \_\_\_\_\_ I was just a small child.
- 6 We spent months looking for somewhere to live, then \_\_\_\_\_ we found just the right place - close to the centre but in a quiet road.
- 7 When I first lived in Edinburgh, I stayed with my aunt \_\_\_\_\_ - just a couple of weeks.
- 8 I'd like to play tennis, but \_\_\_\_\_ I finish this work, it'll be too late.
- 9 My parents said they would be back in a couple of hours, so \_\_\_\_\_ we could watch a video.

**TEST YOURSELF**

Some of the adjectives are explained in the glossary. If necessary, you can check the meaning of other words using the Word List or .



## GLOSSARY

**grateful (to sb)** If you are **grateful**, you feel or show your thanks to sb who has helped you or done sth for you.

**prepared (for sth)** ready for sth

**fed up (with sth/sb) inf** bored or unhappy with sth/sb, especially because it has continued for a long time

**something wrong (with sth)** not working well, or not as it should be

**aware (of sth)** knowing about sth

**tired (of sth)** having had too much of sth and wanting to do sth else

**proud (of sth)** pleased about sth that you or others have done

**jealous (of sb)** angry or sad because you want what another person has

**involved (in sth)** taking part in sth; being part of sth

## SPOTLIGHT adjective + preposition

Some adjectives are followed by different prepositions with a different meaning.

- I travel **around** the world, but I'm **based in** New York. (= It is my home or main office.)
- The film is **based on** a book. (= The film uses the book or is developed from it.)

1 Is the pronunciation of the underlined sounds the same or different? Write S or D.

Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

- ▶ tired / similar D    2 aware / prepared .....    4 grateful / famous .....    6 certain / frightened .....  
 1 wrong / worrid .....    3 pleased / jealous .....    5 polite / famous .....    7 based / grateful .....

2 Write the words with their prepositions in the correct column.

bored ✓	tired	something wrong	aware	scared	angry	similar
rude	jealous	grateful	proud	fed up	pleased	polite

with	to	of
▶ bored with		
.....	.....	.....
.....	.....	.....
.....	.....	.....

3 Make correct sentences.

- ▶ depend / brother / on / can / your / you ? Can you depend on your brother ?  
 1 of / he / problem / is / aware / the / ..... ?  
 2 up / I'm / essays / with / writing / fed .....  
 3 younger / is / of / Sophia / sister / her / jealous .....  
 4 he's / marketing / involved / not / now / in .....  
 5 famous / pyramids / is / for / Egypt / the .....  
 6 wasn't / exam / for / I / prepared / the .....

4 Complete the sentences with the correct preposition.

- ▶ Henry was quite rude to the teacher.  
 1 Olivia is getting very excited ..... going to university.  
 2 Is Mark still involved ..... the company?  
 3 Doctors have to be very aware ..... their patients' feelings.  
 4 Is Martha still interested ..... art?  
 5 The company is based ..... France now.  
 6 I'm very proud ..... the picture I painted.  
 7 The programme is based ..... a true-life story.  
 8 I'm tired ..... doing this cleaning. Let's watch a film.  
 9 She's not certain ..... the dates for the next course.  
 10 Is Emma still responsible ..... the whole department?

5 Complete the sentences with the correct adjective.

- ▶ My Mum was very angry with me when I broke her favourite vase.  
 1 Her son has just become a doctor. She's very ..... of him.  
 2 This book is ..... to his last one - they're all the same!  
 3 I've been ..... of flying ever since I was in a plane that nearly crashed.  
 4 I'm ..... with looking after my younger sister. I have to do it all the time, and it's really boring.  
 5 I'm afraid there's something ..... with the computer: the screen has frozen.  
 6 I was very ..... to the teacher because she gave me lots of help in her free time.  
 7 Ted is ..... of anyone who gets very friendly with his girlfriend. I think it annoys her.  
 8 I was ..... with my exam results. I passed all of them and I didn't think I would.

6 ABOUT YOU Complete these sentences about yourself, or talk to another student.

- ▶ I'm frightened of snakes .....  
 I'm very grateful ..... I'm bored .....  
 I get fed up ..... I'm usually polite .....  
 I'm proud ..... At the moment, I'm worried .....



TEST YOURSELF

## A All about you

### LET'S FIND OUT ABOUT YOU!

- Do you ever argue with people **in public**?
- Do you believe that couples should stay together **for life**?
- What do you do **on a regular basis** that helps you with stress?
- What's the best way to help people who are living **on the streets**?
- Would you work **for free** for a charity you believe in?
- Do you think things have got better in your country **in recent years**?
- Do you think that people will stop using plastic **over time**?
- Do you think young people are **at risk from** social media?
- **In general**, do you think you are a happy person?

#### GLOSSARY

<b>in public</b>	when other people are there <b>OPP in private</b>
<b>for life</b>	till the end of your life
<b>on a regular basis</b>	having the same space or time between each thing and the next
<b>on the street(s) inf</b>	without a home; living outside
<b>for free</b>	without payment
<b>in recent years, months, etc.</b>	that happened or began not many years, months, etc. ago
<b>over time</b>	as time passes
<b>at risk (from sth)</b>	in a situation where something unpleasant or dangerous could happen <b>SYN in danger (of sth)</b>
<b>in general</b>	usually; most of the time <b>SYN on the whole</b>

#### 1 Same or different? Write S or D.

- ▶ Those men are on the streets. / Those men are working on the streets. D
- 1 She did the work for free. / She wasn't paid for the work. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 In general, I liked it. / On the whole, I liked it. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 I don't do it in public. / I don't do it in private. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 The children are at risk. / The children are in danger. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 I haven't seen Rob in recent years. / I haven't seen Rob for a very long time. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 I'm busy at the moment. / I'm busy in general. \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 I go to the gym on a regular basis. / I go to the gym when I want to. \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 People change their minds over time. / People change their minds as time passes. \_\_\_\_\_

#### 2 Complete the phrases with the correct preposition(s).

- ▶ In \_\_\_\_\_ general, women earn less than men.
- 1 The injury affected him \_\_\_\_\_ life.
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ the whole, I didn't like the film.
- 3 Jack's hair has gone white \_\_\_\_\_ time.
- 4 Are the boys \_\_\_\_\_ risk \_\_\_\_\_ this illness?
- 5 Things have changed a lot \_\_\_\_\_ recent years.
- 6 The children could be \_\_\_\_\_ danger.
- 7 I asked to see her \_\_\_\_\_ private.
- 8 Do you take exercise \_\_\_\_\_ a regular basis?
- 9 You have to pay: nothing is \_\_\_\_\_ free.

#### 3 Complete the sentences with a prepositional phrase.

- ▶ What politicians say in public is often different from what they believe in private \_\_\_\_\_.
- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ I get up later at the weekend than during the week.
- 2 Nobody has a job \_\_\_\_\_ these days. You might have many jobs over the years.
- 3 Parents have to pay for the show, but children can go in \_\_\_\_\_. Aren't they lucky?
- 4 Young people can put themselves \_\_\_\_\_ if they go out alone late at night.
- 5 You see a lot of people living \_\_\_\_\_. They have nothing and nobody. It's terrible.
- 6 The problem with being famous is that you are always recognized \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7 \_\_\_\_\_, permanent work is better paid than temporary work.
- 8 \_\_\_\_\_, people have become much more worried about global warming.

#### 4 ABOUT YOU Write answers to the questions at the top of the page, or talk to another student.



**B** *in, at, on, by*

- Is there anything **in particular** you want to do this evening? (= especially)
- I didn't know it was your coat - I took it **by mistake**. (= I didn't plan to take it.)
- There were **at least** 20 people there. (= not less than 20)
- I met Dan **on the way** to school. (= on the road/journey)
- I couldn't move: Mo's car was **in the way**. (= in front of me so I couldn't move)
- I suppose, **on average**, we go abroad two or three times a year. (= normally; in most years, etc.)
- I'm afraid there's no coffee. ~ OK, **in that case**, I'll have tea. (= if that is the situation)
- At the end of** the film, the couple move to Los Angeles. (= in the final part of something)
- The clubs were closed, so **in the end** we went home early. (= finally, after some time)
- He wanted to know about the meeting **in detail**. (= with all the information I had)
- We met Marisa **by chance** when we were in Munich. (= without planning to)
- Why **on earth** do you want to go out in this terrible weather? (= you must be crazy!)

**SPOTLIGHT** *on earth*

**On earth** *inf* is used in questions when you are very surprised or want to say something very strongly.

- *What **on earth** are they doing?*
- *Where **on earth** is Milla?*
- *How **on earth** did you do that?*
- *Who **on earth** made this jumper?*

**5** Make eight more phrases using *in, at, by* or *on*.

way ✓	chance	earth	mistake	least
detail	average	particular	that case	

- ▶ *in the way* \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_

**6** Replace the underlined words with a prepositional phrase that has the same meaning.

- ▶ The weather was awful all day, so finally we decided to go home. *in the end*
- 1 We'll need not less than two hours to get there. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 There isn't anything especially that you don't eat, is there? \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 She saw Damian without planning to when she was at the supermarket. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 In the final part of the story, the old woman dies. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 We couldn't get out of the bus because there were people standing in front of us. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 Normally, how long does it take you to get to work? \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 I can get some milk when I'm going to work. \_\_\_\_\_

**7** Where would you put these phrases in the sentences and dialogues below?

in detail	in particular ✓	on earth	in the end
by mistake	in that case	by chance	

- ▶ If I go to the pharmacy, is there anything / that you want? *in particular*
- 1 A taxi will be very expensive. ~ OK, let's take the bus. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 I picked up Ben's scarf because it looked very similar to mine. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 We met Maxine when we were on holiday in Rome. It was a strange coincidence. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 What is that man doing with a box over his head? \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 We spent ages waiting for the box office to open, and we went home. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 My parents want to know about the party. I hope you can remember what happened! \_\_\_\_\_



## A Ways of defining

What is it?



1 It's a round, metal container used for cooking things in.



2 It's a hard black substance that you find below the ground and can burn.



3 It's a device for changing channels on a TV.



4 It's a creature with big eyes that flies and hunts at night.



5 It's a type of material you use to make sheets, clothes, etc.



6 It's an object you use to tidy your hair.



7 It's an article of clothing you wear over your shoulders.



8 It's the stuff you use for washing your hair.

### GLOSSARY

<b>container</b>	a box, bottle, etc. in which you can store or carry sth
<b>substance</b>	a particular type of solid, liquid or gas
<b>device</b>	a tool or machine which is designed to do a particular job
<b>creature</b>	a living thing such as an animal, insect, etc., but not a plant
<b>material [U]</b>	cloth used for making clothes, curtains, etc.
<b>object</b>	a solid thing you can see and touch which is not alive <b>syn</b> thing
<b>article</b>	a particular item or separate thing: <b>an article of clothing, household articles, toilet articles</b>

### SPOTLIGHT *stuff*

**Stuff [U]** is used to refer to something without using its name. We use **stuff** to replace uncountable nouns, or plural countable nouns.

- *What's the stuff in this packet?* (e.g. washing powder, sugar, etc.)
- *Who left all this stuff here?* (e.g. books, papers, etc.)

- 1 Match the words in the box with the definitions and pictures above. Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

coal owl cotton shawl comb remote control pot shampoo

- 2 Cover the definitions and pictures and complete the sentences.

- ▶ A shawl is an article of clothing.
- 1 An owl is a \_\_\_\_\_ that flies.
- 2 Cotton is a kind of \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 A remote control is an electronic \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 Coal is a hard, black \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 A comb is a plastic \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 Shampoo is \_\_\_\_\_ for washing your hair.
- 7 A pot is a type of \_\_\_\_\_.

- 3 Cross out any examples which are not correct.

- ▶ **a thing:** umbrella, ~~cow~~, lamp
- 1 **stuff:** children, hair, soap
- 2 **an object:** bee, printer, scissors
- 3 **a creature:** mouse, tree, butterfly
- 4 **a device:** mobile phone, spoon, X-ray machine
- 5 **a container:** towel, bottle, box
- 6 **material:** wool, bag, cotton
- 7 **a substance:** sugar, snow, melon

- 4 Write definitions using words from the glossary.

- ▶ A dishwasher is an electrical device for washing dishes, knives, forks, etc.
- 1 Soap is \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 A snake is \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 A tin is \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 A hairdryer is \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 A fork is \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 Denim is \_\_\_\_\_.

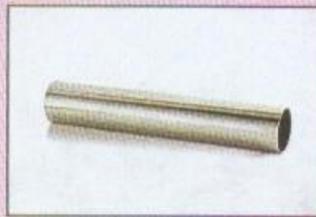


TEST YOURSELF

## B What's it made of?



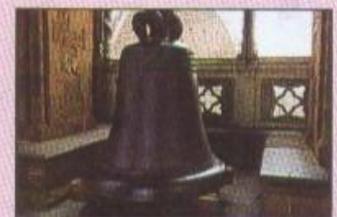
a rubber tyre



a steel pipe



a leather bag



an iron bell



a stone statue



a silver chain



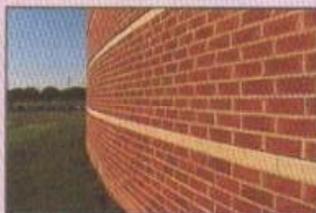
a gold medal



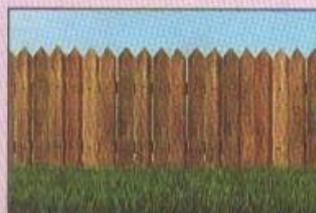
a cardboard box



a metal robot



a brick wall / a wall made of bricks



a wooden fence / a fence made of wood



a woollen blanket / a blanket made of wool

### SPOTLIGHT noun + noun

Sometimes we use a noun with another noun to say what things are made of, what they are for, etc. A **rubber tyre** is a tyre made of rubber. A **letter box** is a box for letters.

5 Is the pronunciation of the underlined sounds the same or different? Write **S** or **D**. Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

- |  |   |   |
|--|---|---|
| ▶ <u>l</u> eather / <u>m</u> etal <u>S</u> | 3 pipe / <u>t</u> yre .....             | 6 <u>r</u> ubber / <u>w</u> ooden ..... |
| 1 <u>i</u> ron / <u>r</u> obot .....       | 4 statue / <u>ch</u> ain .....          | 7 <u>st</u> one / <u>g</u> old .....    |
| 2 <u>f</u> ence / <u>c</u> ardboard .....  | 5 <u>bl</u> anket / <u>med</u> al ..... | 8 <u>be</u> ll / <u>w</u> oolen .....   |

6 Circle the correct word in italics.

- |   |  |  |
|---|--|--|
| ▶ a table made of <u>wood</u> / <i>wool</i> | 4 a <i>wooden</i> / <i>woollen</i> sweater | 8 a steel <i>tyre</i> / <i>fork</i>      |
| 1 a rubber <i>boot</i> / <i>bell</i>        | 5 an iron <i>blanket</i> / <i>pipe</i>     | 9 <i>woollen</i> / <i>gold</i> earrings  |
| 2 a <i>stone</i> / <i>leather</i> wall      | 6 a <i>silver</i> / <i>brick</i> medal     | 10 a <i>wooden</i> / <i>silver</i> chair |
| 3 a <i>rubber</i> / <i>metal</i> fence      | 7 a stone <i>robot</i> / <i>statue</i>     |  |

7 Complete the sentences.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| ▶ A sweater is often made of <u>wool</u> .....  | 4 A ball can be made of .....                   |
| 1 Boots, shoes and bags are often made of ..... | 5 A bridge can be made of ....., .....          |
| 2 A building can be made of ....., .....        | 6 Medals and chains can be made of ....., ..... |
| 3 A fence is usually made of ....., or .....    | 7 A box can be made of ....., or .....          |

8 **ABOUT YOU** Look around you. Write down things that you can see which are made of iron, rubber, steel, leather, stone, silver, gold, cardboard, metal, wood, wool or brick.

- ▶ The computer is made of metal and plastic, the desk is made of wood, my diary is made of cardboard and paper.



### TEST YOURSELF

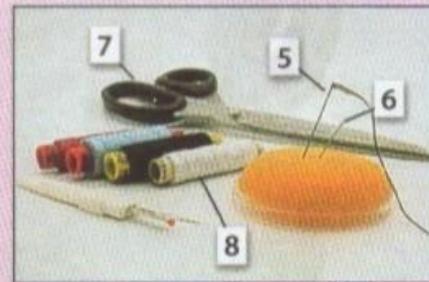
## A Using tools and household objects



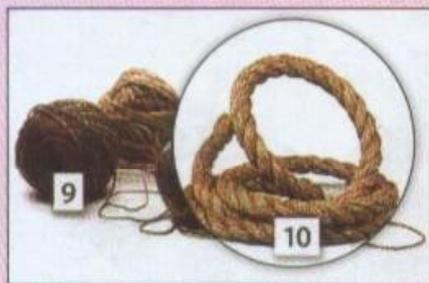
You use a **hammer**<sup>1</sup> to **bang** a **nail**<sup>2</sup> into the wall to **hang** a picture on.



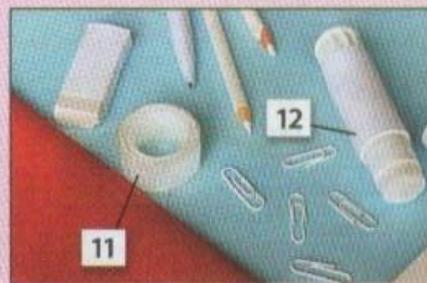
You use a **drill**<sup>3</sup> to **make** a **hole**<sup>4</sup>. A hammer and drill are **tools**.



You use a **needle**<sup>5</sup>, **pins**<sup>6</sup>, **scissors**<sup>7</sup> and **cotton**<sup>8</sup> when you're sewing.



You use **string**<sup>9</sup> or **rope**<sup>10</sup> to **tie** things together.



You use **tape**<sup>11</sup> or **glue**<sup>12</sup> to **stick** things together.

**SPOTLIGHT** uncountable nouns

**Cotton, string, rope, tape and glue** are usually uncountable.

- I need **some glue**. (NOT I need a glue.)
- Where's the **string**?

## 1 Complete the words.

▶ n \_ a \_ i \_ l

1 n \_ \_ \_ d l \_ \_

2 st \_ \_ \_ \_ g

3 h \_ \_ mm \_ \_ \_

4 sc \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ rs

5 d \_ \_ \_ ll

6 r \_ \_ \_ e

7 h \_ \_ \_ e

8 c \_ \_ \_ t \_ \_ n

9 g \_ \_ \_ e

## 2 Circle the correct word.

▶ Stick it together with glue / cotton.

1 Sew it with a *pin* / *needle*.

2 Cut it with *scissors* / *a drill*.

3 Tie it together with *rope* / *nails*.

4 Bang it with *string* / *a hammer*.

5 Make a hole with *cotton* / *a drill*.

6 Stick it together with *tape* / *rope*.

7 Sew it with *cotton* / *a tool*.

8 *Bang* / *Make* a nail into a piece of wood.

## 3 Complete the sentences.

▶ She didn't have any string, so she stuck the parcel together with tape.

1 I've got a hammer and a drill, but I haven't got any other \_\_\_\_\_.

2 When you make a skirt for a doll, you cut the fabric with \_\_\_\_\_, you hold the pieces together with \_\_\_\_\_, and then you \_\_\_\_\_ it with a needle and \_\_\_\_\_.

3 If you break a bowl, you can \_\_\_\_\_ it together with \_\_\_\_\_.

4 We used a long piece of \_\_\_\_\_ to tie the boat to the harbour wall.

5 A drill is very useful if you need to make a \_\_\_\_\_ in a wall.

6 I need a hammer to \_\_\_\_\_ this \_\_\_\_\_ in the wall.

7 I tied all the keys \_\_\_\_\_ with a piece of \_\_\_\_\_.

8 Can you \_\_\_\_\_ that mirror on the wall over there?

## 4 ABOUT YOU Which tools and household objects do you have, and which ones do you use a lot? Write a list, or tell another student.



TEST YOURSELF

## B Household tasks

Oh, dear! The flat is such a mess. There's mud on the floor and dirt and dust everywhere. And we really need to decorate the hall and stairs.

Yes, we need to tidy up, clean the floors and wipe all the furniture with a damp cloth.

And another thing: the TV isn't working properly. We must get someone to repair it.

Oh, I don't know - we never watch it. Let's get rid of it. By the way, I've noticed that there's something wrong with the bathroom tap. It needs fixing. Maybe I'll try and mend it myself.

### SPOTLIGHT *repair, fix, mend*

**Repair, fix** and **mend** all mean 'put something right which is broken or damaged'.

■ Can you **repair/fix** the fridge? ■ It took ages to **repair/mend** the roof.

We often use **mend** and **repair** (and NOT **fix**) to talk about repairing clothes.

■ I **mended** the hole in my pocket. ■ My shoes need **repairing**.

### GLOSSARY

<b>mess</b>	a lot of untidy or dirty things, all in the wrong place
<b>mud</b>	soft, wet earth
<b>dirt</b>	a substance that is not clean
<b>dust</b>	dry dirt that is like powder
<b>decorate</b>	put paint or paper on the walls
<b>tidy (sth) up</b>	make a place look better by putting things in the correct place
<b>wipe</b>	make sth clean or dry with a <i>cloth</i>
<b>cloth</b>	a piece of material used for cleaning things
<b>it isn't working</b>	= it's broken, it isn't functioning
<b>properly</b>	correctly or well
<b>get rid of sth</b>	make yourself free of sth you do not want; throw sth away
<b>something wrong with sth</b>	not working well, or not as it should be

### 5 Find the beginning and the end of each word.

DECORATE / WIPEDUSTDIRTMESSFIXCLOTHMENDPROPERLYMUDREPAIR

### 6 One word is missing in each sentence. What is it, and where does it go?

► I've bought some paint and wallpaper, so I'm going to / the living room.

1 The dishwasher is broken - we need to phone someone to come and it.

2 Lula came in after walking in the fields, and now there's all over the floor.

3 I don't need this stuff any more - I want to get of it.

4 Do you know what is with the radio? I can't hear anything at all.

5 Have you got a cloth to the cupboards? They're covered in dust.

6 The lamp isn't properly: sometimes it comes on and sometimes it doesn't.

7 Do you know how to sew? I need somebody to the hole in my trousers.

8 The flat is such a mess, and my mother's coming. Can you up, please?

decorate

.....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....

### 7 Complete the text.

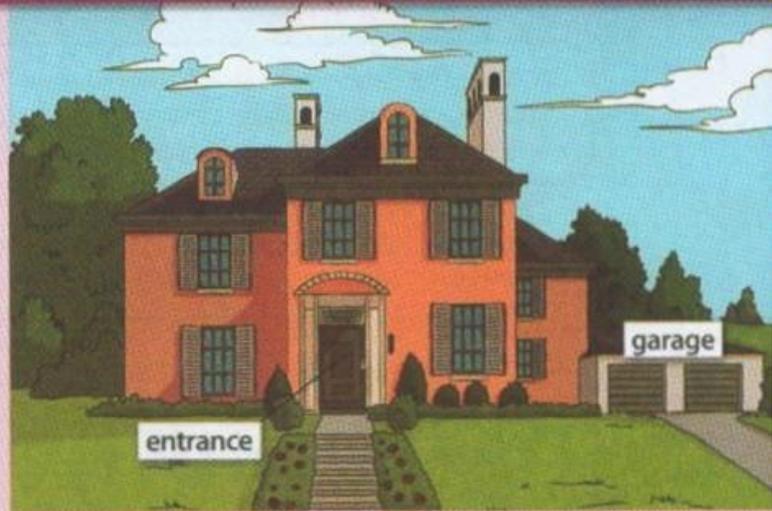
The house was in very bad condition and in the last storm, the rain had come into all the bedrooms. We paid a builder to ► **mend** ..... the roof for us. The rest of the house was a terrible (1) ....., so first we had to (2) ..... up and remove all the (3) ..... and (4) ..... with a damp cloth. The old carpets were wet and smelled horrible, so we pulled them up and got (5) ..... of them. In the end, it still looked awful so we had to (6) ..... the bedrooms again. Then we realized that there was something (7) ..... with the central heating, and it cost a lot to get it (8) ....., The bathroom was a problem too: the shower didn't work (9) ..... - some days the water was hot, others it was freezing, so that was another thing that someone had to (10) ..... It was all so expensive!



### TEST YOURSELF

## A A new home

My cousin has recently moved house to a property just outside Edinburgh. It is close to a famous, historic cottage and in a beautiful setting near the hills. The entrance to the house is very impressive. The hall leads to an enormous sitting room with high ceilings and big windows facing south, so it feels bright and open. Upstairs, there are four bedrooms, and two of them have balconies that look out onto the back garden. And a practical feature of the house is the huge garage for four cars.



## GLOSSARY

**move house** go to live in a different house or area **move** *n*:  
The **move** took us a whole week.  
**property** a building, a piece of land, or both together  
**historic** famous and important in history  
**cottage** a small house, especially in the country  
**setting** the position sth is in  
**impressive** If sth is **impressive**, you admire it because it is very good, large or important.

**lead to sth** go in a particular direction  
**ceiling** the top part of the inside of a room  
**face** be pointing or looking towards sth: The kitchen **faces** west.  
**balcony** a small platform on which you can stand or sit, just outside an upstairs window  
**onto** used to show that sth faces in a particular direction

1 Underline one sound in each pair of words which is the same. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.

▶ setting / ceiling

1 property / entrance

2 balcony / garage

3 cottage / jam

4 cottage / impressive

5 ceiling / lead

6 face / historic

2 Complete the dialogues.

▶ Has the flat got any outdoor space?

1 Where does that path go?

2 Does your aunt live in a big house?

3 Do you leave your car in the street at night?

4 Shall I meet you at the museum?

5 How long have you lived here?

6 You've got a huge balcony!

7 It's so dark in this part of the house.

8 Is the town old?

~ Yes, there's a balcony with some chairs on it.

~ It \_\_\_\_\_ to the river at the bottom of the garden.

~ No, it's a pretty little \_\_\_\_\_ in a village.

~ No, we put it in the \_\_\_\_\_.

~ Yes, let's meet in the \_\_\_\_\_.

~ Two years, but we're \_\_\_\_\_ house in the summer.

~ Yes, and it looks out \_\_\_\_\_ the countryside.

~ That's because it \_\_\_\_\_ north and gets no sun.

~ Yes, it has a number of \_\_\_\_\_ buildings that tourists visit.

3 Complete the questions.

▶ When did you last move house \_\_\_\_\_?

1 What kind of \_\_\_\_\_ do you live in?

2 Is it a \_\_\_\_\_ building?

3 Does it have high \_\_\_\_\_ in the main rooms?

4 Does it \_\_\_\_\_ a park, another building or something else?

5 What's the most \_\_\_\_\_ feature of your house?

6 Is it in an attractive \_\_\_\_\_, e.g. near the countryside?

ABOUT YOU

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 3, or tell another student.



TEST YOURSELF

## B Buildings in a town

### A new town for Condolanda

Planning has begun on a new, car-free town which the authorities plan to **locate** on **waste ground**, close to the Condolanda **power plant**. It will consist of houses, parks and public transport facilities, as well as public buildings such as a police station, a secondary school, **town hall**, etc. There will be **commercial** buildings including a **shopping mall**, **office blocks**, **retail stores** and a medical centre. There will also be a large area of modern **apartment blocks**, and **residents** will welcome the **addition** of a nearby **leisure centre**. The **heating** for all the buildings will come at low cost from the power plant.



#### GLOSSARY

<b>locate</b>	put or build sth in a particular place	<b>retail store</b>	a shop selling goods to customers ( <b>retail</b> = selling goods)
<b>waste</b>	not used or not suitable for use: <b>waste ground</b>	<b>resident</b>	a person who lives in a particular place
<b>power plant</b>	a building where electricity is produced	<b>addition</b>	sth or sb that is added to sth
<b>town hall</b>	a large building for local government offices of a town or city	<b>leisure centre</b>	a public building where people can go to do sports and other activities in their free time
<b>commercial</b>	connected with buying and selling things	<b>heating</b>	a system for making rooms and buildings warm
<b>shopping mall</b>	a large building containing shops, restaurants, etc. ALSO <b>mall</b> , <b>shopping centre</b>		

#### SPOTLIGHT *block*

A **block** is a big building with a lot of offices or flats inside.

- **an office block**
- **an apartment block**
- **a block of flats**

A **block** is also an area of buildings with streets all around it.

- We walked **round the block** to the nearest café.

#### 5 Match words from A with words from B.

A: town ✓ block waste leisure shopping office power retail

B: plant block store mall of flats ground hall ✓ centre ground

▶ town hall .....

#### 6 Replace the underlined definitions with a word or phrase with the same meaning.

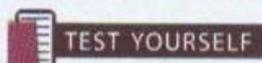
- ▶ We drove round the group of buildings with streets around them. block .....
- 1 The supermarket group want to place ten new stores in city centres. ....
  - 2 The property is not suitable for restaurant or retail use. ....
  - 3 We met at the large indoor place with shops and restaurants. ....
  - 4 The children's play area is a very welcome extra thing for the residents. ....
  - 5 The people who live in the area should be told about the plans. ....
  - 6 We live in an apartment building near the centre of town. ....
  - 7 I bought the furniture in a shop near my family. ....
  - 8 You get the application forms from the local government offices. ....
  - 9 What kind of system for making the room warm do you have? .....

#### 7 Complete the phrases and sentences.

#### ABOUT YOU

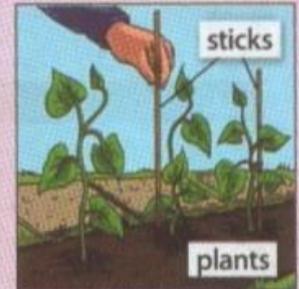
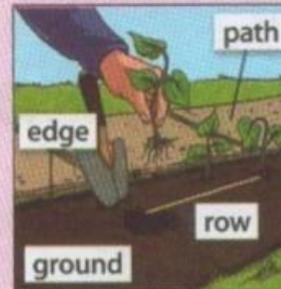
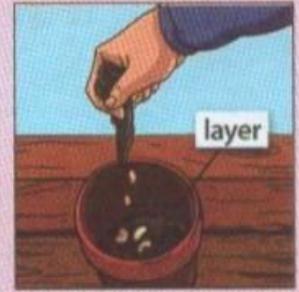
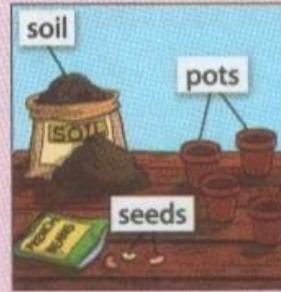
- 1 Where you live, is there:  
a power plant .....? a leisure .....? a lot of waste .....?  
a shopping .....? a town .....? a lot of retail .....?
- 2 Do you live, or have you ever lived, in an ..... block?
- 3 If so, how many other ..... are/were there in the block?

#### 8 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 7, or tell another student.



### How to grow beans

- 1 Put some **soil** in small plant **pots**. Put a few **seeds** in each pot.
- 2 Cover them with a **layer** of soil. Water them, and wait until some **leaves** start to grow.
- 3 When they are large enough, **plant** them in **rows** in the **ground**. If possible, plant them on the **edge** of a **path** where they are easier to look after.
- 4 **Support** the growing plants with **sticks**.
- 5 **Pick** the beans when they're ready to eat.



#### GLOSSARY

<b>soil</b>	the top layer of earth in which plants grow
<b>layer</b>	sth flat that lies on another thing, or that is between other things
<b>plant</b>	put plants or seeds in the ground or a pot. A <b>plant</b> is anything that grows from the ground.
<b>ground</b>	the surface of the earth
<b>support</b>	hold sth/sb in position; stop sth/sb from falling

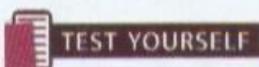
### 1 One word is wrong in each line. Cross it out and write the correct one at the end.

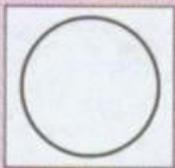
- ▶ There's a dead ~~leaf~~ on the floor from the tomato plant. leaf
- 1 Put the plant in the ~~boil~~ and water it every day. ....
- 2 She's planted a ~~bow~~ of potatoes in the garden. ....
- 3 You can support the plants with little ~~stocks~~. ....
- 4 Could you pack some apples from the ~~tree~~? ....
- 5 We walked along the ~~bath~~ next to the river. ....
- 6 Did you ~~plane~~ the seeds indoors or outdoors? ....
- 7 She put a ~~lager~~ of soil over the seeds. ....
- 8 I need a couple of ~~pets~~ to plant the seeds in. ....

### 2 Correct the sentences.

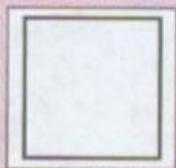
- ▶ You put plant pots in the soil. No, you put the soil in plant pots.
- 1 Seeds are bigger than plants. ....
- 2 Plants can support your sticks. ....
- 3 Leaves grow below the ground. ....
- 4 You plant seeds in layers of leaves. ....
- 5 You pick seeds when they've grown. ....
- 6 The edge of a table is in the middle of the table. ....
- 7 A path in a garden is where you sit. ....

### 3 Read the text again and then cover it. Look at the pictures. Can you remember what to do? Write it down, or tell another student. Then look at the text again to check your answers.

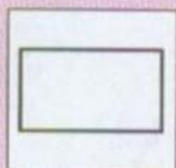




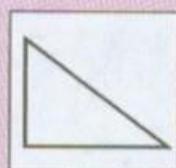
circle *n*, circular *adj*  
round *adj*



square *n*  
square *adj*



rectangle *n*  
rectangular *adj*



triangle *n*  
triangular *adj*



point *n*  
pointed *adj*



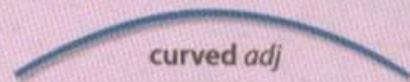
diamond-shaped *adj*



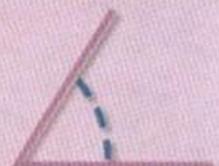
shell-shaped *adj*



straight *adj*



curved *adj*  
curve *n*



angle *n*

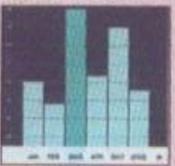


chart *n*

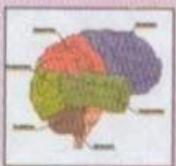


diagram *n*

### SPOTLIGHT *shape and shaped*

You can describe the shape of things using **shape** or **-shaped**.

- What **shape** is your living room? ~ It's rectangular.
- a card **in the shape of** a leaf
- a pool **in the shape of** a heart
- a **diamond-shaped** button

### 1 Complete the words.

- ▶ strai g h t
- 1 p \_\_\_\_\_ t
- 2 sq \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 cu \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 di \_\_\_\_\_ - s \_\_\_\_\_ d
- 5 ro \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 re \_\_\_\_\_ e
- 7 p \_\_\_\_\_ d
- 8 ch \_\_\_\_\_
- 9 tr \_\_\_\_\_
- 10 di \_\_\_\_\_ m
- 11 s \_\_\_\_\_ - sh \_\_\_\_\_

### 2 Complete the sentences.

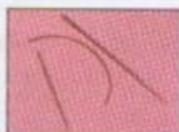
- ▶ A triangle has three straight sides.
- 1 A tennis ball is \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 A swimming pool is usually \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 A clock is usually in the shape of a \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 A ball has a \_\_\_\_\_ surface.
- 5 A shape with all four sides the same length is \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 A knife has a sharp \_\_\_\_\_ at the end of it.
- 7 A \_\_\_\_\_ and a \_\_\_\_\_ are drawings that explain something.
- 8 A triangle has three internal \_\_\_\_\_.
- 9 A star and a diamond are two different \_\_\_\_\_.
- 10 A slice of pizza is usually \_\_\_\_\_.

### 3 What can you see in the pictures?

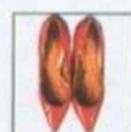
- ▶ a heart-shaped cake / a cake in the shape of a heart



1 \_\_\_\_\_



3 \_\_\_\_\_



5 \_\_\_\_\_



2 \_\_\_\_\_



4 \_\_\_\_\_



6 \_\_\_\_\_

### TEST YOURSELF



The painting *Bathers at Asnières* by Georges Seurat shows a typical scene of nineteenth-century leisure and the developing industry in this suburb of Paris. In the foreground, we see a group of workmen on their day off, having an enjoyable afternoon on the bank of the river. In the distance, you can just see the factory where they probably work. Everyone is looking out at the river and ignoring each other, even the little dog. We can sense the heat of the summer's day: the bright sunshine, bright colours and pale sky, and the general impression is one of almost silent and peaceful relaxation.

*Bathers* was painted in the 1880s, but up to then, most paintings were either historical and religious, or portraits of famous ladies and gentlemen. Ordinary people were not shown in art, so this painting was very original and quite shocking. It was painted outside, not in a studio, which was also unusual at that time.

#### GLOSSARY

<b>scene</b>	a picture of a place and the things that are happening there	<b>ignore</b>	pay no attention to sb/sth
<b>leisure</b>	the time when you do not have to work	<b>sense</b>	get a feeling about sth that you can't directly see or hear
<b>industry</b>	the production of goods in factories <b>Industrial</b> <i>adj</i>	<b>heat</b> [U, sing]	the feeling of sth hot <b>OPP</b> cold
<b>foreground</b>	the part of a picture that seems nearest to you <b>OPP</b> background: <i>in the foreground/background</i>	<b>bright</b>	having a lot of light <b>OPP</b> dark; <b>brightness</b> <i>n</i>
<b>off</b>	not at work or school: <i>have a day/week/month off</i>	<b>impression</b>	feelings or thoughts that you have about sth/sb
<b>bank</b>	the land along the side of a river	<b>silent</b>	with nobody speaking
<b>in the distance</b>	far away from you	<b>peaceful</b>	quiet and calm <b>peace</b> <i>n</i>
<b>just</b>	If you can just see sth, you can only see it with difficulty.	<b>relaxation</b>	time spent resting and being calm <b>relaxing</b> <i>adj</i>
		<b>ordinary</b>	not special or unusual <b>ALSO</b> normal
		<b>shocking</b>	making you feel upset, angry or surprised in a very bad way
		<b>studio</b>	a room in which an artist, photographer, etc. works

#### SPOTLIGHT *lady and gentleman*

**Lady** is a polite way of saying 'woman'; **gentleman** is a polite way of saying 'man'. It is more polite to say 'an old lady/gentleman' than to say 'an old woman/man'.

**Lady** and **gentleman** also describe a man or woman who is polite, well-educated and kind:

▪ *She's a real lady. He's a perfect gentleman.*

You may also see **ladies** and **gents** on the doors of public toilets.

**1 Look at the underlined sounds. Cross out the word in each group which is different.**

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| ▶ dark / <u>shocking</u> / <u>peace</u>             | 4 brightness / <u>impression</u> / peaceful             |
| 1 <u>just</u> / <u>ignore</u> / <u>gentleman</u>    | 5 <u>peaceful</u> / <u>sense</u> / <u>scene</u>         |
| 2 <u>scene</u> / <u>sense</u> / <u>leisure</u>      | 6 <u>shocking</u> / <u>ordinary</u> / <u>ignore</u>     |
| 3 <u>relaxation</u> / <u>lady</u> / <u>relaxing</u> | 7 <u>industry</u> / <u>industrial</u> / <u>distance</u> |

**2 Look at the picture on page 98. Write your answers.**

- ▶ Where are the industrial buildings? In the distance.
- 1 How many people are there in the foreground? .....
- 2 Where are the boats? .....
- 3 Where are the men sitting? .....
- 4 Are they ignoring each other? .....
- 5 Are the colours dark or bright? .....
- 6 Is the scene busy or peaceful? .....
- 7 Are the people ordinary or famous? .....
- 8 Can you see any ladies? .....

**3 Cover the glossary on page 98. Complete the definitions.**

- ▶ ordinary = not special or unusual
- 1 leisure = time when you don't have to .....
- 2 sense = have a ..... about sth that you can't see or hear
- 3 a morning off = a morning when you ..... have to go to work or school
- 4 scene = a ..... of a place and the things that are happening there
- 5 brightness = the fact of having a lot of .....
- 6 industry = the production of goods made in .....
- 7 studio = a room or rooms where an ..... works
- 8 silent = with ..... talking

**4 Complete the sentences with one word from each pair.**

peaceful / peace	impression / scene	bright ✓ / brightness	just / even	heat / brightness
industry / industrial	lady / gentleman	shocking / relaxing	background / foreground	

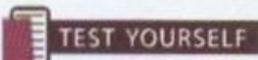
- ▶ The painter Whistler often uses dark colours, not bright ones.
- 1 L S Lowry painted many ..... scenes of factories and factory workers.
- 2 The people in the ..... of the painting must be about five kilometres away.
- 3 It was dark, but we could still feel the ..... – it was 30 degrees at midnight.
- 4 I need some ..... and quiet to finish this book – please don't interrupt me.
- 5 In the picture it's foggy, but you can ..... see the animals in the field.
- 6 The painting tries to create the ..... of light and heat.
- 7 A ..... asked me where the Picasso room was. I told him it was upstairs.
- 8 It's ..... that so many people don't have a home and sleep on the streets.

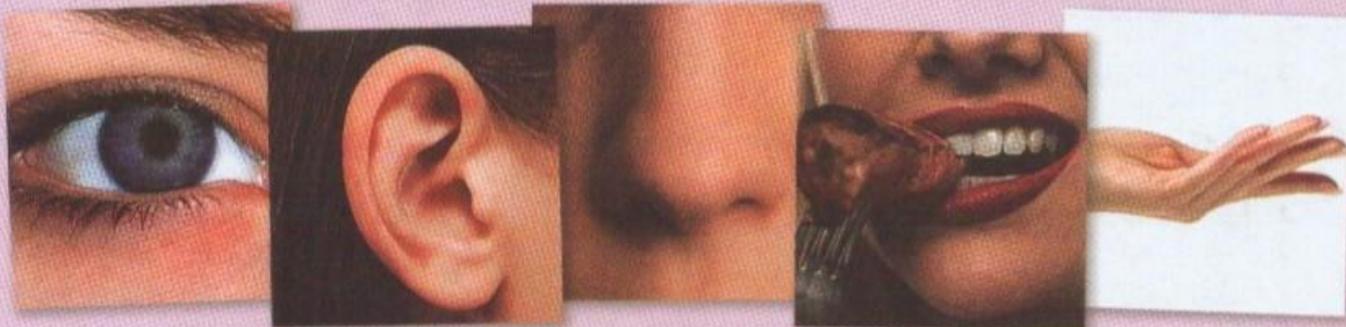
**5 Complete the text.**

This painting by an Italian artist shows a ▶ scene of happiness and (1) p..... There is a mother playing with her small daughter in the (2) f....., and in the (3) b....., an older woman is watching them. Behind her, and a long way in the (4) d....., you can (5) j..... see an old house, perhaps where they all live. It's obviously a warm day, and they are playing in the sunshine. On the right of the painting, there is a man who is (6) i..... the mother and daughter; he seems much more interested in the dog in front of him. They are an (7) o..... working family, and he's probably looking forward to some (8) r..... during his day (9) o.....

**6 ABOUT YOU Think about a painting you know and like. Write your answers, or ask another student.**

- 1 Who painted it, and do you know when? .....
- 2 What does it show? .....
- 3 What do you like about it? .....





SENSE	EXAMPLE	MEANING
SIGHT	<i>Look carefully and you can see the bridge over the river.</i>	<b>look</b> turn your eyes to sth and pay attention to it <b>see</b> know or notice sth using your eyes
	<i>I often watch the birds from the bridge.</i>	<b>watch</b> pay attention to sth for some time
HEARING	<i>I can hear something outside.</i>	When you <b>hear</b> sth, sounds come to your ears.
	<i>I listened to the news this morning.</i>	When you <b>listen</b> , you are <u>trying</u> to hear sth.
	<i>Jason sounded angry this morning.</i>	<b>sound</b> seem in a certain way when you hear sth
SMELL	<i>I can smell something strange.</i>	<b>smell</b> notice sth using your nose
TASTE	<i>This cake really tastes of coffee.</i>	<b>taste</b> have a particular flavour
	<i>Jo tasted the cheese.</i>	<b>taste</b> eat or drink a little of sth to test its flavour
TOUCH	<i>When I touched the back wall, it felt a bit wet.</i>	<b>touch</b> put your hand or fingers on sth <b>feel</b> used for saying how sth seems to you when you touch, see, smell or experience it
	<i>Feel this material.</i>	
	<i>Press the button and wait.</i>	<b>press</b> push sth to make a machine work / a bell ring



## COMMON CONSTRUCTIONS

VERB + adjective	VERB + like + noun
<i>I thought Sarah looked sad.</i>	<i>Simon looks like his brother.</i>
<i>The boys sounded pleased when they rang me.</i>	<i>This music sounds like Bach.</i>
<i>This soup smells horrible.</i>	<i>Nectarines taste like peaches.</i>

## VERB + as if / as though + clause

*There are lots of dark clouds. It looks as if it's going to rain.*

*I spoke to Alex yesterday. He sounded as though he's enjoying university.*

## SENSE VERBS AS NOUNS: look, sound and taste

*I liked the look of the cottage. = the appearance of it*

*I love the sound of birds singing.*

*I don't like the taste of garlic.*

SPOTLIGHT **can** + sense verbs

We don't use *see, hear, smell* or *taste* in the continuous tenses. We often use **can** with sense verbs.

- *I can see several boats in this photo. (NOT I see OR I'm seeing several boats.)*
- *I can't hear what they're saying. (NOT I don't hear...)*

**1 Circle the correct verb.**

- ▶ She told me to look at / see the board and pay attention.
- 1 What programmes do you *hear* / *listen to* on the radio?
  - 2 What can you *smell* / *smell like*?
  - 3 What can you *hear* / *listen to* at the moment?
  - 4 What does your mobile phone ringtone *sound* / *sound like*?
  - 5 If you put your hand out, can you *feel* / *touch* another person?
  - 6 Just *press* / *feel* the bell, and somebody should come and help us.
  - 7 What can you *see* / *look at* from where you are sitting?
  - 8 Put your hand on your shoes. How do they *touch* / *feel*?
  - 9 What programmes do you usually *watch* / *look at* on TV?
  - 10 When you buy a new jumper, do you always *feel* / *press* it first?

**2 Complete the sentences with a suitable verb.**

- ▶ This soup tastes horrible. There's too much salt in it.
- 1 You have to \_\_\_\_\_ the switch, and the machine will start working.
  - 2 I \_\_\_\_\_ hear a bird singing. It \_\_\_\_\_ like a blackbird.
  - 3 Why is that man \_\_\_\_\_ at me? Have I done something wrong?
  - 4 Please don't \_\_\_\_\_ the door: the paint is still wet.
  - 5 Did you see Nadia last night? I thought she \_\_\_\_\_ ill.
  - 6 I didn't know what the fruit was, so I \_\_\_\_\_ a bit. It was delicious.
  - 7 I was trying to \_\_\_\_\_ to the music, but lots of people were talking.
  - 8 Can you \_\_\_\_\_ something burning? It must be the toast.
  - 9 Marco \_\_\_\_\_ as if he's walked 20 kilometres.
  - 10 My head \_\_\_\_\_ very hot. I think I've got a temperature.

**3 Complete the sentences with a suitable sense verb and suitable adjective.**

- ▶ Molly was happy to take the exam. She sounded confident.
- 1 I washed the floor this morning but it already \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 2 He was awake most of the night, and when he spoke he \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 3 The jam \_\_\_\_\_ because I put a lot of sugar in it.
  - 4 When I put my T-shirt on, it \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 5 When I took the cups out of the dishwasher, they didn't \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 6 They hadn't turned on the heating, so the room \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 7 I think bread \_\_\_\_\_ when it has just come out of the oven.
  - 8 Liam explained exactly how to do it, and it \_\_\_\_\_.

**4 Use like or as if / though, then complete each sentence in a logical way.**

- ▶ Why is the man holding out his hand? ~ Not sure, but it looks as if he wants money.
- 1 Did you hear that crash? ~ Yes, it sounds \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 2 What's that woman doing on the floor? ~ It looks \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 3 Can you hear those men shouting at each other? ~ Yes. It sounds \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 4 The team are playing very badly. ~ I know. It looks \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 5 Simon has a plan for the party. ~ Yes, and it sounds \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 6 What's that man doing on the bridge? ~ I don't know, but it looks \_\_\_\_\_.

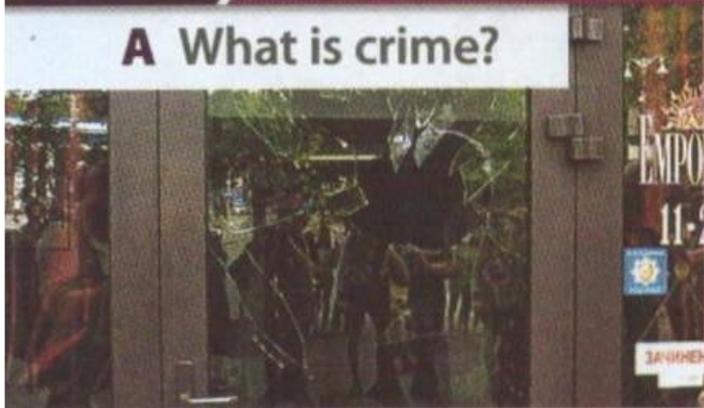
**5 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions, or ask another student.**

- 1 Do you look like your parents? \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Do you have brothers or sisters that look like you? \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Do you often look as if you're bored? \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Do you usually sound as though you're very confident about things? \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Do you often feel nervous? \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 Do you like the taste of garlic? \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 Do you like the smell of fried fish? \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 Do you feel positive about your future? \_\_\_\_\_



**TEST YOURSELF**

A What is crime?



A crime is an activity which is against the law. For example, if you steal someone's property, you are committing a crime and breaking the law. Some criminal acts are minor, e.g. you get a fine for illegal parking. For serious crimes, especially violent crimes, e.g. the act of killing someone, a person can go to prison for a long time.

GLOSSARY

against the law	against the rules of a country SYN illegal OPP legal
steal pt stole pp stolen	take sth belonging to sb else without permission
property [U]	sth that you have or own, e.g. a computer, jewellery
commit a crime	do sth wrong or illegal
break the law	do sth illegal/against the law
criminal act	[only before a noun] connected with crime a thing that you do a criminal act
minor	A minor crime is not bad or important. OPP serious
fine	money that you must pay because you have done sth wrong
killing	an act of killing sb in a way that was planned
go to prison	go to a place where criminals have to stay after they have committed a crime ALSO send sb to prison A person in prison is a prisoner. SYN jail = prison

1 Find and circle the verbs below.

fine break property violent law steal crimes send somebody to prison criminal commit illegal serious

2 Cover the glossary. Is the meaning the same or different? Write S or D.

- ▶ steal / take something belonging to someone without permission S
- 1 illegal / against the law .....
- 2 property / something you own .....
- 3 the killing of someone / an attack on someone .....
- 4 a criminal act / a legal act .....
- 5 commit a crime / break the law .....
- 6 a minor crime / a serious crime .....
- 7 prison / jail .....

3 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ She did something terrible, and I heard that she was sent to prison.
- 1 Have you ever \_\_\_\_\_ a crime?
- 2 There is a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ behaviour at night: attacks on people and cars, for example.
- 3 In nearly every country, it is not \_\_\_\_\_ to drive on a public road without a licence.
- 4 Somebody \_\_\_\_\_ my bike and sold it in the market.
- 5 I heard that \_\_\_\_\_ has been stolen from several other houses in our street.
- 6 Some \_\_\_\_\_ escaped from the jail during the fire.
- 7 The attack on the old man was a very serious \_\_\_\_\_ of violence.
- 8 He committed a \_\_\_\_\_ crime, and he'll probably go to \_\_\_\_\_ for a long time.
- 9 He parked in the wrong place. It's only a \_\_\_\_\_ crime, but it's still \_\_\_\_\_ the law.
- 10 I've never \_\_\_\_\_ the law.
- 11 Some young men have started carrying knives, and there have been some terrible \_\_\_\_\_ in recent years.
- 12 I drove through a NO ENTRY sign and had to pay a \_\_\_\_\_ of £80.

TEST YOURSELF

## B Types of crime

Crime	Meaning	Verb	Criminal (= a person who commits a crime)
theft	taking sth which belongs to sb else without permission	<i>He steals cars then sells them.</i>	thief (pl thieves)
robbery	stealing from a person or place, often using violence	<i>Two men were planning to rob the bank.</i>	robber
burglary	entering a building illegally and stealing things from it	<i>They broke into the house and stole some jewellery.</i>	burglar
assault attack	hurting sb physically	<i>He assaulted/attacked a man. She stabbed the man with a knife.</i>	attacker
murder	killing sb when it is planned	<i>He murdered his neighbour. He shot her dead with his father's gun.</i>	murderer

### SPOTLIGHT *steal and rob*

You **steal** money or things, but you **rob** a person or place.

- Someone has **stolen** my bike.
- I was **robbed** at the football match.
- Thieves **stole** €2,000 from the shop.
- They **robbed** the museum last night.

#### 4 Cross out any wrong answers. Be careful: more than one answer may be wrong.

- *Rob, thief, attack* and *steal* are all verbs.
- Theft, murder, robbery* and *burglary* are all ways of getting property.
  - Theft, parking, burglary* and *assault* are all crimes.
  - Shoot, assault, stab* and *break in* are all ways of attacking people physically.
  - Assault, burglary, theft* and *murder* are acts of violence.
  - Murderer, thief, attacker* and *robbery* are all criminals.

#### 5 True or false? Write T or F. Correct the false sentences.

- You can steal property. T
- If you murder somebody, they're dead. \_\_\_\_\_
  - You stab somebody with a gun. \_\_\_\_\_
  - A burglar breaks into a home. \_\_\_\_\_
  - A criminal is a person. \_\_\_\_\_
  - You steal a bank. \_\_\_\_\_
  - Theft is stealing. \_\_\_\_\_
  - You shoot somebody with a knife. \_\_\_\_\_

#### 6 Complete the sentences.

- The thief stole \_\_\_\_\_ \$1,000.
- Two robbers \_\_\_\_\_ into the museum and \_\_\_\_\_ three paintings. A guard tried to stop them, but one robber had a knife and \_\_\_\_\_ him in the chest.
  - The man is a \_\_\_\_\_, and has spent much of his life in prison. It's mostly for \_\_\_\_\_: he steals computers and things like that.
  - Someone \_\_\_\_\_ me on the way home last night. He had a gun and said he would \_\_\_\_\_ me if I didn't give him money and my mobile phone. It was horrible.
  - He will be in prison for the rest of his life for \_\_\_\_\_ his wife. He bought a gun and \_\_\_\_\_ her three times while she was asleep.
  - A \_\_\_\_\_ broke into our house and took jewellery and cameras.
  - The three men \_\_\_\_\_ that bank because it was in a very quiet area.
  - \_\_\_\_\_ from cars has gone down in recent years because of better security. However, \_\_\_\_\_ have increased because more young people have knives.
  - The two men took money from the post office. The \_\_\_\_\_ happened at 4 p.m.



### TEST YOURSELF

## A A police investigation

A crime is **reported** to the police, usually by the **victim**.

The police **investigate** it. The victim and **witnesses** tell the police what they know.

The police look for **evidence** and take photos where the crime **took place**.

If possible, they **catch** the person **responsible** for the crime and **arrest** him/her.

If they think they have **proof** this person committed the crime, they will **charge** them.

This person will then go to **court**.

## GLOSSARY

<b>report</b>	give information about sth that has happened
<b>victim</b>	a person who has been robbed, injured, killed, etc.
<b>investigate</b>	try to find out about sth <b>investigation</b> <i>n</i>
<b>witness</b>	a person who sees sth happen, e.g. a crime or an accident
<b>take place</b>	happen
<b>catch</b> <i>pt/pp caught</i>	find and hold sb
<b>responsible</b> (for sth)	being the person who made sth happen
<b>arrest</b>	When the police <b>arrest</b> sb, they take them to a police station to question them about a crime.
<b>charge</b>	If the police <b>charge</b> sb, they are saying officially that they believe this person committed a crime: <i>He was <b>charged with</b> murder.</i>
<b>court</b>	the place where <b>trials</b> (see part B) happen and crimes are judged

SPOTLIGHT *evidence and proof*

**Evidence** [U] can be facts, signs or objects that make you think something is true. **Proof** [U] is something that shows that an idea about a crime, an event, etc. is true. **prove** *v.*

- The police collected **evidence** so they could **prove** the man was guilty.

## 1 Answer the questions. Some questions have more than one answer.

- ▶ Who is caught? The person that the police believe may be responsible for the crime.
- 1 Who takes photos? \_\_\_\_\_ 5 Who sees the crime take place? \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Who is charged? \_\_\_\_\_ 6 Who usually reports the crime? \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Who investigates the crime? \_\_\_\_\_ 7 Who is arrested? \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Who is affected by the crime? \_\_\_\_\_ 8 Who goes to court? \_\_\_\_\_

## 2 Circle the correct answer.

When a robbery has **taken place** / **reported**, someone will (1) **investigate** / **report** it to the police. (2) **Victims** / **Witnesses** will then tell the police what happened to them, so that the police can begin to (3) **investigate** / **charge** the crime. They may take photos where the robbery (4) **took place** / **caught**. If possible, they will (5) **report** / **arrest** the person who they think is responsible. If they get enough (6) **evidence** / **victims**, they will (7) **catch** / **charge** the person, and he/she will have to go to (8) **court** / **the police station**.

## 3 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ A group of young people have been arrested for several crimes in the area.
- 1 I saw the robbery and \_\_\_\_\_ it to the police.
- 2 The police think he committed the crime, but unfortunately they can't \_\_\_\_\_ it.
- 3 Two men were \_\_\_\_\_ with robbery.
- 4 The police \_\_\_\_\_ the man leaving the shop. He had over £1,000 on him, so they \_\_\_\_\_ him immediately and took him to the police station for questioning.
- 5 The police carried out a very detailed \_\_\_\_\_ to find the people responsible.
- 6 They are looking for \_\_\_\_\_ who saw what happened.
- 7 One problem is that \_\_\_\_\_ often suffer for a long time after a crime has \_\_\_\_\_ place.
- 8 They charged the woman with the crime and she will appear in \_\_\_\_\_ on Monday.



## TEST YOURSELF

## B In court

In Britain, serious crimes such as robbery and murder, are **tried in court** by a **judge** and **jury**. The **purpose** of the **trial** is to **examine** the evidence and **determine** whether somebody is **innocent** or **guilty** of the crime that they have been charged with. That is the jury's decision. If the person is guilty, the judge will then decide the correct **punishment** for the crime.



### GLOSSARY

<b>try</b>	ask sb questions in court to decide if they have done sth illegal
<b>purpose (of sth)</b>	the aim or intention of sth
<b>trial</b>	the process in a court of law where a judge, and often a jury, listens to the evidence and decides if sb is guilty of a crime or not
<b>examine</b>	look carefully at sth/sb <b>examination</b> n
<b>determine</b>	discover the facts about sth
<b>innocent</b>	If you are <b>innocent</b> , you haven't done anything wrong. <b>OPP</b> guilty
<b>punishment</b>	what sb must suffer for doing sth wrong, e.g. go to prison <b>punish</b> v

### SPOTLIGHT *whether (... or not)*

- We use **whether** to talk about choosing between two things:  
I don't know **whether** to go **or not**.  
I don't know **whether** to buy that suit **or not**.
- Whether** can also mean if:  
She asked me **whether** I was Spanish.

#### 4 True or false about British courts? Write T or F. Correct the false sentences.

- ▶ A trial decides that somebody is guilty. F - A trial decides whether somebody is innocent or guilty.
- Trials take place in a court. \_\_\_\_\_
  - A trial looks at all the evidence. \_\_\_\_\_
  - A judge determines whether the person is guilty or not. \_\_\_\_\_
  - The jury must listen to all the evidence. \_\_\_\_\_
  - If the person is innocent, they will go to prison. \_\_\_\_\_
  - The jury decides the punishment. \_\_\_\_\_

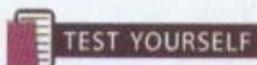
#### 5 Put the sentences in the correct order.

- The jury decided that the person was guilty.
- The police charged this person.
- Somebody committed a crime.
- The person went to court.
- The police arrested somebody.
- The jury listened to the evidence.
- The police investigated the crime.
- The victim reported the crime.
- The judge decided on the punishment.

1

#### 6 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ The person on trial may be guilty or innocent.
- I sat in \_\_\_\_\_ for three days while a man was being \_\_\_\_\_ for the crime.
  - If you are guilty of a crime, the \_\_\_\_\_ could be years in prison.
  - The police \_\_\_\_\_ all the evidence they had.
  - A \_\_\_\_\_ has to tell the court what they saw or know about the crime.
  - We had to decide \_\_\_\_\_ to believe the witness or not.
  - The \_\_\_\_\_ have to \_\_\_\_\_ whether the person is innocent or \_\_\_\_\_.
  - The \_\_\_\_\_ of the investigation was to find who was responsible for the murder.
  - The \_\_\_\_\_ lasted for six days, and at the end, the \_\_\_\_\_ sent the woman to prison for two years.



TEST YOURSELF

## A Diseases of the young

In the developed world, fewer children now **suffer** from the **diseases** which are still a problem in developing countries, but the number of young people **around the world** with **asthma** has increased. There are **various** reasons for this, but doctors believe that **breathing difficulties** are often caused by **allergies** to cigarette smoking, certain types of food or pollution. There has also been an increase in **mental health issues** among **the young**, and these are often very hard to **treat**.

SPOTLIGHT *disease and illness*

An **illness** [C] is a medical problem. **Illness** [U] is a period when you are not well. (A) **disease** [C,U] is a serious physical medical problem, and quite often spreads from person to person, e.g. typhoid. It can affect a particular part of the body.

- **heart disease**
- **skin disease**

## GLOSSARY

<b>the young</b> [pl]	young people considered as a group
<b>suffer (from sth)</b>	have the experience of sth bad
<b>around the world</b>	everywhere; all parts of the world
<b>asthma</b>	a medical condition which makes it difficult to breathe
<b>various</b>	several different: <i>He has various illnesses. variety n</i>
<b>breathing</b>	taking in and letting out air through your nose and mouth
<b>difficulty</b>	a problem; sth that is not easy to do
<b>allergy</b>	a medical condition that makes you ill when you touch, eat or breathe sth that doesn't normally make other people ill: <i>a nut allergy allergic (to sth) adj</i>
<b>mental</b>	of or in your mind: <i>mental illness</i>
<b>issue</b>	an important problem that people talk about
<b>treat</b>	try to make a sick person well again
	<i>treatment n</i>

## 1 Match a word from Box A with a word from Box B to form six more phrases.

skin ✓      breathing      mental  
suffer      allergic  
various      treat

difficulty      from asthma      illnesses  
to certain types of food      a sick patient  
illness      disease ✓

▶ skin disease

## 2 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ If you have breathing difficulties, you may be suffering from asthma.
- 1 Some people have an \_\_\_\_\_ to milk or nuts. It can affect their breathing.
  - 2 Taking in and letting out air through the nose and mouth is called \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 3 She's got \_\_\_\_\_ allergies: shellfish and nuts, and also to cat fur.
  - 4 An illness that spreads from person to person is often called a \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 5 Asthma is a common disease amongst the \_\_\_\_\_ in Europe and the USA.
  - 6 Care for older people is a major \_\_\_\_\_ for many countries in the western world.
  - 7 Doctors \_\_\_\_\_ many diseases with a \_\_\_\_\_ of drugs.
  - 8 My sister is \_\_\_\_\_ to certain drugs, such as aspirin and some antibiotics.

## 3 Complete the text.

My younger brother has never had very good health. He has had ▶ asthma \_\_\_\_\_ all his life, which gives him serious (1) \_\_\_\_\_ problems, and sometimes he also has (2) \_\_\_\_\_ sleeping. As a child, doctors (3) \_\_\_\_\_ him for a skin (4) \_\_\_\_\_, which made his skin red and often painful. Fortunately, he grew out of that, but recently he has (5) \_\_\_\_\_ from periods of (6) \_\_\_\_\_ illness, which may be related to his (7) \_\_\_\_\_ physical problems. The main (8) \_\_\_\_\_ for his mental (9) \_\_\_\_\_ has been various drugs to help him manage his emotions better.



## TEST YOURSELF

## B An ageing population

In the western world, people are living longer. This is good news, but an **ageing** population also creates social and **economic** problems, and we have to **limit** how much we spend. Who **cares for the elderly**, and **equally** important, who pays for that **care**? Should the government ask everyone to **save** more money for their **old age**, so they can pay for their own care? Should we also ask **working** people to pay for the elderly through higher **taxes**? One answer, of course, is to help older people to keep up their **strength**, and to stay **fit** for **as long as possible**.

### SPOTLIGHT *as ... as possible*

You use this structure to emphasize an adjective or adverb.

- I want to work **as long as possible** / **I possibly can**. (= the longest time possible)
- I'll do it **as soon as possible**. (= at the earliest possible moment)
- He wants it **as quickly as possible**. (= in the quickest possible time)
- I go there **as much as possible**. (= the most I can)

### GLOSSARY

<b>ageing</b>	becoming older <b>age</b> v	<b>the elderly</b>	a polite way of saying old people
<b>economic</b>	connected with the way people and countries spend money and make, buy and sell things <b>(the) economy</b> n	<b>equally</b>	in the same way
<b>limit sth (to sb)</b>	keep sth below a certain amount, size, degree, etc. <b>limit (on sth)</b> n	<b>save (money)</b>	keep or not spend money so you can spend it later
<b>care for sb</b>	do the things for sb that they need. A person who cares for a sick or old person, usually at home, is a <b>carer</b> . <b>care</b> n	<b>old age</b>	the part of your life when you are old
		<b>working</b>	employed; having a job: <b>working mothers</b>
		<b>tax</b>	money that you have to pay to the government
		<b>strength</b>	how strong you are
		<b>fit</b>	healthy and strong <b>fitness</b> n

#### 4 Match words from Box A with words from Box B.

A working ✓ save as soon  
care for limit an ageing old

B mothers ✓ the elderly as possible  
what we spend age money population

▶ working mothers .....  
.....

#### 5 Complete the sentences using the correct form of the word on the right.

- ▶ His mother has aged ..... since her illness. AGE  
1 My mother was a ..... for a number of years. CARE  
2 Our country has some serious ..... problems. ECONOMY  
3 You need your ..... when you get ill. STRONG  
4 ..... is very important as you get older. FIT  
5 He needs a job without stress, but money is ..... important. EQUAL  
6 Good public transport affects everyone, not just ..... people. WORK  
7 I'll come as soon as I ..... can. POSSIBLE

#### 6 Complete the sentences.

#### ABOUT YOU

- ▶ I don't like work. I'd like to stop working as soon ..... as possible. ....  
1 Countries with ..... populations may need to employ more foreign workers. ....  
2 I don't want to stop work: I want to work as long as .....  
3 One problem is that young people are not interested in the problems of the .....  
4 In my country children often ..... for their elderly parents if they get sick. ....  
5 I can't think of any good things about old .....  
6 I do a lot of exercise so that I can stay ..... for as ..... as possible. ....  
7 I think working people should pay more ..... to help the elderly. There is a .....  
..... to how much old people can contribute.

#### 7 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Do you think the sentences in Exercise 6 are true for you? And do you agree with them?

- ▶ That's not true for me. I enjoy work and would like to work until I'm no longer able to. .....



#### TEST YOURSELF

# A The British political system

In the British political system, elections must be held every five years, though it can be sooner than that in some situations. The UK is divided into 650 political areas, and in each area people vote for one person representing the political party they want to see in power. The politician with the most votes becomes the Member of Parliament (known as an MP) for that area. Parliament, therefore, has 650 MPs, and the party with the majority of MPs usually forms the government. The leader of that party also becomes prime minister.

### SPOTLIGHT politics

Politics is the work and ideas that are connected with government. A politician is somebody who works in politics, and a political party is a group of people with the same ideas who want to win an election, e.g. in the UK, the Labour Party and the Conservative Party.

GLOSSARY	
<b>system</b>	a set of ideas or rules for organizing sth
<b>election</b> [C, U]	the time of choosing a Member of Parliament, President, etc. by voting <b>elect</b> v
<b>hold an election</b>	organize an election
<b>vote</b> (for sb/sth)	choose sb/sth in an election <b>vote</b> n
<b>represent</b>	speak or do sth in place of another person or a group
<b>in power</b>	in political control of a country
<b>Member of Parliament</b> (pl Members of Parliament)	a person who has been elected to represent people from a particular area in Parliament <b>ALSO MP</b>
<b>parliament</b>	the group of people elected to make the laws in a country
<b>majority</b>	the largest number or part of sth <b>OPP minority</b>
<b>government</b>	the group of people in control of a country
<b>prime minister</b> (OR PM)	the leader of the government in some countries

## 1 True or false about the British system? Write T or F. Correct the sentences that are false.

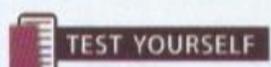
- ▶ In the UK, elections must be held every four years. F - In the UK, elections must be held every five years.
- 1 Politics is the work and ideas that are connected with governing a country, a town, etc. ....
- 2 People can only vote for one person in UK elections. ....
- 3 Two or three people may be elected in each area. ....
- 4 If you are a Member of Parliament, you are in the government. ....
- 5 The leader of the largest political party in parliament becomes prime minister. ....
- 6 The party with the minority of elected MPs usually forms the government. ....

## 2 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ PM is an abbreviation of prime minister.
- 1 How often does your country ..... elections for parliament?
- 2 My uncle was ..... as an MP a few years ago.
- 3 In the UK, the Labour Party was in ..... from 1997 to 2010.
- 4 Who did you ..... for in the last election?
- 5 ..... from all the political parties agreed with the idea.
- 6 She had over 50% of the ....., so it was a ..... that voted for her.
- 7 The Labour party is one of the main ..... in the UK.
- 8 Politicians ..... the people who elect them.
- 9 Is the British political ..... similar to the one in your country?

## 3 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers, or ask another student.

- 1 How often does your country usually hold elections? .....
- 2 Which political party is in power at the moment? .....
- 3 How long have they been in power? .....
- 4 What is the title of the leader of the party? .....
- 5 How many people are there in parliament? .....



## B Political objectives

The government is now preparing for the next election, and today the prime minister will **focus on** education and the **need for** more young people to go to university.

The Transport Minister is also **due to announce** today a new transport **policy**, including special **measures** which aim to **persuade** drivers to leave their cars at home.

The government has already said that one of its **objectives** will be to **put forward** ideas for new laws to **protect** immigrant workers.



### GLOSSARY

<b>focus (on sth)</b>	give all your attention to sth <b>focus n</b>
<b>need (for sth)</b>	a situation in which you must have or do sth
<b>due to do sth</b>	arranged or expected
<b>announce</b>	say sth officially and in public <b>announcement n</b>
<b>policy</b>	a plan to do sth, agreed by a government, company, etc.
<b>measure</b> (usually pl)	an official action that is done for a special reason
<b>persuade sb</b> (to do sth)	make sb think sth or do sth by giving them good reasons
<b>objective</b>	sth that you want and plan to do <b>SYN aim; aim v</b>
<b>put sth forward</b>	suggest sth for discussion
<b>law</b>	a rule of a country that says what people may or may not do
<b>protect</b>	keep sb/sth safe <b>protection n</b>
<b>immigrant</b>	a person who comes from one country to another country to live there <b>immigration n</b>

### 4 Cover the glossary. Circle the correct answer.

- ▶ A law is something that people *often do in a country* / *must do in a country*.
- 1 If you announce something, you say it in *public* / *private*.
- 2 If you persuade somebody to do something, they *do* / *don't do* it.
- 3 If you protect somebody, you *keep them safe* / *support and help them*.
- 4 If you focus on something, you *give it your attention* / *decide to do something*.
- 5 Immigration is the process of coming to *visit* / *live in* another country.
- 6 If you put something forward, you *suggest* / *vote for* it.
- 7 An objective is something you *want* / *don't like*.
- 8 A policy is *a plan agreed by a group* / *a political idea you like*.

### 5 Complete these sentences about language.

- ▶ The noun from the verb *protect* is protection.
- 1 The noun from the verb *announce* is \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 The noun from the verb *focus* is \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 The preposition that follows *focus* is \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 Another word for an *aim* is an \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 *Persuade* is followed by an object and an \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 The noun *need* can be followed by the preposition \_\_\_\_\_.

### 6 Complete the words in each sentence.

- ▶ The government has admitted the need \_\_\_\_\_ for a change in its education policy.
- 1 The party has agreed a new p \_\_\_\_\_ on house building, and will a \_\_\_\_\_ it tomorrow in parliament.
- 2 The number of i \_\_\_\_\_ coming to this country from Eastern Europe has fallen.
- 3 The prime minister still has to p \_\_\_\_\_ many of her MPs to agree with her farming policy.
- 4 This week, MPs will consider m \_\_\_\_\_ to reduce air pollution in cities as soon as possible.
- 5 The main a \_\_\_\_\_ of the education policy is to give parents more choice.
- 6 The prime minister is d \_\_\_\_\_ to announce a general election for 18 May.
- 7 In the speech, the prime minister will f \_\_\_\_\_ on health issues and the n \_\_\_\_\_ for more hospital beds.
- 8 The new law gives workers more p \_\_\_\_\_ from bad employers.



### TEST YOURSELF

# A War

... The **bomb exploded** in the city centre killing ten people and **injuring** many more.

... **Soldiers fought** a terrible **gun battle**, **firing** for two hours at **enemy fighters** ...

... The enemy **leader** managed to **escape**, but most of his soldiers were either killed or handed in their **weapons**, and the **army** is now **in control** of the situation.



GLOSSARY	
<b>bomb</b>	a thing that explodes and hurts people or damages things <b>bomb</b> v
<b>explode</b>	burst with force and a loud noise <b>explosion</b> n SYN <b>go off</b>
<b>injure</b>	hurt sb, often in a fight or accident
<b>fight</b> pt/pp <b>fought</b>	use physical strength, guns, weapons, etc. against sb/sth. Sb who fights is a <b>fighter</b> . <b>fight</b> n
<b>battle</b>	a fight between armies in a war <b>gun battle</b>
<b>fire</b> (at/on sb/sth)	shoot bullets from a gun
<b>enemy</b>	the people your army or country is fighting against
<b>leader</b>	a person who controls a group or team
<b>escape</b>	get free from sb/sth SYN <b>get away</b>
<b>weapon</b>	sth, such as a gun or knife, that is used to kill or injure people
<b>army</b>	a large group of soldiers who fight on land in a war
<b>be in control</b> (of sth)	have the power or ability to deal with sth

### 1 Match 1-6 with a-g.

- |                      |          |                             |
|----------------------|----------|-----------------------------|
| ▶ Twelve soldiers    | <u>b</u> | a managed to escape.        |
| 1 They're in control | .....    | b were injured. ✓           |
| 2 Soldiers fought    | .....    | c explosion.                |
| 3 The planes bombed  | .....    | d of the city.              |
| 4 Two enemy fighters | .....    | e a long battle.            |
| 5 The battle         | .....    | f the area around the city. |
| 6 There was a loud   | .....    | g lasted several days.      |

### 2 Replace the underlined words with a single word that has the same meaning.

- |   |                 |
|---|-----------------|
| ▶ They were <u>physically hurting</u> each other. | <u>fighting</u> |
| 1 They were the <u>men we fought against</u> .    | .....           |
| 2 She is the <u>one who controls the group</u> .  | .....           |
| 3 It was a large <u>thing that explodes</u> .     | .....           |
| 4 He's a <u>member of the army</u> .              | .....           |
| 5 They found <u>bombs, guns and knives</u> .      | .....           |
| 6 Where did the bomb <u>go off</u> ?              | .....           |

### 3 Complete the dialogues.

- ▶ How many soldiers are in the army? ~ Over 10,000.
- 1 Why did the people run away? ~ Because the army was \_\_\_\_\_ at them.
- 2 How long has your brother been in the \_\_\_\_\_? ~ He's been a soldier for ten years.
- 3 When did the \_\_\_\_\_ go off? ~ Early, and it was a very loud \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 Did any of the soldiers die in the \_\_\_\_\_? ~ No, but two were badly \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 Have they caught the enemy \_\_\_\_\_? ~ Yes. He tried to \_\_\_\_\_, but they got him.
- 6 Is the army in \_\_\_\_\_ of the situation now? ~ Yes, the \_\_\_\_\_ fighters have gone.
- 7 Did the army find any \_\_\_\_\_? ~ Yes, lots of guns and explosive devices.
- 8 Did the soldiers attack? ~ Yes, they \_\_\_\_\_ a short battle with enemy \_\_\_\_\_.

### TEST YOURSELF

## B Peace

The region has been **at war** for several years now. All the countries **involved** have been **holding talks** for over a year to try and end the **fighting**. The first **attempt** at **peace** was **rejected** **within** days, but further talks at **reaching an agreement** have taken place, and now it seems that the two **sides** are more **determined** to achieve a **lasting** peace.

### SPOTLIGHT verb + noun

Certain verbs are often used together with certain nouns.

- **reach** an agreement
- **make** an attempt
- **hold** talks
- **go** to war

### GLOSSARY

<b>at war</b>	fighting with weapons against different groups or countries, usually for a long time
<b>involved (in sth)</b>	being part of sth or connected with sth
<b>involve v</b>	
<b>talks pl</b>	formal discussions between countries and their governments
<b>fighting</b>	the activity of fighting against the enemy
<b>attempt (at sth)</b>	trying to do sth that is difficult
<b>attempt v</b>	
<b>peace</b>	a time when there is no war between people or countries
<b>reject</b>	say that you do not want sb/sth
<b>rejection n</b>	
<b>within</b>	before the end of
<b>agreement</b>	a contract or decision that two or more people have made together
<b>side</b>	one of two groups who fight or play a game against each other
<b>determined</b>	very certain that you want to do sth
<b>lasting</b>	continuing for a long time

#### 4 Cover the glossary. Circle the correct answer.

- ▶ If you hold **talks**, you have formal / informal discussions with people.
- 1 If something happens **within** a week, it will happen in *less* / *more* than a week.
- 2 If you **reject** something, you say you *want* / *don't want* it.
- 3 If you are **involved** in something, you are *part* / *not part* of it.
- 4 If you make an **attempt** at doing something, you *try* / *fail* to do it.
- 5 If you are **at war** with another country, the *fighting has not ended* / *the sides are involved in talks*.
- 6 If you are **determined**, you are *sure* / *not sure* that you want to do something.
- 7 If something is **lasting**, it continues for a *short* / *long* time.
- 8 If you **reach an agreement** with somebody, you have *made a decision with them* / *had an argument with them*.

#### 5 Complete the text.



The civil war has now lasted almost ten years. The two ▶ sides have (1) \_\_\_\_\_ an agreement on several occasions in the past, but so far it has never been a (2) \_\_\_\_\_ peace. Last month, however, the two leaders (3) \_\_\_\_\_ in the war agreed to stop the (4) \_\_\_\_\_ and hold new (5) \_\_\_\_\_ in a final (6) \_\_\_\_\_ to achieve peace. They say they are (7) \_\_\_\_\_ to reach an (8) \_\_\_\_\_ this time. But if either side walks away and (9) \_\_\_\_\_ these latest proposals for peace, they may still be at (10) \_\_\_\_\_ for many years.

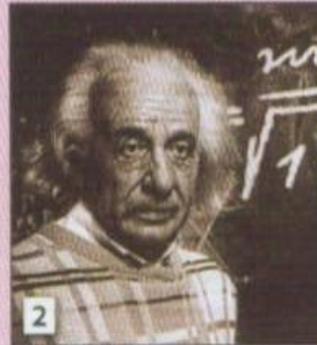
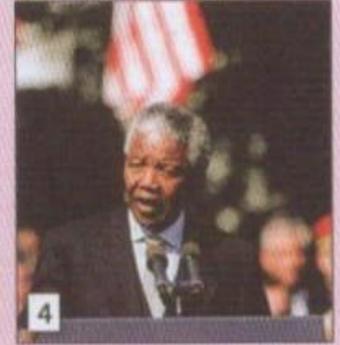
#### 6 Complete the sentences in a logical way. In some cases, more than one answer is possible.

- ▶ They want to achieve a lasting peace/solution.
- 1 Both sides want to reach an \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 I'm going to make one final \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 I should finish my report within \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 The two sides have agreed to hold \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 She rejected my \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 I'm determined to \_\_\_\_\_.



### TEST YOURSELF

Date	Event
1909	Robert Peary <b>claimed</b> he was the first person to reach the North Pole, but later that <b>claim</b> was <b>challenged</b> .
1911	The Norwegian, Roald Amundsen <sup>1</sup> , <b>led</b> the first Antarctic <b>expedition</b> that successfully reached the South Pole.
1915	Einstein <sup>2</sup> <b>developed</b> his <b>Theory</b> of Relativity over a <b>decade</b> , finally completing it in 1915.
1923	Turkey became a <b>republic</b> , and Mustafa Kemal Atatürk became its first <b>president</b> .
1928	Alexander Fleming <b>discovered</b> penicillin.
1947	India <b>gained independence</b> .
1953	After the death of <b>King</b> George VI, his daughter <b>Princess</b> Elizabeth became <b>Queen</b> Elizabeth II <sup>3</sup> .
1986	An explosion at the Chernobyl <b>nuclear power station</b> in Ukraine became one of the world's worst man-made disasters.
1989	Charles Babbage <b>invented</b> the first mechanical computer in the early 19 <sup>th</sup> century. The <b>invention</b> of the World Wide Web was in 1989 by Tim Berners-Lee. This was made <b>available</b> to the public in 1991.
1990	Nelson Mandela <sup>4</sup> was <b>released</b> from prison. Mandela's life was one of constant <b>challenges</b> . He later became president of South Africa.

1  
Roald Amundsen2  
Albert Einstein3  
Queen Elizabeth II4  
Nelson Mandela

## GLOSSARY

<b>claim</b>	say that sth is true <b>claim</b> <i>n</i>	<b>gain independence</b>	become free from control by another country <b>SYN become independent</b>
<b>challenge</b>	say that you think sb/sth is wrong	<b>nuclear</b>	using the energy that is produced when the central part of an atom is broken: <b>nuclear power</b>
<b>lead</b>	control a group of people. A person who <b>leads</b> is the <b>leader</b> .	<b>power station</b>	a place where electricity is produced
<b>expedition</b>	a journey to do or find sth special	<b>invent</b>	make or think of sth for the first time <b>invention</b> <i>n</i>
<b>develop</b>	grow slowly, increase, or change into sth else; make sb/sth do this <b>development</b> <i>n</i>	<b>available</b>	ready for you to use, have or see
<b>theory</b>	an idea or a set of ideas that tries to explain sth	<b>release</b>	allow sb to be free <b>release</b> <i>n</i>
<b>decade</b>	a period of ten years	<b>challenge</b> <i>n</i>	sth new or difficult that forces you to make a lot of effort
<b>republic</b>	a country with a president, but with no king or queen		
<b>president</b>	the leader of a country with no king or queen		
<b>discover</b>	find sth that nobody had found before <b>discovery</b> <i>n</i>		

## SPOTLIGHT royal families

A **royal** family is one connected with a **king** or **queen**. A man who **rules** a country (= has power over a country) is a king; a woman who rules is a queen. The son or grandson of a king or queen is a **prince**; the daughter or granddaughter is a **princess**. A country that has a king or queen is a **monarchy**.

1 Underline the main stress in these words. Two words have two possible stress patterns. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.

- |            |             |             |                 |
|------------|-------------|-------------|-----------------|
| ▶ release  | 3 republic  | 6 monarchy  | 9 development   |
| 1 decade   | 4 develop   | 7 available | 10 independence |
| 2 princess | 5 president | 8 discovery | 11 nuclear      |

2 Find pairs of words in the box that often go together.

prince ✓	king	invention	monarchy	decade	nuclear
discovery	power	queen	century	princess ✓	republic

- ▶ prince/princess \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_

3 Cover the glossary. Complete the definitions.

- ▶ A monarchy is a country with a king or queen.
- 1 If you become free from control by another country, you become \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 The daughter of a king or queen is a \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 A country with no king or queen is a \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 A family connected with kings or queens is a \_\_\_\_\_ family.
- 5 The leader of a country with no king or queen is usually the \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 An idea or a set of ideas that tries to explain something is a \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7 A journey to do or find something special is an \_\_\_\_\_.
- 8 Something new or difficult to do that forces you to make a lot of effort is a \_\_\_\_\_.
- 9 A place where electricity is produced is a \_\_\_\_\_.

4 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ Margrethe II of Denmark became queen after her father King Frederick IX died in 1972.
- 1 Martin Cooper \_\_\_\_\_ the mobile phone in April 1973, and a decade later the first Motorola mobile phones were made \_\_\_\_\_ to the public.
- 2 For a long time, people believed that Christopher Columbus \_\_\_\_\_ America, but in recent years many people have \_\_\_\_\_ that belief.
- 3 Prince William is a member of the British \_\_\_\_\_ family.
- 4 Ronald Reagan was elected \_\_\_\_\_ of the US in 1980.
- 5 In 1975, \_\_\_\_\_ Juan Carlos became \_\_\_\_\_ of Spain, and he \_\_\_\_\_ until 2014.
- 6 Argentina gained \_\_\_\_\_ in 1816, and Brazil became \_\_\_\_\_ in 1822.
- 7 Aleksandr Solzhenitsyn spent eight years in prison before he was \_\_\_\_\_ in 1953.
- 8 Freud believed children went through different stages of sexual \_\_\_\_\_ before they became adults.
- 9 In 1911, Captain Scott \_\_\_\_\_ a British \_\_\_\_\_ to reach the South Pole, but the Norwegian explorer Roald Amundsen got there first. Scott died in Antarctica soon after.
- 10 In 2011, a serious accident happened at a \_\_\_\_\_ power station in Fukushima, Japan.

5 Complete these questions about events in world history.

- ▶ Chuck Berry is the father of rock'n roll, but who is the king of rock'n roll?
- 1 Who published his \_\_\_\_\_ of evolution in 1859?
- 2 King Abdullah II is married to \_\_\_\_\_ Rania. Which country does he rule?
- 3 Who was \_\_\_\_\_ of the US from 2009-2017?
- 4 In which \_\_\_\_\_ did people start using Facebook? Was it the 2000s or the 2010s?
- 5 Who was Diana, \_\_\_\_\_ of Wales? She was killed in a car crash in Paris in 1997.
- 6 Which country became a \_\_\_\_\_ in 1917 after being ruled by the Romanovs?
- 7 Who is the Supreme \_\_\_\_\_ of North Korea?
- 8 Who \_\_\_\_\_ he was the first person to climb Mount Everest in 1953? (Most people still believe it, but some people have \_\_\_\_\_ that \_\_\_\_\_.)
- 9 Who \_\_\_\_\_ a theory of the psyche involving the ego and super ego?

ABOUT YOU

Elvis Presley

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 5, or answer them with another student. If you don't know any answers, use the internet to help you.



TEST YOURSELF

## A Young and old

## What's wrong with young people?

Some older people complain they have a **fear** of going out at night because of increasing **violence** and the number of young people who are **drunk**. But is it right for them to **be frightened**?

It's true that the number of reported **violent** crimes has increased, but also true that the police have become more **expert** at **recording** crime. Their enquiries are more successful because victims seem more **willing** to report crime. This may **account for** the increase.

There is also a growing **trend** for young people to **consume** less alcohol now than ten or fifteen years ago. Why? It's probably a **combination** of **factors**. Alcohol is expensive, it makes you lose control, and there seems to be a cultural move away from heavy drinking of alcohol.

## GLOSSARY

<b>fear</b>	the feeling you have when you think sth bad may happen
<b>violence</b>	behaviour which damages sth or harms sb physically <b>violent</b> <i>adj</i>
<b>drunk</b>	If a person is <b>drunk</b> , they have had too much alcohol. <b>drunk</b> <i>n</i>
<b>frighten</b>	make sb feel suddenly afraid
<b>expert</b>	knowing a lot about sth <b>expert</b> <i>n</i>
<b>record</b>	write notes about things so that you can remember them later <b>record</b> <i>n</i> (Note the different stress in the verb and the noun.)
<b>enquiry</b>	an official process to find out about sth
<b>willing (to do sth)</b>	ready and happy to do sth <b>OPP unwilling</b>
<b>account for sth</b>	explain or give a reason for sth
<b>trend</b>	a general direction in which a situation is changing or developing
<b>consume</b> <i>formal</i>	eat or drink
<b>combination</b>	two or more things joined together <b>combine</b> <i>v</i>
<b>factor</b>	one of the things that causes or affects sth

## 1 Good news or bad news? Write G or B.

- He's unwilling to help. B
- 1 He's drunk. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 I got expert advice. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 He's very violent. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 They frightened me. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 He's willing to help. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 There's no record of the attack on the victim. \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 She has a fear of speaking in public. \_\_\_\_\_

## 2 True, false or don't know? Write T, F or don't know. Correct any false sentences.

- All older people have a fear violence on the streets at night. F - Some older people have a fear of violence on the streets at night.
- 1 The number of reported violent crimes has increased. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 The number of violent crimes has increased. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 The police are better at recording crimes. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Victims are less willing to report crimes. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Young people get drunk more. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 Young people drink less only because of cost. \_\_\_\_\_

## 3 Complete the sentences.

- Police are trying to stop violent attacks on medical staff.
- 1 There is a growing \_\_\_\_\_ for young people to move to the big cities.
- 2 The robbers were prepared to use \_\_\_\_\_ if we didn't give them our money.
- 3 How do you \_\_\_\_\_ for the increase in the number of young people carrying knives?
- 4 People don't usually take drugs for just one reason: it's usually a \_\_\_\_\_ of factors.
- 5 I spoke to a professor who is an \_\_\_\_\_ on poverty in large cities.
- 6 People who \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of alcohol and get \_\_\_\_\_ are a danger to society.
- 7 People have a growing \_\_\_\_\_ of terrorism in many countries.
- 8 Doctors must keep clear and accurate \_\_\_\_\_ of their discussions with patients.
- 9 The police are very busy with a murder \_\_\_\_\_ at the moment.



## TEST YOURSELF

## B Charities

### Charities: good or bad?

The number of **charities** in the UK is enormous, with more than 600 registered **cancer** charities alone, and more than 200 charities for **homeless** people in London. Most of these charities depend on **donations** to **raise money**, and often on **volunteers** (many of whom are **retired**) to do the work. While the **passion** of so many people who want to help is wonderful, this situation is not ideal. More and more charities are now doing similar work and **competing with** each other for money. **As a consequence**, they are **forced to** spend more on marketing, **rather than** actually helping people. This means some people are losing confidence in charities and giving them less money. What should **society** do about this?

### GLOSSARY

<b>charity</b>	an organization that collects money to help people who need it
<b>cancer</b>	a very dangerous illness that can affect many parts of the body: <i>Smoking can cause lung cancer.</i>
<b>homeless</b>	without a place to live
<b>donation</b>	giving sth, especially money, to people who need it <b>donate</b> v
<b>raise money</b>	get money from other people for a particular purpose
<b>volunteer</b>	a person who is willing to do a job without being paid, <b>volunteer</b> v; <b>voluntary</b> adj
<b>retired</b>	no longer working because you have reached a particular age or because you are sick
<b>passion</b>	a very strong feeling for sth and interest in it <b>passionate</b> adj
<b>compete (with sb)</b>	try to win a race or competition against sb
<b>consequence</b>	a result of sth that has happened: <b>as a consequence</b>
<b>force sb (to do sth)</b>	make sb do sth that they do not want to do
<b>rather than</b>	in the place of; instead of
<b>society</b>	a large group of people who live in the same country or area and have the same ideas about sth

4 Underline the main stress in these words. Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

- |                  |               |             |              |           |
|------------------|---------------|-------------|--------------|-----------|
| ▶ <u>charity</u> | 2 consequence | 4 donation  | 6 passionate | 8 society |
| 1 compete        | 3 homeless    | 5 volunteer | 7 voluntary  | 9 retired |

5 Cover the glossary. Complete the explanations.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| ▶ <b>Cancer</b> is a very dangerous <u>illness</u> .  | 4 A <b>homeless</b> person has _____ to live.                |
| 1 A <b>charity</b> is an organization that _____ people.                                    | 5 A <b>volunteer</b> does a job without being _____.         |
| 2 A <b>passion</b> is a very strong _____.  | 6 A <b>consequence</b> of something is a _____ of something. |
| 3 If you do one thing <b>rather than</b> something else, you do it _____ of something else. | 7 A <b>retired</b> person is no longer _____.                |

7 Complete the dialogues.

- ▶ Is it a paid job? ~ No, she's a volunteer for a charity.
- 1 Do you have to attend the training courses? ~ No, they're \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 She loves working for *The Cats & Dogs Home*. ~ I know. She's always had a \_\_\_\_\_ for animals, and she enjoys \_\_\_\_\_ for charities.
- 3 Do they get money from the government? ~ No, they have to \_\_\_\_\_ it themselves.
- 4 Are they the only charity in this sector? ~ No, they have to \_\_\_\_\_ with other charities.
- 5 How do they get their money? ~ It comes from \_\_\_\_\_ from companies.
- 6 Do you ever \_\_\_\_\_ money to charities? ~ Yes, I do sometimes.
- 7 What can we do about homeless people in today's \_\_\_\_\_? ~ Build homes for them.
- 8 Why are the children not going to school? ~ To try and \_\_\_\_\_ the government to take action on climate change.

### ABOUT YOU

- 7 **ABOUT YOU** Can you think of a famous cancer or other charity in your country? Do charities compete with other charities? What is the solution to the problem expressed in the text above? Write your answers, or talk to another student.

### TEST YOURSELF

## A Bad things happen ...

The burglar **set off** the burglar **alarm**, which woke everyone up, but he **ran away** before we saw him.

I **set** my alarm clock last night, but I still **overslept**. I **sprang out of** bed and tripped over my shoes.

Last week it was so cold that our pipes **froze** in the bathroom, and then they **burst**. It made a terrible mess, but fortunately my husband was at home and **dealt with** it.

We were on the lake when our little boat **sank**. We managed to swim to the shore and then **lay** there exhausted, not sure what to do. As it **grew** darker, we started to feel cold and miserable.

### GLOSSARY

<b>set sth off</b> <i>pt/pp set</i> <b>alarm</b>	do sth that starts a reaction a machine that warns you of a danger by ringing a loud bell: <b>a fire/burglar alarm</b>
<b>run away</b> <i>pt ran pp run</i> <b>set</b> <i>pt/pp set</i>	escape from somewhere prepare or arrange sth for a particular purpose
<b>oversleep</b> <i>pt/pp overslept</i> <b>spring</b> <i>pt sprang</i> <i>pp sprang</i>	sleep longer than you should have done jump or move quickly: <b>spring out of bed / to your feet</b>
<b>freeze</b> <i>pt froze pp frozen</i> <b>burst</b> <i>pt burst pp burst</i>	become hard and often change into ice break open suddenly and violently, usually because there is too much pressure inside
<b>deal with sth/sb</b> <i>pt/pp dealt</i> <b>sink</b> <i>pt sank pp sunk</i>	take action in a situation in order to solve a problem go down, or make sth go down under the surface of a liquid or soft substance
<b>lie</b> <i>pt lay pp lain</i> <b>grow</b> <i>pt grew pt grown</i>	be in a flat or horizontal position, not standing or sitting become: <b>grow dark/old/bored</b>

### 1 Circle the past participles.

frozeransprunggrewrunoversleptburstdealtsanksetspringfrozenlaygrown

### 2 Complete the dialogues.

- ▶ What time did you get up? ~ I set the alarm for 7.00 but didn't get up until 7.30.
- 1 What was the cause of the accident? ~ A tyre \_\_\_\_\_, and the car went out of control.
- 2 Why were you late for work? ~ Because I \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 The water in the dog's bowl has \_\_\_\_\_! ~ That's not surprising: the temperature fell below zero last night.
- 4 What happened to the boat? ~ It \_\_\_\_\_ because there was a hole in the bottom of it.
- 5 Has Rina solved the problem with the keys? ~ Yes, she's \_\_\_\_\_ it.
- 6 Did you feel tired when you woke up? ~ No, I \_\_\_\_\_ bed.
- 7 Where has Freddie gone? ~ He was frightened of the horse and \_\_\_\_\_.
- 8 Was it dark when you drove here this morning? ~ Yes, but it \_\_\_\_\_ light as I got nearer.
- 9 Were you tired after the journey? ~ Yes, very. I \_\_\_\_\_ on my bed for an hour and then felt much better.
- 10 Did you hear the fire \_\_\_\_\_? ~ No, I wasn't at home at the time. Is everything OK?

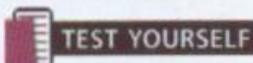
### 3 Complete the questions with a suitable verb.

#### ABOUT YOU

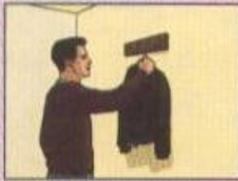
Have you ever:

- ▶ overslept before an important exam or meeting? \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_ out of bed and injured yourself? \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_ a burglar alarm or a fire alarm? \_\_\_\_\_
- had to \_\_\_\_\_ with a difficult boss, colleague or student? \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_ a child's balloon? \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_ an alarm clock for the wrong time? \_\_\_\_\_

### 4 ABOUT YOU Write answers to the questions in Exercise 3, or ask another student.



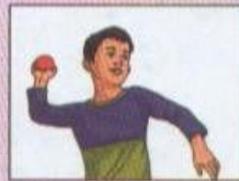
## B Action verbs



1 He hung up his coat.



2 She hid behind the sofa.



3 He threw the ball.



4 She shook the bottle.



5 He bent the metal.



6 She spilt her drink.



7 I lit a fire.



8 Hannah led us up the hill.



9 The referee blew his whistle.



10 She tore the picture into pieces.



11 He shone a torch into my eye.



12 She laid the baby on the bed.

**5 Can you complete the past participles? Use the irregular verbs list on pages 202–204 if necessary.**

- |                             |                         |                       |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------|
| ▶ hang / hung / <u>hung</u> | 4 blow / blew / _____   | 8 light / lit / _____ |
| 1 hide / hid / _____        | 5 spill / spilt / _____ | 9 tear / tore / _____ |
| 2 throw / threw / _____     | 6 shine / shone / _____ | 10 lay / laid / _____ |
| 3 shake / shook / _____     | 7 bend / bent / _____   |                       |

**6 Cross out the wrong answer.**

- ▶ He laid the *newspaper* / *books* / *juice* on the table.
- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1 I threw the <i>ball</i> / <i>book</i> / <i>horse</i> .        | 5 She spilt some <i>juice</i> / <i>boxes</i> / <i>white coffee</i> on the floor. |
| 2 He hid behind the <i>cup</i> / <i>bed</i> / <i>wardrobe</i> . | 6 I shone a <i>light</i> / <i>torch</i> / <i>fire</i> on the documents.          |
| 3 I bent the <i>spoon</i> / <i>pencil</i> / <i>key</i> .        | 7 She shook the <i>carton of milk</i> / <i>bottle</i> / <i>wall</i> .            |
| 4 I lit the <i>fire</i> / <i>cigarette</i> / <i>water</i> .     | 8 He hung up his <i>scarf</i> / <i>gloves</i> / <i>jacket</i> .                  |

**7 Complete the sentences with a suitable verb in the correct form.**

- ▶ Don't shake that bottle of fizzy water before you open it!
- The receptionist \_\_\_\_\_ the guests into the restaurant.
  - Joanna has \_\_\_\_\_ some tea on her dress, and it's left a mark.
  - Someone \_\_\_\_\_ a candle so that we could see a bit more clearly.
  - I tried turning the key in the lock. It didn't work and I think I've \_\_\_\_\_ the key.
  - He saw a soldier coming so he \_\_\_\_\_ behind a wall.
  - The policemen stopped the man in the street and \_\_\_\_\_ a torch into his bag.
  - I gave him the letter; he read it and then \_\_\_\_\_ it into little pieces.
  - I went in quietly, took off my coat and \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_.
  - The referee has \_\_\_\_\_ his whistle, so it's the end of the game.
  - I \_\_\_\_\_ the map on the ground so we could see exactly where we were going.

**8 Make sure you know the meaning and irregular forms of the following verbs. Use the APP to help you and the irregular verb list on pages 202–204.**

rise choose spread keep break bring feed



You will know many of these verbs, and others are explained in the glossary. If you need further help, use the Word List or the **APP**.

After some verbs we use an infinitive with **to**:

agree	attempt	forget	need	pretend	seem
afford	decide	hope	offer	promise	tend
arrange	expect	manage	plan	refuse	want



He **attempted to climb** the north side of the mountain.  
They **can't afford to buy** a new car.  
I **tend to relax** in the evenings and watch TV.  
She **pretended to feel** happy, but I knew she wasn't.

After some verbs we use an **-ing form**:

admit	enjoy	give up	(not) mind	stop
avoid	fancy	imagine	practise	suggest
consider	finish	keep	risk	take up



I **avoid going to** the dentist if possible.  
I **took up swimming** to get fit.  
I **gave up smoking** ten years ago.  
I don't want to **risk losing** any money.  
We **considered moving** house, but then decided to stay here.  
Sara **doesn't mind sitting** in front of a computer all day.  
I can't **imagine spending** every day in an office.  
The boy **admitted stealing** the money.  
Do you **fancy going out** this evening?

A few verbs can be followed by an infinitive or **-ing form** with a similar meaning:

start	begin	continue
-------	-------	----------

*It started raining.* = *It started to rain.*

Others can have slightly different meanings:

like	love	prefer
------	------	--------

*I like swimming.* (= I enjoy swimming.)

*I like to do the housework in a particular order.* (= it's my habit or preference)

#### SPOTLIGHT *keep*

When **keep** means to continue doing something or to repeat an action many times, it is followed by an **-ing form**.

- **Keep going** until you get to the station.
- *I keep losing* my pen.
- *He keeps coughing* at night.

#### GLOSSARY

<b>attempt to do sth</b>	try to do sth, often sth difficult	<b>risk doing sth</b>	put sth or yourself in danger
<b>afford to do sth</b>	If you <b>can afford sth/to do sth</b> , you have enough money for it.	<b>consider doing sth</b>	think about sth carefully
<b>tend to do sth</b>	usually do or be sth	<b>not mind doing sth</b>	not feel unhappy or angry about sth: <i>I don't mind getting up early.</i>
<b>pretend to do sth</b>	try to make sb believe sth that isn't true	<b>imagine doing sth</b>	make a picture of sth in your mind
<b>refuse to do sth</b>	say you will not do sth that sb has asked you to do	<b>avoid doing sth</b>	try not to do sth; stop sth happening
<b>take up doing sth</b>	start doing sth regularly, often as a hobby	<b>admit doing sth</b>	say that you have done sth wrong, or that sth bad is true
<b>give up doing sth</b>	stop doing or having sth	<b>fancy doing sth inf</b>	want to do sth

1 Put the verbs in the correct part of the table below.

▶ hope ✓ avoid	give up like	imagine manage	agree keep	offer begin	prefer continue
+ infinitive with to	+ -ing form	infinitive OR -ing form			
▶ hope					

2 Cross out the verb that cannot be used in each sentence.

- ▶ They *planned / enjoyed / refused / intended* to leave early.
- 1 She *fancied / avoided / kept / pretended* going to that particular restaurant.
- 2 He *offered / admitted / agreed / arranged* to go to the bank with me.
- 3 We *hope / tend / intend / consider* to go away in the summer.
- 4 I don't *enjoy / mind / need / fancy* staying there.
- 5 Did they *risk / intend / refuse / manage* to spend all the money?
- 6 They both *gave up / considered / expected / took up* swimming.

3 Underline the correct verb.

- ▶ Sam fell off his bike, but he seems / agrees to be OK.
- 1 The roads will be busy so we *intend* / pretend to leave early.
- 2 I don't *mind* / take up waiting for the children.
- 3 He *managed* / attempted to find a room, but it was impossible.
- 4 She *kept* / gave up getting a pain in her shoulder.
- 5 Mark *refused* / offered to help me with the luggage, so I had to carry all of it.
- 6 I *suggested* / avoided going there and they all agreed.
- 7 It's a long trip, so I don't *hope* / expect to get there before midday.
- 8 I love that motorbike, but I can't *mind* / risk spending all my savings on it.

4 Complete the sentences with a suitable infinitive or -ing form.

- ▶ I was very unfit so I took up jogging.
- 1 I can't imagine \_\_\_\_\_ in another country.
- 2 My younger brother hopes \_\_\_\_\_ very rich when he's older.
- 3 My flatmates always avoid \_\_\_\_\_ housework if they can.
- 4 Some people hate it, but I don't mind \_\_\_\_\_ to the dentist.
- 5 Alexa promised \_\_\_\_\_ me with my Greek classes this weekend.
- 6 When I told him to do some work, he pretended \_\_\_\_\_ asleep.

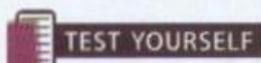
5 Complete the dialogues with a verb from page 118.

- ▶ Are you going shopping? ~ Yes, I want \_\_\_\_\_ to buy a coat if I can find one.
- 1 Are you going to Brazil this year? ~ No, I can't \_\_\_\_\_ to go now – it's too expensive.
- 2 Do you \_\_\_\_\_ going out for a meal? ~ Yeah, that's a great idea.
- 3 Why did they \_\_\_\_\_ to be German? ~ I don't know. It's obvious they were English.
- 4 Do you eat dinner early in England? ~ Yes. We \_\_\_\_\_ to eat earlier than people in Spain.
- 5 Have you worked on a farm all your life? ~ Yes. I can't \_\_\_\_\_ working in a factory.
- 6 Are you moving house? ~ Yes, I'm \_\_\_\_\_ to get a flat in the city centre.

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

Is there anything you:

- 1 managed to do recently that was difficult? What? \_\_\_\_\_ 4 refused to do recently? What? \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 intended to do recently but didn't? What? \_\_\_\_\_ 5 forgot to do recently? What? \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 agreed to do recently? What? \_\_\_\_\_ 6 either took up or gave up recently? What? \_\_\_\_\_



We use **reflexive pronouns** when the object is the same person/thing as the subject. We often use them with certain verbs.

*I cut myself using that knife. (NOT I cut me ...)*

*Why are you looking at yourself in the mirror?*

*He tried to kill himself. (Different from He tried to kill him. = another person)*

*I wanted to pay for everyone, but Jessica paid for herself.*

*That cat is always washing itself.*

*We enjoyed ourselves at the club last night.*

*You boys will hurt yourselves if you jump out of that tree.*

*Surprisingly, all the children behaved themselves during the trip.*



### SPOTLIGHT reflexive verbs

Some languages use reflexive verbs more than English. Be careful not to make these mistakes:

- I like to relax myself/me.
- I feel myself/me very tired.
- Where shall we meet ourselves/us?

The following verbs and expressions are also used with reflexive pronouns:

*If you're still hungry, just help yourself to more food. (= take what you want)*

*They're not in great health – they need to take care of themselves. (= look after themselves)*

*He's too emotional and he can't control himself. (= control his feelings)*

*I taught myself Italian. (= I worked alone without a teacher.)*

*It took her a few minutes to calm herself (down) after the argument. (= become quiet and relaxed)*

## 1 Complete the correct reflexive pronoun.

- ▶ I decided to help myself.
- 1 She taught \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 I think they hurt \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 He can't take care of \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 I told you to behave \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 I just helped \_\_\_\_\_ to more chicken.
- 6 Don't worry, we can take care of \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7 You all enjoyed \_\_\_\_\_, didn't you?

## 2 Complete each dialogue.

- ▶ How did you learn the piano? ~ I just taught myself.
- 1 Will you look after Sacha? ~ No, she's old enough to take \_\_\_\_\_ of herself.
- 2 There's blood here. ~ I know. Ben \_\_\_\_\_ himself using the bread knife.
- 3 Can I buy you a drink? ~ No, it's OK, I'll \_\_\_\_\_ for myself.
- 4 Have you \_\_\_\_\_ yourself? ~ Yes, I banged my leg on the table, and it's very painful.
- 5 Did Ben shout at you? ~ Yes, he gets angry very easily and just can't \_\_\_\_\_ himself.
- 6 Remember, this is a very formal dinner. ~ Don't worry, I'll \_\_\_\_\_ myself.

## 3 Complete the sentences with the correct verb and reflexive pronoun.

- ▶ I go to parties, but I don't often really enjoy myself.
- 1 I go to a language class because I don't think I'd be very good at \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 When I go to a restaurant with someone, I usually like to \_\_\_\_\_ for \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 If I want to \_\_\_\_\_ down, I usually sit quietly and breathe deeply.
- 4 I think I spend too much time \_\_\_\_\_ at \_\_\_\_\_ in the mirror.
- 5 In my country, more young men are \_\_\_\_\_ in recent years. Is life harder than it used to be?
- 6 In my country, young children don't always \_\_\_\_\_ in other people's houses.

### ABOUT YOU

## 4 ABOUT YOU Are the sentences in Exercise 3 true for you or your country? Write your answers, or talk to another student.



### TEST YOURSELF

The most common meaning of **take** is to move somebody or something to another place, or lead somebody to another place.

*Take my coat – it's cold.*

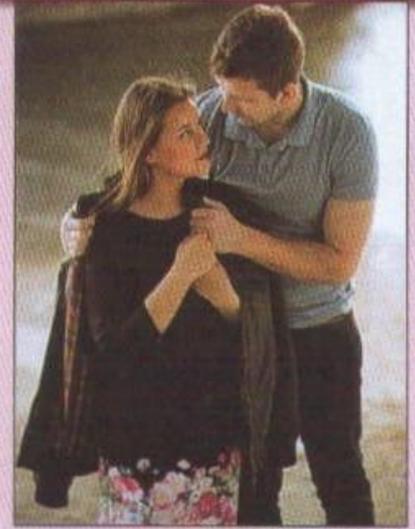
*She took the girl's hand.*

*I took the money and left.*

*Marta took me to the station.*

**Take** has many other meanings, and is often used in expressions with particular nouns:

borrow or steal sth without permission	<i>Someone has taken my phone.</i>
eat or drink drugs/medicine	<i>She has to take two tablets every day.</i>
agree to have or accept sth	<i>I took his advice and bought the larger tent.</i>
do	<i>My son takes his final exam tomorrow.</i>
need an amount of time	<i>It takes me an hour to get to work.</i>
travel on	<i>My brother takes the train to work.</i> ALSO <i>get the train</i>
used with photo	<i>We took lots of photos on holiday.</i> (NOT <i>make a photo</i> )
eat/drink	<i>Do you take milk and sugar in coffee?</i>
wear (a particular size)	<i>What size shoes do you take? ~ 43.</i>



**1 Underline the correct answer(s). Be careful: both answers are sometimes correct.**

- ▶ I took / held his advice.
- 1 Take / Bring this book to the room next door.
- 2 Could you take / bring that book over here?
- 3 Don't forget to take / carry your books.
- 4 I'm taking / doing an exam tomorrow.
- 5 What size shoes do you take / use?
- 6 It takes / needs an hour to get there.
- 7 We can take / get the bus into town.
- 8 I want to take / make some photos.
- 9 I don't take / drink milk in tea or coffee.

**2 Complete the dialogues in a suitable way using take.**

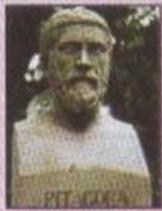
- ▶ Have you got any pictures of your new flat? ~ Yes, I've taken lots of photos.
- 1 Did you drive to the station? ~ No, I \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 Did you do what he suggested? ~ Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 I'll have a coffee, please. ~ Fine. Do you \_\_\_\_\_?
- 4 Is it easy to get to college? ~ Yeah, it only \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 What shall I do with these books? ~ Oh, could you \_\_\_\_\_?
- 6 Your bag was here. Where is it? ~ Oh, I think my brother \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7 Is this the medicine the doctor gave you? ~ Yes, I have to \_\_\_\_\_.
- 8 Do the shoes fit you? ~ No, I \_\_\_\_\_.

**3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student. If possible, use take in your answers.**

- ▶ How do you get to school/university/work? I take the bus or the underground.
- 1 How long does it take? \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 Do you take milk and sugar in coffee? \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 What size shoes do you take? \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 What was the last exam that you did? \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 What pictures do you have on your phone? \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 What do you usually do if your parents advise you to do something? \_\_\_\_\_.

**TEST YOURSELF**

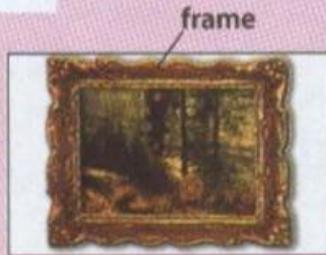
## A Art and artists



sculpture



portrait



landscape



still life



paintbrushes

Art galleries such as *The Louvre* have a huge **collection** of **works of art**, including **sculptures** and paintings, and sometimes hold special **exhibitions** of paintings by a particular **artist**, or from a particular **period**. These might be **portraits**, **landscapes** or **still lifes**, and in different styles, e.g. some **abstract**, some more realistic. Artists also use a **range** of **techniques** – painting with oil paints or other kinds of paint and using various types of **paintbrushes**, drawing, using computer images, etc. – to create different **effects**.

### GLOSSARY

<b>collection</b>	a group of similar things that sb has brought together. A person who does this as a hobby or a job is a <b>collector</b> .
<b>work of art</b>	a painting, a statue, etc. of a very high quality
<b>exhibition</b>	a collection of paintings, objects, etc. that are shown in public: <i>The gallery is holding an exhibition of portraits by Rembrandt.</i> <b>exhibit</b> v
<b>artist</b>	sb who produces <i>art</i> (paintings, drawings, etc.)
<b>period</b>	a particular amount of time in history
<b>abstract</b>	(of art) not showing people or things as they really are; expressing an idea
<b>range</b>	different things of the same kind
<b>technique</b>	a particular way of doing sth, often needing special skills
<b>effect</b>	a result or a change that happens because of sth

### 1 Underline the main stress in these words. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.

▶ effect

- |              |              |             |               |
|--------------|--------------|-------------|---------------|
| 1 collection | 4 period     | 7 portrait  | 10 sculpture  |
| 2 abstract   | 5 paintbrush | 8 exhibit   | 11 technique  |
| 3 artist     | 6 landscape  | 9 collector | 12 exhibition |

### 2 Complete the sentences.

▶ Somebody who produces paintings is an artist.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1 A painting of a person is a _____.                  | 6 A person who buys lots of paintings is a _____.                                 |
| 2 A painting of the countryside is a _____.           | 7 A very good painting is often called a _____.                                   |
| 3 A painting of fruit, flowers or objects is a _____. | 8 Artists often use a _____ and oil paints.                                       |
| 4 The wood or metal around a painting is the _____.   | 9 A painting that is not realistic in style is described as _____.                |
| 5 A number of paintings shown in public is an _____.  | 10 A particular way of doing something, often needing special skills, is a _____. |

### 3 Complete the words in the text.

Pablo Picasso is a great ▶ artist who produced paintings and (1) s\_\_\_\_\_ in a (2) r\_\_\_\_\_ of different styles and over a very long (3) p\_\_\_\_\_. In his early work, his paintings were more realistic and easier to understand. For example, there is a wonderful (4) p\_\_\_\_\_ of his mother that he painted when he was only 15. He also painted (5) l\_\_\_\_\_ in that period. Throughout his life he produced many (6) s\_\_\_\_\_ life paintings, which became more (7) a\_\_\_\_\_ as he experimented with different styles and (8) t\_\_\_\_\_. Many people believe that his greatest (9) w\_\_\_\_\_ of art was *Guernica*, which he painted during the Spanish Civil War. It is a huge painting, which contains very powerful images and symbols of war, and it has had an enormous (10) e\_\_\_\_\_ on people around the world. In the past, the painting was (11) e\_\_\_\_\_ in various countries, but it returned to Spain in 1981, and is now part of a permanent (12) c\_\_\_\_\_ in the Museo Reina Sofia in Madrid.



TEST YOURSELF

## B Reactions to art



I remember seeing an exhibition of photographs a few years ago about the way war has affected my city, Bath. It was very powerful and made me more aware of the reality of war – the images of destruction were of places I know well. One of the photographs moved me to tears.



A painting that cheers me up is *Sunflowers* by Vincent Van Gogh. The flower is a symbol of happiness, and it was painted at a time when Van Gogh was feeling optimistic about the future. He painted the flowers many times, but one of the original paintings is in the National Gallery in London where I often go and look at it.

### SPOTLIGHT remember doing something and remember to do something

If you **remember doing something**, you have an image in your memory of something that happened in the past. If you **remember to do something**, you do something that you have to do and don't forget about it.

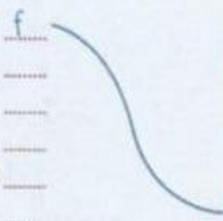
- I remember reading the book about ten years ago.
- I must remember to read Jonah's email when I get home.

### GLOSSARY

<b>reaction (to sb/sth)</b>	sth that you do or say because of sth that has happened <b>react (to sb/sth) v</b>
<b>powerful</b>	having a strong effect on your mind or body
<b>reality</b>	1 a thing that is actually experienced, not just imagined 2 the way life really is, not the way it may appear to be or you would like it to be
<b>image</b>	a picture or description that appears in a book, film or painting
<b>destruction</b>	the act of damaging sth so badly that it can no longer be used or no longer exists <b>destroy v</b>
<b>move</b>	cause sb to have strong feelings, especially of sadness <b>move sb to tears</b> made sb cry
<b>cheer (sb) up</b>	become happier, or make sb happier
<b>symbol (of sth)</b>	a person, sign, object, etc. which represents sth
<b>happiness</b>	the feeling of being happy
<b>optimistic</b>	expecting good things to happen or sth to be successful
<b>original</b>	painted, written, etc. by the artist rather than copied <b>original n</b>

### 4 Match 1–7 with a–h.

- ▶ War causes terrible
- 1 The rose is a
- 2 Did you remember
- 3 Da Vinci's drawings had a powerful
- 4 The painting of the children moved me
- 5 Do you remember
- 6 I'm beginning to accept
- 7 The bright colours in the painting



- a to tears.
- b going to the Walker Gallery last year?
- c the reality of his illness.
- d symbol of love.
- e to buy the tickets this morning?
- f destruction. ✓
- g cheered me up.
- h effect on me.

### 5 Complete the dialogues.

- ▶ Was there a lot of damage in the gallery fire? ~ Yes, a lot of paintings were destroyed.
- 1 Did the exhibition have an effect on you? ~ Yes, it really \_\_\_\_\_ me.
- 2 Was that a real Picasso or a copy? ~ It was an \_\_\_\_\_ painting and worth a lot.
- 3 *The Death of Marat* is very a powerful painting. ~ Yes, it's a strong \_\_\_\_\_ of death.
- 4 Are you feeling positive about the future? ~ Yes, I'm \_\_\_\_\_ that things will get better.
- 5 Do you know Analisa's sister? ~ Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_ meeting her a few years ago.
- 6 Did the portrait express sadness? ~ No, not at all – in fact, it expressed great \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7 Did you accuse the man of stealing? ~ Yes, he \_\_\_\_\_ very badly and shouted at me.
- 8 Was the flood very serious? ~ Yes, it caused the \_\_\_\_\_ of the main bridge.

### 6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or tell another student.

- ▶ Is there a painting that brings you happiness? If so, which one? Yes, a painting of a dog. It looks so happy.
- 1 Is there a painting that moves you to tears? Which one, and why? \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 What is your reaction to abstract art? \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Are there any paintings or artists that cheer you up? Which ones? \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Have you got any original paintings? If so, what are they? \_\_\_\_\_



### TEST YOURSELF

Kathryn Bigelow has been a director, **producer** and **screenwriter** for over forty years. Since 1981, she has made many films in the action film **genre**, often **influenced** by Alfred Hitchcock. In 1987 she made *Near Dark*, which **combines** elements of the western and horror film genres, and the thriller *Point Break* in 1991. It wasn't until 2010, though, that she **achieved** greater **fame**, when she became the first woman to receive an Academy award for Best Director for *The Hurt Locker*. However, she has always refused to be called a 'woman **film-maker**'. She has also divided **critics**: some love her films, while others feel the **content** is too violent.



**GLOSSARY**

<b>producer</b>	sb who is in charge of the practical and financial aspects of making a film	<b>combine</b>	join two or more things together to form a single one <b>combination n</b>
<b>screenwriter</b>	a person who writes the <i>screenplay</i> for a film: the written words that actors speak, the <i>script</i> ; and the instructions for how it is to be filmed and acted	<b>fame</b>	the state of being famous: <b>achieve/win fame</b>
<b>genre</b>	a particular type of film, art, music, etc. that you can recognise because of its special features	<b>award</b>	a prize or money that you give to sb who has done sth very well: <i>She won the <b>award</b> for best actress.</i>
<b>influence</b>	change the way that sb thinks <b>influence n</b>	<b>film-maker</b>	a person who makes films
		<b>critic</b>	a person who writes about a film, book or play, and says what they think about it
		<b>content</b>	the subject matter of a film, play, book, etc.

**SPOTLIGHT** *cinema*

A **cinema** [C] is the building where you go to see a film.  
 ■ *What's on at the **cinema** this weekend?*  
**Cinema** [U] means films in general; the film industry.  
 ■ *the history of French **cinema***  
 ■ *Alfonso Cuarón is a leading figure in Mexican **cinema**.*

1 Is the word stress the same or different in the pairs of words? Write S or D. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.

- ▶ achieve / critic D
- 1 critic / award .....
- 2 film-maker / screenwriter .....
- 3 influence / cinema .....
- 4 combine / genre .....
- 5 content n / screenplay .....

2 Tick the words which describe people.

- ▶ film-maker
- critic
- influence
- award
- screenwriter
- producer
- genre
- script
- screenplay

3 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ I don't go to the cinema very often in summer; I prefer being outdoors.
- 1 In Brazil, the most popular \_\_\_\_\_ of films is action films.
- 2 Hugh Grant had been acting for years before he achieved \_\_\_\_\_ in *Four Weddings and a Funeral*.
- 3 I liked the film, but a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ said it was much too long.
- 4 I think Almodóvar has \_\_\_\_\_ young film directors all over the world.
- 5 *Green Book* won the \_\_\_\_\_ for Best Film at the Oscars in 2019.
- 6 The acting was good, but I didn't like the \_\_\_\_\_ of the film – it was all about war.
- 7 A romantic comedy is a \_\_\_\_\_ of humour and a love story.
- 8 Do you know very much about Russian \_\_\_\_\_ ?
- 9 The film \_\_\_\_\_ wonderful scenery with gentle music.

4 **ABOUT YOU** Write about your favourite film, or a film you've seen recently. Give as much detail as possible. Was it popular with the critics? Did it win any awards?

**TEST YOURSELF**



A friend of mine, Sam, runs an **amateur drama** group. They **put on** three or four **plays** a year in a small **local theatre**. Sam directs all of them, sometimes takes a **leading role** and even writes some of the plays they perform as well. I don't do much **acting** myself, but I once played a **servant** in a comedy. Most of the time I help with **costume** and **stage design**, but sometimes I have a small role in one of the plays. We have a lot of fun.

## GLOSSARY

<b>amateur</b>	doing an activity because you enjoy it, and not for money or as part of a job <b>amateur n</b> ; <b>OPP professional</b>
<b>drama</b>	plays, often serious, in a theatre or on television
<b>put sth on play</b>	prepare a play for people to see a story that you watch in the theatre or on television
<b>local theatre [C]</b>	of a place near you a building where you go to see plays; [U] plays as a form of entertainment: <i>I like theatre.</i>
<b>leading role</b>	most important a person's part in a play or film: <i>a leading role</i>
<b>acting servant</b>	the art of performing in plays <b>act v</b> sb who works in another person's house and cooks, cleans, etc.
<b>costume [C, U]</b>	the special clothes that people wear, e.g. in a play or a film
<b>stage</b>	the place in a theatre or concert hall where actors, musicians, etc. perform: <b>stage design</b> (= how the stage looks for the audience)

## 1 Circle the correct answer.

▶ A play usually has a story / game.

- 1 A theatre which is near where you live is a *local* / *amateur* theatre.
- 2 The most important actor plays the *leading role* / *drama*.

3 If someone is an *amateur* / a *professional*, they are paid for their work.

- 4 The actors stand on the *stage* / *curtain*.
- 5 You *wear* / *use* a costume in a play.
- 6 A role is a *type of play* / *part in a play*.

## 2 Cover the text at the top of the page, then correct these sentences.

▶ The group puts on two plays a year. The group puts on three or four plays a year.

- 1 They put their plays on in a large national theatre. ....
- 2 It's a professional group. ....
- 3 It's a film group. ....
- 4 Sam writes all the plays. ....
- 5 I always act in the plays. ....
- 6 I once played a nurse in a comedy. ....
- 7 I help with costume and selling tickets. ....
- 8 I take a leading role in the plays. ....

## 3 Complete these sentences about plays.

▶ I went to the theatre to see *Hamlet*.

- 1 A ..... is performed by actors.
- 2 Each of these people perform a ..... in the play.
- 3 A play is performed on a .....
- 4 The actors often wear special .....
- 5 The most important actor plays the ..... role.
- 6 At the beginning of the play the ..... goes up.
- 7 Plays for the theatre, radio or TV can also be called .....



## TEST YOURSELF

## A Instruments and musicians



bass guitar



trumpet



saxophone



drums



orchestra

conductor



cello



keyboard



organ



record



lead singer

SPOTLIGHT the suffix *-ist*

We often use this suffix for the person who plays a particular instrument, e.g. *cellist, saxophonist, organist, guitarist, violinist, pianist*. However, we say *trumpeter* and *drummer*, and for some instruments, we use the word *player*, e.g. *keyboard player*.

## 1 Is the pronunciation of the underlined sounds the same or different? Write S or D.

Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

- |                          |          |                         |       |
|--------------------------|----------|-------------------------|-------|
| ▶ trumpet / drums        | <u>S</u> | 4 guitarist / violinist | ..... |
| 1 orchestra / keyboard   | .....    | 5 saxophone / cello     | ..... |
| 2 conductor / cello      | .....    | 6 bass guitar / player  | ..... |
| 3 lead singer / keyboard | .....    | 7 conductor / orchestra | ..... |

## 2 Complete the musical instruments and the person who plays them.

- |  |                            |
|--|----------------------------|
| ▶ vi <u>o</u>   <u>l</u> i n / violinist | 4 dr _____ / _____         |
| 1 or _____ / _____                       | 5 sax _____ / _____        |
| 2 tr _____ / _____                       | 6 b _____ gu _____ / _____ |
| 3 ce _____ / _____                       | 7 key _____ / _____        |

## 3 Can you complete these sentences about famous people in music?

## MUSIC AND MUSICIANS QUIZ

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| ▶ Yehudi Menuhin was a famous <u>violinist</u> . | 6 Miles Davis played _____.  |
| 1 Freddie Mercury was _____ singer for _____.    | 7 Yo Yo Ma is a great _____.   |
| 2 Keith Richards is lead _____ for the _____.    | 8 Bill Wyman played _____ guitar for the _____.  |
| 3 Sir Simon Rattle is a famous _____.            | 9 Benny Andersson wrote, sang and played _____ for ABBA.   |
| 4 Ringo Starr played _____ for the _____.        | 10 Louis Armstrong, one of the jazz world's great _____ and singers, made his first _____ in 1925. |
| 5 John Coltrane played _____.                    |  |



## TEST YOURSELF

## B A famous rock star

Why is David Bowie so **well known** and widely **admired**? Firstly, because he was a fine musician and **songwriter** who **toured** the world for over 30 years, but also because **fans** loved the incredible **visual impact** of his **live** performances. They may be surprised to know that he was strongly influenced by classical music, especially the **composer** Stravinsky: his first album in 1967 used many orchestral instruments. **Sadly**, Bowie died in January, 2016, but his final **recording**, his 25<sup>th</sup> album in total called Blackstar, was **released** just two days earlier.



### GLOSSARY

<b>well known</b>	famous: a <b>well-known</b> guitarist
<b>admire</b>	like sb and think they have achieved a lot
<b>songwriter</b>	sb who writes songs
<b>tour</b>	travel around a place, e.g. to perform, on holiday
<b>fan</b>	a person who likes sb or sth, e.g. a singer or a sport
<b>visual</b>	connected with seeing
<b>impact</b>	the effect that sth has: <b>make an impact</b>
<b>composer</b>	a person who writes music, especially classical music, e.g. opera, symphony <b>compose</b> v
<b>sadly</b>	unfortunately
<b>recording</b>	sounds or pictures on a tape, CD or film
<b>release</b>	put an album, CD, DVD, film, etc. onto the market so people can buy it <b>release</b> n

### SPOTLIGHT *live, alive, living*

**Live** (sounds like *five*) means 'seen or heard as it is happening'.

■ We saw the band play **live**, then watched it on TV a couple of days later.

**Living** and **alive** mean not dead. **Alive** is not used before a noun.

■ He's one of the greatest **living** pianists. (NOT **alive** pianists)

■ Mozart isn't **alive** today.

### 4 Yes or No?

► Is Elvis Presley **alive**?

1 If you are a **fan** of someone, do you like them?

2 If you see someone play **live**, are you there in the audience?

3 If something is **visual**, do you hear it?

4 If somebody **releases** an album, can you buy it?

No

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

5 If somebody is **well known**, are they famous? \_\_\_\_\_

6 If somebody **admires** you, do they dislike you? \_\_\_\_\_

7 If a performer **is touring**, does he play live music? \_\_\_\_\_

8 If you listen to a **recording**, is it live? \_\_\_\_\_

9 Is a **living** artist still **alive**? \_\_\_\_\_

10 Do **composers** write music? \_\_\_\_\_

### 5 Complete the words in the texts.

**Gilberto Gil** is a Brazilian singer and guitarist, and one of his country's most talented ► **songwriters** \_\_\_\_\_. As a young musician in the 1950s, he was influenced by the bossa nova style of Joao Gilberto, but he didn't (1) r \_\_\_\_\_ his first album, *Louvação*, until 1967. He travelled widely in the 1970s, becoming very (2) w \_\_\_\_\_ known, and then he made a big (3) i \_\_\_\_\_ back in Brazil in 1980 when he introduced reggae to the Brazilian people with his (4) r \_\_\_\_\_ of the Bob Marley song *No woman, no cry*. His (5) f \_\_\_\_\_ love his music for the rhythms and melodies, but he is also (6) a \_\_\_\_\_ outside of music for his work in politics and for social causes.

I'm still a great (7) f \_\_\_\_\_ of **Prince**. He was a wonderful singer and (8) s \_\_\_\_\_, and I was lucky enough to see him (9) l \_\_\_\_\_ on two occasions when he was (10) t \_\_\_\_\_ in Europe. His performances made a huge (11) i \_\_\_\_\_ on me, not just because of the music, but also because he was such a (12) v \_\_\_\_\_ performer with his clothing and dancing. He had great success with albums such as *Purple Rain* and *Sign 'O' the Times*, and he was a major (13) i \_\_\_\_\_ on many other performers. I wish he was still (14) a \_\_\_\_\_ today making music, but (15) s \_\_\_\_\_, he died when he was only 57.



### TEST YOURSELF

A TV (Television) programmes

Channel 5	
7.00-7.30	early evening news with newsreader Gemma Matheson
7.30-8.00	The Eldersons - soap opera
8.00-9.00	documentary: Where does all the rubbish go?
9.00-10.00	Having a Laugh: game show with host Arlo Walsh
10.00-10.40	episode 1 of the new Icelandic drama series The Blackwood Lake
10.40-11.30	talk show with host Tanya Kaye and guests
11.30-1.20	film: The Lost Continent

GLOSSARY	
channel	a TV station
newsreader	a person who reads the news on TV, radio, etc.
soap opera	a story about the lives of a group of people that is on TV or radio every day or several times a week: ALSO soap: I don't watch soaps.
documentary	a film or TV programme that gives facts about sth
game show	a TV programme in which people play games or answer questions to win prizes
host	a person who introduces a TV or radio programme, and talks to guests
episode	one part of a TV or radio story that is shown or told in different parts
drama series	a number of programmes on TV or radio which have the same main characters and each tell a complete story
talk show	a TV programme where famous people are invited to talk about themselves SYN chat show
guest	a person who is invited to a special event, e.g. a talk show, a party

1 Find the end of each word or compound noun.

drama | channel talk show documentary host guest soap opera series episode chat show

2 Match 1-5 with a-f.

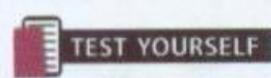
- |           |       |           |
|-----------|-------|-----------|
| ▶ special | c     | a opera   |
| 1 drama   | ..... | b Four    |
| 2 chat    | ..... | c guest ✓ |
| 3 news    | ..... | d series  |
| 4 soap    | ..... | e reader  |
| 5 Channel | ..... | f show    |

3 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ Most soap operas are on during the early evening.
- 1 They're showing the first ..... of a new drama series tonight.
- 2 I don't like that ..... show where young women try to find boyfriends.
- 3 The thing is, ..... shows are only interesting if the ..... are interesting.
- 4 Which ..... is that new game show on? ~ ITV, I think.
- 5 I don't like ....., but my grandmother watches them every evening - never misses one.
- 6 There have been more female chat show ..... in the last fifteen years, which is good.
- 7 I loved that ..... series about the Swedish detective called Saga.
- 8 I saw a wonderful ..... about the strong social relationships that form between elephants.

4 ABOUT YOU What do you think of these programmes? Do you often watch them? Write your answers, or talk to another student.

soap operas documentaries the news game shows chat shows drama series



## B How do you watch TV?

According to a national report, the **youth** market, and particularly young people aged 16-24 years old, are watching **far less** TV on traditional sets than they were in 2010. Those still watching on TV sets are **typically** over 65. This is because there has been a **shift** to digital viewing (e.g. on YouTube), together with the rise of online services such as Netflix and Amazon.

The report **indicates** a growing difference in the **lifestyle** habits of younger and older **viewers**. **On top of that**, younger viewers are also more **critical** of the standard of traditional TV. They complained about the number of **repeats** and the lack of variety.

### SPOTLIGHT TV

TV (= television) can be countable or uncountable.

- I watch a lot of TV. The film is on TV tonight.
- There's a TV set in every room.

### GLOSSARY

<b>youth</b>	the part of your life when you are young: <i>I travelled a lot in my youth.</i>
<b>aged</b>	at the age mentioned: <i>two children, aged 5 and 7</i>
<b>far (less) typically</b>	very much (less) <b>OPP far (more)</b> in a way that shows the usual qualities or features of a particular person or thing
<b>shift</b>	a change in what people think about sth
<b>viewing</b>	watching. A person who watches TV is a <b>viewer</b> .
<b>indicate</b>	show that sth is true, exists, or will happen
<b>lifestyle on top of sth</b>	the way that people live their lives in addition to sth else; as well as sth else
<b>critical</b>	If you are <b>critical of sb or sth</b> , you say that they are wrong or bad in some way.
<b>repeat</b>	A <b>repeat</b> is a show that has already been on TV and is shown again.

### 5 Complete the common phrases in the sentences.

- ▶ What's on TV tonight?
- 1 He was very critical the programme.
  - 2 How many TV do most families have?
  - 3 Most people watch a lot of TV their youth.
  - 4 I watch less TV than I used to.
  - 5 It's a very old TV set and on of that, it doesn't get many channels.

### 6 Rewrite the sentences using the word in capitals in their correct form. The meaning must stay the same.

- ▶ They've got a seven-year-old boy. AGED They've got a boy aged seven.
- 1 They've shown that programme before. REPEAT \_\_\_\_\_
  - 2 I didn't like the programme. In addition to that, I was too tired to finish watching it. TOP \_\_\_\_\_
  - 3 Young people usually prefer online viewing. TYPICAL \_\_\_\_\_
  - 4 Five million people watched that programme. VIEWERS \_\_\_\_\_
  - 5 I watched a lot of TV when I was young. YOUTH \_\_\_\_\_
  - 6 There was a lot of criticism of the programme. CRITICAL \_\_\_\_\_

### 7 Complete the dialogues.

- ▶ Was the programme very long? ~ Yes, and on top of that, it was quite boring.
- 1 Didn't she like it? ~ No, she was very \_\_\_\_\_ of it.
  - 2 Do people watch TV differently today? ~ Yes, there has been a \_\_\_\_\_ away from traditional to online viewing.
  - 3 Why are younger and older viewers so different? ~ They just have a different \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 4 Do the figures show a change? ~ Yes, they \_\_\_\_\_ a big change.
  - 5 Were the children quite young? ~ I think they were \_\_\_\_\_ 10 and 12.
  - 6 Do you watch TV online? ~ Yes, \_\_\_\_\_ more than I did a few years ago.



### TEST YOURSELF

## A Life as an editor

Meet Cyrus Davis, who has spent all his working life in **journalism**. He's been a news reporter, sports reporter, and **headline** writer. Now, he works for *The Evening Star*, a local **daily** paper **published** in Birmingham, and he is the **editor** of the paper's online **version**. "*The Star* covers **current affairs**, sport, crime, and so on, and there is always at least one **item** about a **cultural** subject. But the sad truth is that newspaper sales are falling fast, and newspapers could disappear **forever** if the industry cannot make money from online sales."



### GLOSSARY

<b>journalism</b>	the profession of collecting and writing about news in newspapers, on TV, etc. The person who does this is a <b>journalist</b> . A <b>journal</b> is a newspaper or magazine that deals with a specific subject or profession: a <i>medical journal</i>
<b>headline</b>	the title of a newspaper article (see next page)
<b>daily</b>	happening every day. A <b>daily (news) paper</b> is published every day, except Sunday.
<b>publish</b>	prepare and print a book, newspaper, etc.
<b>editor</b>	the person who prepares and controls a newspaper
<b>version</b>	sth that has the same basic content as another thing but which is presented in a different way
<b>cover</b>	include
<b>current affairs</b>	important political or social events happening now ( <b>current</b> = happening now)
<b>(news) item</b>	<b>SYN</b> a piece of news
<b>cultural</b>	connected with the ideas and way of life of a group of people or a country
<b>forever</b>	for all time

- Circle the adjectives and adverbs.  
▶ current international publish daily journalism forever editor currently headline cultural journal version
- Is the meaning the same or different? Write S or D.  
▶ She edits the newspaper. / She's the editor. S  
1 It's a daily paper. / You can buy the paper every day, except Sunday. ....  
2 I read the article. / I read the headline. ....  
3 They published the book. / They wrote the book. ....  
4 The paper includes sport. / The paper covers sport. ....  
5 I want to work in journalism. / I want to work in current affairs. ....  
6 I believe it's a current problem. / I believe it's a daily problem. ....  
7 I've only read one news item so far. / I've only read one piece of news so far. ....  
8 It will go on forever. / It will go on a long time. ....
- Complete the sentences.  
▶ My son works in journalism .....  
1 Good papers provide opinions on c..... events such as plays, exhibitions, etc.  
2 My daughter reads everything in the news. She wants to be a j.....  
3 The paper is p..... in London and sold all over the south-east of England.  
4 There was a funny h..... on the front page of the paper this morning.  
5 My grandfather was e..... of a national newspaper.  
6 Do you buy a d..... paper, or do you read the online v.....?  
7 I think newspapers are still the best place to read about c..... a.....  
8 I read a lot of scientific j..... when I'm doing research for my studies.
- ABOUT YOU** Write answers to the questions, or talk to another student.  
1 Do you still read a newspaper? If not, why not? .....

### TEST YOURSELF

## B Headlines

<b>FOOTBALL CLUB BANS ALL ALCOHOL</b>	<b>ban</b> say that sth must not happen; not allow sth <b>ban</b> <i>n</i>
<b>CAR WORKERS PROTEST IN CITY CENTRE</b>	<b>protest</b> say or show that you do not agree with sth, especially in public <b>protest</b> <i>n</i> (notice the stress difference between the verb and the noun)
<b>SUICIDE RATE INCREASING AMONG YOUNG MEN</b>	<b>suicide</b> the act of killing yourself: <b>commit suicide</b> <b>rate</b> the speed of sth or how often it happens <b>among</b> in a particular group of people
<b>FUEL DUTY TO GO UP IN SPRING</b>	<b>fuel</b> Petrol and diesel are types of <b>fuel</b> . <b>duty</b> money (called <b>tax</b> ) that you must pay the government when you bring sth from another country into your country
<b>MAN CLAIMS DOG CAN DO MAGIC TRICKS</b>	<b>claim sth/that</b> say that sth is true <b>claim</b> <i>n</i> <b>trick</b> sth clever that you have learned to do. A <b>magic trick</b> is a trick that seems impossible.
<b>MINISTER QUILTS IN ARGUMENT OVER PUBLIC SPENDING</b>	<b>quit</b> leave a job <b>spending</b> the amount of money spent by a government or organization
<b>GOVERNMENT TO RAISE RETIREMENT AGE AGAIN</b>	<b>raise</b> make sth bigger, higher, stronger, etc. <b>retirement</b> the age that people stop working (usually 65 or higher) <b>retire</b> <i>v</i>

**5** These sentences are all false. Change them so that they are true.

- ▶ Fuel duty is a responsibility. Fuel duty is a tax.
- 1 If you raise something, it stays the same. \_\_\_\_\_ 4 If you claim something, it is true. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 If somebody commits suicide, they are alive. \_\_\_\_\_ 5 If you retire, you stop working for the day. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 If you protest against something, you are happy. \_\_\_\_\_ 6 If you quit, you start your job. \_\_\_\_\_

**6** Match 1-8 with a-i.

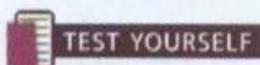
- ▶ It was a protest \_\_\_\_\_ **b** \_\_\_\_\_
- 1 He claims that his story \_\_\_\_\_ **a** at the age of 60.
- 2 We don't know why she committed \_\_\_\_\_ **b** against the government. ✓
- 3 The government will increase fuel \_\_\_\_\_ **c** is true, but I'm not sure.
- 4 They want to raise the \_\_\_\_\_ **d** mobile phones in class.
- 5 My father retired \_\_\_\_\_ **e** has slowed down.
- 6 The rate of inflation \_\_\_\_\_ **f** standard in schools.
- 7 The school has banned \_\_\_\_\_ **g** from my uncle.
- 8 I learned this trick \_\_\_\_\_ **h** suicide.
- \_\_\_\_\_ **i** duty soon.

**7** Complete the sentences.

- ▶ What do workers protest \_\_\_\_\_ about in your country?
- 1 Is the birth \_\_\_\_\_ going up or going down?
- 2 Is the \_\_\_\_\_ age 65 for both men and women in your country?
- 3 Does fuel \_\_\_\_\_ on petrol and diesel often go up?
- 4 Can you think of a famous politician who \_\_\_\_\_ his job? Why did he leave?
- 5 Can you think of something restaurants or cinemas have \_\_\_\_\_ in your country?
- 6 Do you think that \_\_\_\_\_ is more common \_\_\_\_\_ young people now than 20 years ago?
- 7 What do you think about public \_\_\_\_\_ on the health service in your country?

**4** **ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY** Can you answer the questions in Exercise 7? Write your answers, or talk to another student.

- ▶ What do workers protest about in your country? Salaries or working conditions.



## A Types of books

As I work for a **publisher**, I'm always using **reference books** such as dictionaries. But I read a lot for **pleasure** too, and I particularly like **poetry**. At home all my books are arranged in **alphabetical order** (I know that's a bit strange!). I've also got lots of novels from different **categories** – **crime stories**, **ghost stories**, **historical novels**, **murder mysteries**, **science fiction**, etc. – but there is **non-fiction** as well. I read quite a lot of **biographies**. My husband says I'm book-crazy.



ghost

### GLOSSARY

<b>publisher</b>	a company or a person that prepares and prints books for selling. A <b>publishing company</b> publishes books.
<b>publish v</b>	
<b>reference book</b>	a book you use to find a piece of information
<b>pleasure</b>	a feeling of enjoyment
<b>poetry</b>	poems in general. A <b>poem</b> is a piece of writing arranged in separate lines that expresses thoughts and feelings. A person who writes poetry is a <b>poet</b> .
<b>alphabetical</b>	listed in the same way as the <b>alphabet</b> : A, B, C, etc.
<b>category</b>	a group of things or people that are similar to each other
<b>crime story</b>	a story about a crime
<b>historical</b>	connected with real people or events in the past
<b>mystery</b>	a story in which the events are only explained at the end
<b>science fiction</b>	books about events that take place in the future <i>SYN sci-fi inf</i>
<b>non-fiction</b>	books about real facts, people, events, etc. <i>OPP fiction</i>
<b>biography</b>	the story of sb's life written by someone else. An <b>autobiography</b> is the story of sb's life written by that person.

### 1 Complete the table.

murder mystery ✓ historical novel	reference book biography	ghost stories sci-fi	autobiography crime stories
<b>Fiction</b>		<b>Non-fiction</b>	
▶ murder      mystery			
_____		_____	
_____		_____	
_____		_____	

### 2 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ A dictionary is arranged in alphabetical order.
- I don't read \_\_\_\_\_ stories when I'm in bed in case I can't sleep afterwards.
  - Shakespeare is famous for his plays, but he also wrote beautiful \_\_\_\_\_.
  - Dictionaries are a kind of \_\_\_\_\_ book.
  - What kind of books do you read for \_\_\_\_\_ in the evenings?
  - Do you read crime stories? ~ Yes, I'm reading a murder \_\_\_\_\_ at the moment.
  - What's the tenth letter of the \_\_\_\_\_? ~ It's 'J'.
  - Roy Jenkins wrote a famous \_\_\_\_\_ of Winston Churchill.
  - Keats, Baudelaire and Goethe are all famous \_\_\_\_\_.
  - The students' names were arranged in \_\_\_\_\_ order.
  - Who \_\_\_\_\_ this book? ~ Oxford University Press.

### 3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or talk to another student.

- Do you prefer fiction or non-fiction? \_\_\_\_\_
- Do you read for work, pleasure, or both? \_\_\_\_\_
- Do you like sci-fi, murder mysteries or poetry? \_\_\_\_\_
- Do you read novels? If so, which categories do you prefer? \_\_\_\_\_
- Have you ever read a biography or an autobiography? If so, whose? \_\_\_\_\_
- Do you keep anything in alphabetical order? \_\_\_\_\_



### TEST YOURSELF

## B Choosing a book

Booksellers **survey**: how did you choose the last book you read?

I was in a bookshop and the **title** and front **cover** just **attracted my attention**.

It was a **recommendation** by a friend – he said it was **original** and had a good **plot**.

I read a bit of the first **chapter** in a bookshop – it was interesting and **well written**.

I read a **summary** of the book and it was by an author who is **well known**.

I love **narrative** fiction where love is the main **theme** of the book.

### GLOSSARY

<b>survey</b>	asking questions to find out what people think about sth
<b>title</b>	the name of sth, e.g. a book or film
<b>cover</b>	the outside part of a book, magazine, etc.
<b>attract sb's attention</b>	If sth <b>attracts your attention</b> , it interests you so that you want to look at it.
<b>recommendation</b>	saying that sth is good or useful
<b>recommend v</b>	
<b>original</b>	new and different
<b>plot</b>	what happens in a book, play or film
<b>chapter</b>	one of the parts of a book: <i>The book has 20 chapters.</i>
<b>summary</b>	a short way of telling sth by giving only the most important facts <b>summarize v</b>
<b>narrative</b>	describing events or telling a story
<b>narrative n</b>	
<b>theme</b>	the subject of a piece of writing, a talk, a film, etc.

### SPOTLIGHT compound adjectives with well

There are a number of adjectives with **well** + past participle, e.g. **well written** (of a book, article, etc.), **well known** (= famous), **well informed** (= knowing a lot), etc. A hyphen is used when the adjective is followed by a noun.

- a **well-known** author
- She's **well known**.

4 Look at the underlined letters in the example, then underline the letters in the other words with the same sound. Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

- ▶ cover      attract      attention      chapter      original  
                  narrative      summary      summarize      recommendation

5 Complete the text.

My cousin has just written book. He's not ▶ well known, but it might attract a lot of (1) a \_\_\_\_\_ because the (2) t \_\_\_\_\_ is 'How to make a lot of money by doing almost nothing'. I think that's quite an (3) o \_\_\_\_\_ title and if the (4) t \_\_\_\_\_ of the book is making money, a lot of people will read it. It was published last month, and he gave me a copy as a present. I've read the first couple of (5) c \_\_\_\_\_ about selling things on the internet, and it's both interesting and (6) w \_\_\_\_\_ written. On the front (7) c \_\_\_\_\_ there's a picture of my cousin lying in bed.

6 Complete the sentences.

▶ One of my friends recommended a book to me, but I haven't read it.

- I enjoy reading fast-moving, \_\_\_\_\_ fiction.
- I like books where the main \_\_\_\_\_ is war.
- I read a novel mainly for the story, so the \_\_\_\_\_ is the most important thing.
- If I don't like the first \_\_\_\_\_ of a book, I stop reading it.
- When I buy a book, I often don't notice what's on the front \_\_\_\_\_.
- I only read books by authors who are well \_\_\_\_\_.
- I think a \_\_\_\_\_ by a friend is always the best way to choose a book.
- When organizations ask me to complete an online \_\_\_\_\_, I almost always say 'no'.

### ABOUT YOU

7 **ABOUT YOU** Look at the sentences in Exercise 6 again. Are they true for you? Write your answers, or talk to another student.



### TEST YOURSELF

## A The Olympics



1

### Summer Olympics: facts and figures



2



3



4



5

The first games took place in 776 BC, with one **competition**: a **race** of about 192 metres.

The first modern Olympics took place in 1896 with 241 **competitors taking part** in nine sports, including **athletics**<sup>1</sup>, **cycling**<sup>2</sup>, **fencing**<sup>3</sup>, **gymnastics**<sup>4</sup>, **weightlifting**<sup>5</sup> and **shooting**. By 2016, there were over 11,000 people **competing** in 28 sports.

Gymnast Larissa Latynina **holds** the **record** for the woman with the most Olympic **medals** (18). She later **coached** the national gymnastics team.

Boxing is now the only Olympic sport where **professionals** are not allowed to compete.

### GLOSSARY

<b>figure</b>	an amount in numbers
<b>race</b>	a competition to see who is fastest or best, or who wins
<b>take part (in sth)</b>	join with other people in an activity SYN <b>participate</b>
<b>shooting</b>	the sport of shooting animals, birds or objects with guns <b>shoot v</b>
<b>record</b>	the best performance in sth, especially sport: <b>hold a record</b> have a record; <b>break a record</b> make a new record
<b>medal</b>	a piece of metal given to an athlete who comes 1st, 2nd or 3rd
<b>coach</b>	train sb to do a sport, learn a skill, etc. <b>coach n</b>
<b>professional</b>	sb who plays a sport for money as their job <b>OPP amateur</b>

### SPOTLIGHT *competition*

A **competition** is a situation in which two or more people are trying to win something or be better than someone. The person is a **competitor**. **competitive adj**; **compete v**

▪ He is **competing in** the Boston Marathon.

Use the **APP** to check the pronunciation and stress on these words.

### 1 Complete the sports.

▶ shooting \_\_\_\_\_  
1 w \_\_\_\_\_

2 c \_\_\_\_\_  
3 g \_\_\_\_\_

4 f \_\_\_\_\_  
5 a \_\_\_\_\_

### 2 Circle the correct answer(s). Both answers may be correct.

▶ It's a long race / medal.

- What are the official **figures** / **competitors** for the games?
- He broke the **record** / **competition**.
- Did she win a **race** / **medal**?
- Professionals** / **Amateurs** do something as a job.

▶ It was a hard race / competition.

- Anyone can **take part** / **participate**.
- The race **takes place** / **takes part** on Tuesday.
- She **holds** / **broke** the record.
- He's a **competitor** / **competition**.

### 3 Complete the sentences.

▶ There are about 3,000 competitors in the modern Olympics.

- The latest \_\_\_\_\_ from *Sport England* show that over 60% of the population do at least 150 minutes of exercise a week.
- It's hard for poor countries to \_\_\_\_\_ against rich countries in certain events.
- A Soviet gymnast holds the \_\_\_\_\_ for the woman with the most Olympic medals.
- There are a few Olympic amateurs, but now most of the \_\_\_\_\_ are \_\_\_\_\_.
- The marathon (just over 42kms) is the longest \_\_\_\_\_ on foot in the Olympics.
- My uncle won a silver \_\_\_\_\_ in the shooting \_\_\_\_\_ at the 1996 Olympics.
- Michael Phelps \_\_\_\_\_ four individual world swimming records at the Beijing Olympics in 2008. He was \_\_\_\_\_ by Bob Bowman throughout his career.
- The biggest sport in the Olympics is athletics, so every event is very \_\_\_\_\_.
- Boxing is now the one sport where only \_\_\_\_\_ can take part.
- How many sportsmen and women \_\_\_\_\_ in the last Olympics?



### TEST YOURSELF

## B The World Cup



The World Cup is an international football **championship**, and like the Olympic Games, it is also **held** every four years. First of all, countries have to **qualify** in their different continents (**except for the host nation**) before they can take part in the final **tournament**. The first World Cup was in Uruguay, in 1930, with just 13 countries and that has now risen to 32 countries in **recent** tournaments. The most successful team has been Brazil: they have won the **final** and the competition five times. The **current champions** (in 2019) are France, but that may be different by 2022.

### SPOTLIGHT *championship and tournament*

A **championship** is a competition between different players or teams to find the best. It may take place over days, weeks or even a year. The winner(s) is/are **champion(s)**. A **tournament** is a competition in which players or teams play against each other, over days or perhaps weeks. The two words are very similar in meaning.

- He won a medal at the European Athletics Championships.
- a golf/basketball/tennis, etc. **tournament**

### GLOSSARY

<b>cup</b>	1 a large metal cup given as a prize 2 the competition to win a cup
<b>hold</b>	make sth happen: <b>hold a competition / talks / a meeting</b>
<b>qualify</b>	win the right to enter a competition or continue in it
<b>except (for)</b>	not including sb or sth: <i>Everybody went <b>except (for)</b> me.</i>
<b>host</b>	usually a person who invites people to their home, but also a country that invites other countries to visit them for a competition, meeting, etc.
<b>nation</b>	a country and all the people who live in it
<b>recent</b>	that happened or began only a short time ago
<b>final</b>	the last game or race in a competition to decide the winner
<b>current</b>	happening or used now <b>currently</b> <i>adv</i>

#### 4 Circle the nouns.

current cup hold host recent qualification except for championship qualification nation

#### 5 One word is missing in each sentence. What is it, and where does it go?

except for final tournament cup recent champions held ✓ host nations

- ▶ The World Cup is / every four years. held
- 1 The first nation was Uruguay. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 The first was held in 1930. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Thirteen different took part in the first tournament. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Every country has to qualify, the host nation. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Thirty-two teams have competed in championships. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 Brazil has won the five times and therefore the championship. \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 The in 2018 were France. \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 The winners receive a large. \_\_\_\_\_

#### 6 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ No team has won the tournament five times, except for Brazil.
- 1 The 2026 World \_\_\_\_\_ will be \_\_\_\_\_ in the United States, Canada and Mexico, with 48 \_\_\_\_\_ taking part.
- 2 Germany were \_\_\_\_\_ in 2014. They played Argentina in the \_\_\_\_\_ and won 1-0.
- 3 Many people believe that the 1970 World Cup was one of the greatest \_\_\_\_\_ in its history.
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_ (in 2018), there are 134 teams that have entered the World Cup championship but have never \_\_\_\_\_ for the final stages of the tournament.
- 5 In 2010, the \_\_\_\_\_ nation was South Africa, and the \_\_\_\_\_ was won by Spain.



TEST YOURSELF

## A People and equipment



**crash helmet**  
Motor racing drivers wear a crash helmet.



**racket**  
Tennis players hit the ball with a racket.



**whistle**  
Referees blow a whistle.



**flag**  
Linesmen wave a flag.



**stick**  
Hockey players hit the ball with a stick.



**bat**  
Baseball players hit the ball with a bat.



**net**  
Goalkeepers try to stop the ball going into the net.



**oval ball**  
Rugby players play with an oval ball.



**shouting**  
Supporters (also called fans) use their voices and shout a lot.

### SPOTLIGHT the suffix *-er* and *player*

We usually add the suffix *-er* to a sport or an action verb to form the person who does the sport.

**footballer golfer swimmer skier racing driver boxer**

In some cases, we use **player**:

**tennis player ice hockey player rugby player baseball player**

But:

**athletics/athlete gymnastics/gymnast**

### 1 Cover the spotlight box and complete the list of people.

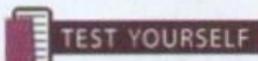
- ▶ football footballer
- 1 tennis \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 golf \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 athletics \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 boxing \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 (motor) racing \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 rugby \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 ski \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 gymnastics \_\_\_\_\_

### 2 Answer the questions.

- ▶ Who uses a bat? A baseball player
- 1 Who blows a whistle? \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Who stands in front of a net? \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Who wears a crash helmet? \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Who waves a flag? \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Who uses a stick? \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 Who shouts a lot? \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 Who uses a racket? \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 Who plays with an oval ball? \_\_\_\_\_

### 3 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ You use a bat when you're playing baseball.
- 1 Lewis Hamilton took off his crash \_\_\_\_\_ and waved to his supporters.
- 2 The referee blew his \_\_\_\_\_ for the end of the game.
- 3 One of the players hit the ball so hard that his hockey \_\_\_\_\_ broke.
- 4 The linesman was \_\_\_\_\_ his \_\_\_\_\_, but the referee didn't notice.
- 5 The supporters in front of me were angry and they were \_\_\_\_\_ at the referee.
- 6 They scored, and the goalkeeper had to pick the ball out of the back of the \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7 Zverev picked up his \_\_\_\_\_ and went to the back of the tennis court.
- 8 In baseball, you hit the ball with a baseball \_\_\_\_\_.

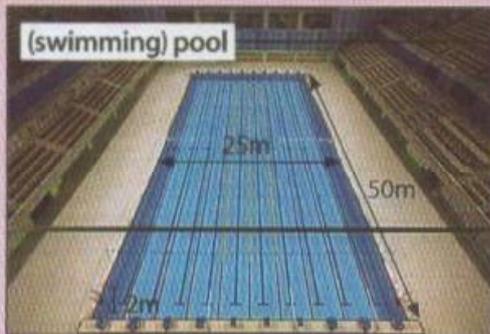


## B Places

The Camp Nou Stadium, the ground of Barcelona Football Club, is the largest stadium in Europe and holds 98,800 spectators.

The Centre Court at Wimbledon is famous worldwide, and now has a retractable roof (= it opens and closes). The court can therefore be covered quickly in bad weather, so matches can be played indoors.

A standard Olympic swimming pool is 50 metres long, 25 metres wide, and has a minimum depth of two metres.



### GLOSSARY

<b>stadium</b>	a large structure where people sit and watch sport
<b>ground</b>	an area of land that is used for something special: <b>a sports ground</b>
<b>club</b>	A football <b>club</b> is the team, the management and the ground.
<b>spectator</b>	a person watching an event, especially a sports event
<b>court</b>	a place where tennis, basketball or badminton are played
<b>worldwide</b>	everywhere in the world <b>worldwide adj</b> SYN <b>all over the world</b>
<b>therefore formal</b>	for that reason
<b>covered</b>	If sth is <b>covered</b> , it has sth over it.
<b>standard</b>	normal, not special
<b>minimum</b>	smallest possible or smallest allowed OPP <b>maximum</b>

### SPOTLIGHT *long, wide, deep; length, width, depth*

**Long, wide** and **deep** can describe measurements.

- The pool is **50 metres long**. = The **length** of the pool is 50 metres.
- The pool is **25 metres wide**. = The **width** of the pool is 25 metres.
- The pool is **two metres deep** at one end. = The **depth** of the pool at one end is two metres.

#### 4 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ The team, its management and the ground are all part of a football club.
- 1 The noun from **long** is \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 2 The noun from **wide** is \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 3 The opposite of **minimum** is \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 4 The noun from **deep** is \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 5 **All over the world** is another way of saying \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 6 **Therefore** is another word for \_\_\_\_\_.

#### 5 Complete the words in each text.

- 1 Unfortunately, we don't have a ▶ standard Olympic swimming p\_\_\_\_\_. The one we use for competitions is only 25 metres l\_\_\_\_\_ and 15 metres w\_\_\_\_\_. The m\_\_\_\_\_ d\_\_\_\_\_ is for Olympic pools is 1.35 metres, but five metres at the diving end.
- 2 Arsenal Football Club built a new s\_\_\_\_\_, which now holds over 60,000 s\_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 The French Open Tennis Championship at Roland Garros attracts w\_\_\_\_\_ attention from tennis fans, and is the only one of the four major tournaments that is played on a clay c\_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 The Millenium rugby s\_\_\_\_\_ in Cardiff also has a retractable roof, and t\_\_\_\_\_ the ground can be c\_\_\_\_\_ in wet weather and the games played in much better conditions.

#### 6 Can you answer these quiz questions with the name of the sport and the place?

- ▶ Stade de France is a famous rugby stadium in Paris.
- 1 The Bernabeu is a famous \_\_\_\_\_ stadium in \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 2 Centre Court at \_\_\_\_\_ is the most famous court for \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 3 Wembley is a famous \_\_\_\_\_ stadium in \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 4 Monza in \_\_\_\_\_ and Hochenheim in \_\_\_\_\_ are famous worldwide for \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 5 Juventus is a famous \_\_\_\_\_ team in \_\_\_\_\_.

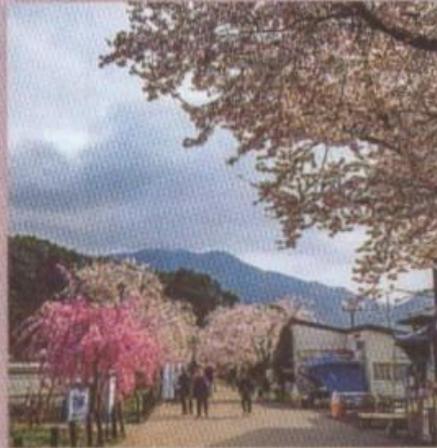


### TEST YOURSELF



### La Tomatina: the world's biggest tomato fight

This festival takes place every August in Bunol, Spain. People come from all over the world to participate in this huge social occasion, which includes music, dancing and fireworks<sup>1</sup>. The main event is a tomato fight in which enormous quantities of overripe tomatoes are thrown in the streets for exactly one hour. The festival was banned in the 1950s, but in 1957 the young folk of the town protested by organizing a parade in which they buried a large tomato as if it were a dead body. The festival started again the following year.



### Cherry Blossom Festival, Japan

Cherry blossom is the national flower of Japan. As spring approaches, people make special trips to various sites to see the first signs of the cherry trees in flower, which are sometimes lit up at night. The festival includes all sorts of delicious food, games, rides, folk music, religious ceremonies and a beauty contest.



fireworks



### The Rio Carnival (‘Carnaval’)

One of the most incredible entertainments in the world, Carnival is a four-day celebration of music, dance, food and drink, all over Rio. The event means a lot to the people from the poorest neighbourhoods, who work hard for months preparing for it. It is an opportunity for the whole community to go out and have fun together. It ends with the Samba Parade for which the performers and dancers dress up in the most amazing costumes.

#### SPOTLIGHT religion

Religion is believing in one or more gods and the activities connected with this. Christians, Jews and Muslims believe that God made the world. religious adj

#### GLOSSARY

<b>festival</b>	a series of public events, e.g. concerts and shows	<b>contest</b>	a game or competition that people try to win
<b>occasion</b>	a time when sth happens	<b>entertainment</b>	things that people enjoy watching and listening to, e.g. TV, film, music, etc.
<b>folk inf</b>	people in general	<b>entertain v</b>	
<b>parade</b>	a celebration of a special event, usually with bands in the streets	<b>celebration</b>	a time when you enjoy yourself because you have a special reason to be happy
<b>bury</b>	put sth in a hole in the ground and cover it, especially a dead body	<b>celebrate v</b>	
<b>approach</b>	come nearer to sb/sth in distance or time: <i>We approached the church.</i>	<b>mean a lot (to sb)</b>	be very important (to sb)
<b>site</b>	a place where sth happens or happened	<b>neighbourhood</b>	an area of a town and the people who live there
<b>light sth up</b>	make sth bright with light	<b>community</b>	all the people who live in an area or town
<b>folk adj</b>	traditional in a community; of a traditional style: <i>folk music/art</i>	<b>have fun</b>	enjoy yourself
<b>ceremony</b>	a formal public or religious event	<b>dancer</b>	sb who dances
<b>beauty</b>	the quality of being beautiful	<b>dress up</b>	put on special clothes either for fun or for a formal event
		<b>costume</b>	special clothes people wear for a parade, a play, a party, etc.

1 Find words in the box with the same stress pattern as the words below. Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

entertainment	bury ✓	celebrate	contest	religion	neighbourhood	parade
---------------	--------	-----------	---------	----------	---------------	--------

▶ beauty bury ..... approach ..... festival .....  
 occasion ..... celebration .....

2 Yes or No?

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| ▶ If you <b>bury</b> something, do you put it in the ground? <u>Yes</u> | 5 Is a <b>celebration</b> a time when people enjoy themselves? .....      |
| 1 If you <b>approach</b> something, do you get nearer to it? .....      | 6 Is <b>folk music</b> very modern? .....                                 |
| 2 Is a <b>neighbourhood</b> all the people in a town? .....             | 7 If something <b>means a lot</b> , is it hard to understand? .....       |
| 3 Is a <b>parade</b> something you buy? .....                           | 8 Is a <b>community</b> all the people who live in an area or town? ..... |
| 4 Are <b>fireworks</b> generally used to start a fire? .....            |   |

3 Match 1-7 with a-h.

- |                                     |                                      |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| ▶ The older folk ..... <u>e</u>     | a contest.                           |
| 1 Fireworks .....                   | b songs on guitar.                   |
| 2 Lots of people want to .....      | c lit up the night sky.              |
| 3 The festival means .....          | d fun together.                      |
| 4 Everyone just wants to have ..... | e didn't like the tomato festival. ✓ |
| 5 People dress up in .....          | f take part in the event.            |
| 6 There is even a beauty .....      | g a lot to the community.            |
| 7 They played folk .....            | h special costumes.                  |

4 Replace the underlined word(s) with a single word which has a similar meaning.

- ▶ We had a good time watching the show. fun
- 1 The gold was put in a hole in the ground so that nobody could find it. .....
- 2 It's a wonderful time when people enjoy themselves. .....
- 3 Every year, the dancers put on special costumes for the parade. .....
- 4 It's an important religious event. .....
- 5 He didn't want to come any nearer to us. .....
- 6 The festival is an important event in the local area where I live. .....
- 7 There is a lot of music, theatre, dancing, etc. .....
- 8 It's an important occasion for the people in our small town. .....

5 Choose the best word(s) in the box to complete each sentence.

celebrate	costume	buried	religious ✓	God	contest	folk	a lot	occasion	site
-----------	---------	--------	-------------	-----	---------	------	-------	----------	------

- ▶ The ceremony isn't religious.
- 1 We visited the \_\_\_\_\_ of the old castle.
- 2 Carnival is a great \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 We wore a special \_\_\_\_\_ for the event.
- 4 The festival attracts older and younger \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 For me, the event means \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 Christians believe in \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7 On my birthday, I always \_\_\_\_\_ in some way.
- 8 I \_\_\_\_\_ my dead cat in the garden.

6 Complete the words in the questions.

- ▶ What important festivals \_\_\_\_\_ do you have in your country?
- 1 Do any festivals take place in your n \_\_\_\_\_? If so, which?
- 2 Have you ever d \_\_\_\_\_ u \_\_\_\_\_ in a special costume for a festival? If so, what did you wear?
- 3 Are there usually performances by professional singers and d \_\_\_\_\_?
- 4 Are there any special o \_\_\_\_\_ when there are f \_\_\_\_\_ at night?
- 5 Do these different events m \_\_\_\_\_ a lot to you personally? .....

3 ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 6, or ask another student.



## A Internet vocabulary

## Frequently asked questions (FAQs)

What is <b>data</b> ?	It's information which is <b>stored</b> (= kept) on your computer.
What's a <b>search engine</b> ?	It's a computer program like Google which searches the internet for information.
What's a <b>network</b> ?	It's a set of computers that are connected and can exchange information.
What's a <b>username</b> ?	It's the name or special word you use that allows you to enter a computer program or system.
What's a <b>login</b> ?	When you start to use the computer, you usually type in a name or word that you've chosen. You <b>log on</b> when you start the computer, and you <b>log off</b> when you finish. When you want to use a particular app or website, you <b>log in</b> and then <b>log out</b> to leave it.
What is <b>software</b> ?	It's the programs which are used to to operate a computer.
What's an <b>app</b> ?	An <b>app</b> is a piece of software that you can put on a smartphone or tablet. You can use it to get information or to play a game.
What happens if my screen <b>freezes</b> ?	You can't move text or <b>images</b> (= pictures on a computer) because there's something wrong with the equipment or programs.

**SPOTLIGHT** hardware and software

**Hardware** is the machinery and electronic parts of a computer system, e.g. keyboard, monitor, printer.  
**Software** is the programs used to operate the computer, e.g. *educational software*, *music-sharing software*.

## 1 Correct the spelling mistake in each sentence. Write the correct word at the end.

- ▶ **FAQs** **FAQs** .....
- 1 What's his **loggin** for that site? .....
- 2 We had to buy expensive new **cardware**. .....
- 3 What's your **usedname** on Instagram? .....
- 4 I've used too much **date** on my phone. ....
- 5 This is a great **ap** for teenagers. ....
- 6 Does your computer **frieze** often? .....
- 7 The pictures are **stawed** on my phone. ....

## 2 Complete the sentences with words from the box.

network freezes ✓ app engine log in data log off images

- ▶ There's something wrong with my computer. The screen often **freezes**.
- 1 Our customers weren't able to ..... to our website this morning.
- 2 Be careful: if you use too much ..... on your phone, you'll have to pay more.
- 3 The most popular search ..... in the USA is Google. In China, it's Baidu.
- 4 A computer ..... is a group of computers that are connected together.
- 5 If you have a problem with your computer, ..... and then start it up again.
- 6 I've got an ..... that stops advertisements appearing on the site.
- 7 There are some sites where you can get free ..... to use on your website.

## 3 Complete the questions.

- ▶ Do you think computer **hardware** ..... is more expensive or cheaper than in the past?
- 1 Do you ever use s ..... to change photos or i ..... on your device?
- 2 Which s ..... engine do you use most often?
- 3 Do you use the same u ..... on all websites, or do you use different ones?
- 4 Do you use F ..... pages a lot on the web when you need some information?
- 5 Do you always l ..... o ..... when you've finished using banking or retail websites?
- 6 Which a ..... do you use most on your phone?

## 4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 3, or ask another student.



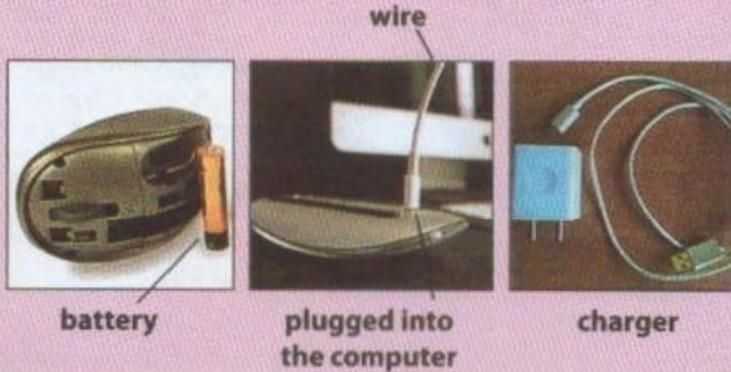
## TEST YOURSELF

## B Computer problems

If your computer does not **start up**, the first thing is to check that it is **connected** to the **power supply**.

When your mouse **batteries** are **low**, change them. With a **wireless** mouse, you need to **plug** it into the computer to **charge** it. You can also charge your phone with a **mobile charger**.

If your apps are **running** slowly, it may be because of a **file** that you have **downloaded** from a website. You need to find out how to **delete** or **remove** it. Alternatively, you may need to **update** the app.



### GLOSSARY

<b>start (sth) up</b>	begin working or make sth begin working: <b>start up</b> a computer/cat/engine
<b>connect sth (to sth)</b>	join together two or more things
<b>power supply</b>	energy used to make machines work an amount of sth that you need: <b>water/food/power supply</b>
<b>low</b>	If a battery is <b>low</b> , it does not have much energy left.
<b>wireless</b>	<b>Wireless</b> systems do not use wires, but communicate using electronic signals. A <b>wireless</b> mouse works on <b>Wi-Fi</b> .
<b>charge</b>	pass electricity through a device/battery so that it is stored there
<b>run</b>	If a computer program <b>runs</b> , it operates or works.
<b>file</b>	a set of information on a computer with a particular name
<b>download</b>	If you <b>download</b> information ( <i>data</i> ) from the internet, you copy it onto your computer/device. <b>Upload</b> means to send documents or data from your computer to the internet.
<b>delete</b>	take sth away that has been stored on a device <b>syn remove</b>
<b>update</b>	add the most recent information to sth

5 Is the pronunciation of the underlined sounds the same or different? Write S or D. Use the **app** to help you. Practise saying the words.

- |                         |          |                            |       |                              |       |
|-------------------------|----------|----------------------------|-------|------------------------------|-------|
| ▶ plug / <u>run</u>     | <u>S</u> | 3 delete / connect         | _____ | 6 charge / battery           | _____ |
| 1 mouse / <u>power</u>  | _____    | 4 download / <u>low</u>    | _____ | 7 <u>upload</u> / <u>low</u> | _____ |
| 2 supply / <u>Wi-Fi</u> | _____    | 5 supply / <u>wireless</u> | _____ |                              |       |

6 Circle the correct answers. Be careful: more than one answer may be correct.

- ▶ If your computer is off, you need to start it up / upload it / charge it.
- 1 You sometimes have to put batteries in a file / mouse / wire.
  - 2 If your mouse is wireless, you sometimes need to download it / charge it / plug it in.
  - 3 If you have a violent storm, it can cut off your water / power / energy supply.
  - 4 Do you know how to delete / remove / connect an app from your phone?
  - 5 You can download / upload / charge music from the internet to your phone.

7 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ The file contained all the documents I needed for the meeting, and I've gone and lost it!
- 1 My phone battery is very \_\_\_\_\_ - only 5% - I need to \_\_\_\_\_ it quickly. And I also need to \_\_\_\_\_ my mobile \_\_\_\_\_ in too.
  - 2 The computer wasn't working, but then I realised it wasn't \_\_\_\_\_ to the power \_\_\_\_\_. How silly of me!
  - 3 If you need to check your messages, go into that café and use their \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 4 Does your mouse use \_\_\_\_\_ or is it \_\_\_\_\_?
  - 5 I had to \_\_\_\_\_ some software from the internet, and it took me over an hour.
  - 6 I made a mistake and \_\_\_\_\_ a file I'd been working on, and now I can't find it.
  - 7 If an app \_\_\_\_\_ slowly, you might need to \_\_\_\_\_ it.
  - 8 When you \_\_\_\_\_ up this computer, it takes a long time because it's old.



## A Email

File Home Send/Receive Help

New e-mail Junk Folder Reply Reply All Forward Delete

Inbox

Hi Jack  
Have a look at the **attachment** (details of the party). Could you **forward it to Sam**, please? I don't have his email address. I'm also sending you a **link** to a map of the location.  
Best,  
Carina

Link: http://thewhiteswanofxford.com

  
**attachment**

## GLOSSARY

<b>junk (mail)</b>	advertising that is sent to people who have not asked for it
<b>delete</b>	remove sth that is written or stored on a computer: <i>delete a word/sentence/file</i>
<b>reply</b>	send an answer by email to an email you have been sent
<b>reply all</b>	send an answer by email to all the names included in the first message
<b>inbox</b>	the place on a computer, etc. where new email messages are shown
<b>forward sth (to sb)</b>	send a message, letter, etc. that you have received from one person to another person

1 Are the underlined sounds the same or different? Write S or D. Use the  to help you. Practise saying the words.

- ▶ sent / reply D
- 1 forward / attachment ..... 3 folder / forword ..... 5 inbox / links .....
- 2 delete / message ..... 4 junk / message ..... 6 forword / reply .....

2 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ Emails I've written to someone else go into sent mail folder.
- 1 Emails that have just arrived go into my .....
- 2 A document I include with an email message is an .....
- 3 If you want to see our room prices, click on this .....
- 4 I forgot to click on 'reply .....' so only one person in the group got my message.
- 5 Juno emailed me yesterday. I'll .. her message to you.
- 6 Advertisements usually go into my .. mail, and then I .. them.
- 7 I got an email telling me I'd got the job. I .. immediately to say how pleased I was.
- 8 I put messages I want to keep into different ..

3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- ▶ Do you always reply to emails immediately? I do if they're important or interesting.
- 1 Do you often attach documents or photos to your messages? If so, what kind of thing? .....
- 2 Do you delete messages when you've replied to them? .....
- 3 Is your junk folder completely full, or do you empty it regularly? .....
- 4 How many messages are there usually in your inbox? .....
- 5 Do you ever forward messages to other people? Why? / Why not? .....



## TEST YOURSELF

## B Social media

In the **digital** age, people have new ways of **networking** with each other. Here are some popular **social media** sites:

**Facebook** To join, you create a **profile**. Then you can upload photos, **selfies**, videos, etc. It's a good way of **keeping in contact** with your friends and family. You can also sell goods on Facebook.

**WhatsApp** allows **individuals** and groups to share instantly and make free calls.

**Twitter** Join Twitter and then you can **tweet** or **post** a **tweet**, which is like a short **blog**. You can also use Twitter to **promote** your business.



### SPOTLIGHT *social media*

**Social media** means websites and software programs such as Facebook and Twitter. These are used for **social networking** (= communicating with people you know or who have similar interests to you). **network** v

### GLOSSARY

<b>digital</b>	using an electronic system that uses numbers 1 and 0 to record sound or store information	<b>share</b>	tell other people online about your experiences, feelings and ideas; ALSO <b>share sth (with sb)</b>
<b>profile</b>	a description of yourself on a social networking site	<b>instantly</b>	without delay SYN <b>immediately; instant/ immediate</b> <i>adj</i>
<b>selfie</b>	a photo that you take of yourself, usually for use on social media	<b>tweet</b>	send a message using Twitter <b>tweet</b> <i>n</i>
<b>keep in contact (with sb)</b>	see, speak to or write to sb, often regularly	<b>post</b>	put information or pictures on a website
<b>individual</b>	a person considered separately from other people in the same group <b>individual</b> <i>adj</i>	<b>blog</b>	a personal record that sb puts on their website saying what they have done, or what they think about sth
		<b>promote</b>	help sell a product or service by advertising it

4 Is the stress in these pairs of words the same or different? Write S or D. Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

- |                          |       |   |                     |       |
|--------------------------|-------|---|---------------------|-------|
| ▶ popular / upload       | D     | 4 | Twitter / business  | ..... |
| 1 digital / media        | ..... | 5 | contact / network   | ..... |
| 2 individual / immediate | ..... | 6 | promote / selfie    | ..... |
| 3 profile / social       | ..... | 7 | digital / instantly | ..... |

5 Complete the texts.

#### BILLY-JO

I've never been good with ▶ **digital** ..... technology, but my cousins asked me to join some (1) s ..... media sites as they live abroad and wanted to be able to keep in (2) c ..... with me more easily. As I'm new to social (3) n ....., I asked a friend to help me, and she suggested I start with Facebook. She told me to take a (4) s ..... and create a (5) p ..... of myself and then (6) p ..... it. My cousins in Australia contacted me (7) i ....., and we had an online chat. I'm able to (8) s ..... pictures and videos with them, which is great.

#### GARDEN DIARIES

I've been writing a (9) b ..... about my gardening business for several months now, and it's going well. My wife encouraged me to sign up to Twitter, and I now (10) t ..... most days. I find it's a great way to (11) p ..... my business and hear from potential customers.

6 **ABOUT YOU** Which of these activities do you do regularly, and why? Write your answers, or tell another student.

- |                                       |              |                                     |
|---------------------------------------|--------------|-------------------------------------|
| use social media                      | write a blog | share photos and information online |
| connect with family on social media   | take selfies | create a profile                    |
| promote your business on social media |              |                                     |

### TEST YOURSELF

## A un-

In English, **un-** is the most common prefix and is added to some adjectives and verbs to give the opposite meaning.

*We were **unable** to go to the party because we were both ill.*

*It was **unnecessary** for them to come to the airport to meet us.*

*I think it was **unfair** giving the job to Ed: he wasn't the best person.*

*I've got an old car, and it's **unreliable** in very cold weather.*

*I was rude to Adam the other day, so he's very **unlikely** to invite me to his party.*

*I used to play rugby, but these days I'm very **unfit** and can't run far.*

*Certain films are completely **unsuitable** for young children to watch.*

*In some countries, Friday 13<sup>th</sup> is thought to be **unlucky**.*

*I **unlocked** the door and went in.*

*I usually **unplug** my washing machine if I go away on holiday.*

## GLOSSARY

<b>unfair</b>	Sth or sb that is <b>unfair</b> does not treat people in the same way or the right way. <b>OPP fair</b>
<b>unreliable</b>	If sth or sb is <b>unreliable</b> , you cannot trust it or him/her. <b>OPP reliable</b>
<b>unlikely</b>	If sth is <b>unlikely</b> to happen, it's probably not going to happen. <b>OPP likely</b>
<b>unfit</b>	not in good physical condition <b>OPP fit</b>
<b>unsuitable</b> (for sb/sth)	not right for sb/sth <b>OPP suitable</b>
<b>unlucky</b>	having bad things happen to you which you cannot control <b>OPP lucky</b>
<b>unlock</b>	open sth, e.g. a door, using a key <b>OPP lock</b>
<b>unplug</b>	remove a piece of electrical equipment from the electricity supply <b>OPP plug sth in</b>

## SPOTLIGHT word stress

When you add a prefix to an adjective, it doesn't usually change the stress, e.g. **happy**, **unhappy**. But the stress can change if you want to emphasize the negative.

- Is he **likely** to come? ~ No, he's very **unlikely** to come.

- 1 Most of these words have the stress on the second syllable, but one word has the stress on a different syllable. Which word? Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

▶ **un**likely unfit unsuitable unnecessary unplug unlucky unable unfair unreliable .....

- 2 Complete the sentences with a word from the box.

unfair    unlocked    unlucky    unlikely ✓    unreliable    unsuitable    unnecessary

- ▶ He probably won't get the job. It's very **unlikely** .....
- 1 You didn't need to do it. It was .....
- 2 I turned the handle and the door opened. It was .....
- 3 He never comes when he says he will. He's very .....
- 4 Some people weren't able to vote, and they had the right to do so. It was .....
- 5 The weather is usually good in July, but this year it was wet. We were .....
- 6 Dad bought mum a saucepan for her birthday. What an ..... present!

- 3 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ I missed the plane by two minutes – it was so **unlucky** .....
- 1 Jacob often promises to help but rarely does – he's very .....
- 2 I was ..... to see my relatives on this trip because I was too busy with work.
- 3 Why do men get paid more than women for the same job? It's very .....
- 4 My brother can't get up the stairs. He smokes, and he's very .....
- 5 Fiona is ..... to be here on time – she's usually late.
- 6 We were out in a storm, and the clothes we had on were ....., so we got wet.
- 7 Don't take ..... risks when you're climbing. It's a dangerous mountain.
- 8 Remember to ..... the iron when you've finished.
- 9 I tried to get in the flat but I couldn't ..... the door.

- 4 Which of these words form opposites with the prefix **un-**? Use the Word List or **APP** to help you.

kind    friendly    polite    expected    patient    practical    usual    popular



## B dis-, im-, il-, re-

- Is it **illegal** to ride a motorbike without a crash helmet?
- Is it **dishonest** to tell your boss you are ill when you aren't?
- Does it matter if a lawyer is **disorganized**?
- Can you **disagree** about politics and still be friends with someone?
- If you fail your final university exams, can you **retake** them?
- Is it ever OK to be **impolite**?
- Does it matter if a doctor's handwriting is **illegible**?
- Is it easy to learn **irregular** verbs in English?
- Do you always try to **reuse** or **recycle** plastic water bottles?



### GLOSSARY

<b>illegal</b>	not allowed by the law <b>OPP</b> legal
<b>dishonest</b>	not telling the truth <b>OPP</b> honest
<b>disorganized</b>	not able to plan well <b>OPP</b> organized
<b>disagree (with sb)</b>	not have the same opinion as sb <b>OPP</b> agree (with sb)
<b>retake</b>	If you <b>retake</b> an exam, you take it again.
<b>impolite</b>	rude; not behaving in a good way towards people <b>OPP</b> polite
<b>illegible</b>	If handwriting is <b>illegible</b> , it is difficult or impossible to read. <b>OPP</b> legible
<b>irregular</b>	not following the normal rules of grammar <b>OPP</b> regular
<b>reuse</b>	use sth again <b>SYN</b> recycle

### SPOTLIGHT re- with verbs

The prefix **re-** means 'again'. Common examples are:

- reuse recycle rewrite rebuild reappear rearrange reorganize**
- I must **rewrite** my essay. (= write it again)
  - Helena **reappeared** later, with a bottle of water. (= appeared again)

### 5 Right or wrong? Write R or W. Correct any wrong answers.

- |                |                     |              |       |
|----------------|---------------------|--------------|-------|
| ▶ unpolite     | <u>W - impolite</u> | 4 disagree   | _____ |
| 1 disorganized | _____               | 5 unlegal    | _____ |
| 2 dishonest    | _____               | 6 reuse      | _____ |
| 3 rewrite      | _____               | 7 dislegible | _____ |

### 6 Complete the dialogues using words from the box with the correct prefix.

organized agree take use ✓ appear legible honest regular legal

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| ▶ Why do you want that empty bottle?                     | ~ Because I'm going to <u>reuse</u> it.        |
| 1 Do you have the same ideas about fashion as Clara?     | ~ No, we often _____.                          |
| 2 Did he pass the exam?                                  | ~ No, he'll have to _____ it.                  |
| 3 Will Oliver come back?                                 | ~ Yes, I think he will _____ later today.      |
| 4 Does he usually tell the truth?                        | ~ No, he's quite _____.                        |
| 5 Can you read this letter?                              | ~ No, the handwriting is _____.                |
| 6 Do you ever go in that bookshop?                       | ~ No, it's hard to find things: it's so _____. |
| 7 Is <b>better</b> the comparative form of <b>good</b> ? | ~ Yes, it's an _____ form.                     |
| 8 Does he park in front of the shop?                     | ~ Yes, he does, and it's _____.                |

### 7 Complete the words in the sentences.

- ▶ Is it common for people to be impolite to the police?
- 1 Are many verbs i\_\_\_\_\_ in your language?
  - 2 Is it d\_\_\_\_\_ to say someone looks nice when you don't really believe it?
  - 3 Do you often r\_\_\_\_\_ the furniture in your house to change how it looks?
  - 4 Is it i\_\_\_\_\_ to ride a bike on the pavement?
  - 5 Is it common for you to d\_\_\_\_\_ with friends about politics?
  - 6 Is it common for students to r\_\_\_\_\_ exams in your country?

### ABOUT YOU

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

### 8 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 7, or talk to another student. Then write your answers, or talk to another student about the questions at the top of the page.



## A Nouns and verbs

Instead of some verbs, we can use a related noun in a phrase with another verb.

Verb	Verb + noun	Example
attract	feel an attraction (to sb)	He <i>felt an immediate attraction</i> to Joanna.
breathe	take a breath	I <i>took a deep breath</i> and jumped into the pool.
conclude	reach a conclusion	We <i>reached the conclusion</i> that Ana was lying.
confuse	cause confusion	Changing the times of classes <i>caused a lot of confusion</i> amongst the students.
encourage	give sb encouragement	My father <i>gave me a lot of encouragement</i> when I was learning to drive.
improve	make an improvement (to sth)	The new law has <i>made a big improvement</i> to road safety.
know	have knowledge of sth	Do you <i>have any knowledge</i> of the man's disappearance?



She's praying.  
She's saying a prayer.



He's quoting Hamlet.  
He's reading a quotation from Hamlet.

## GLOSSARY

<b>attraction</b>	a feeling of liking sb/sth, sometimes sexually <b>attract</b> v	<b>improvement</b>	a change that makes the quality or condition of sth better <b>improve</b> v
<b>breath</b>	the air you take in and blow out of your lungs <b>breathe</b> v	<b>knowledge</b>	the state of knowing about a particular fact or situation
<b>conclusion</b>	an opinion that you reach after thinking about sth carefully <b>conclude</b> v	<b>prayer</b>	the words you use when you speak to God or a god <b>pray</b> v
<b>confusion</b>	a state of not being able to think clearly or not understanding sth <b>confuse</b> v	<b>quotation</b>	a phrase from a book, speech, play, etc. that sb repeats because it is interesting or useful <b>quote</b> v
<b>encouragement</b>	words or actions that give sb hope or confidence <b>encourage</b> v		

1 Are the underlined sounds the same or different? Write S or D. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.

- ▶ encourage / knowledge S      2 pray / prayer .....      4 improve / conclusion .....  
1 breathe / breath .....      3 know / knowledge .....      5 attraction / encouragement .....

2 Complete the sentences using a form of the word on the right.

- ▶ Take a deep breath ..... BREATHE  
1 I don't have much ..... of classical music. KNOW  
2 The changes will make a big ..... to your health. IMPROVE  
3 The jury haven't reached a ..... yet. CONCLUDE  
4 Do you think Dee feels any ..... to Ed? ATTRACT  
5 The meeting ended in complete ..... CONFUSE  
6 At church, we said a ..... for the people in the floods. PRAY  
7 I read aloud a ..... from Voltaire. QUOTE  
8 My English teacher gave me a lot of ..... ENCOURAGE

3 Complete the sentences with a suitable verb or noun.

- ▶ I hope the changes will improve ..... the situation.  
1 It's not my opinion. I'm just ..... from what it says in the newspaper.  
2 I didn't ..... an immediate attraction to Sam. I fell in love with him slowly.  
3 I often get ..... when I try to do three different things at the same time.  
4 As a child, I always said a ..... to God when I went to bed to keep my family safe.  
5 They ..... the conclusion that they needed to make some ..... to the office space.  
6 If you feel stressed, you should ..... in and out slowly for a minute.  
7 I have very little ..... of modern art: I just don't understand it.



## TEST YOURSELF

## B Adjective suffixes

Suffix	Examples	Meaning
-less -ful	Feel <b>powerless</b> in your job? Want to be <b>powerful</b> ? Get our PEOPLE POWER video!	<b>powerless</b> not able to influence or control people OPP <b>powerful</b> ; <b>power</b> <i>n</i>
-al	Modern <b>industrial</b> property to rent in <b>central</b> location. Andersons.com	<b>industrial</b> connected with <b>industry</b> <i>n</i> <b>central</b> in the <b>centre</b> <i>n</i> of sth
-ical	Cool, <b>practical</b> , <b>economical</b> clothing for every day. Go to practicalgear.com.	<b>practical</b> useful and suitable <b>practice</b> <i>n</i> <b>economical</b> costing or using less money, time, fuel, etc. than usual <b>economy</b> <i>n</i>
-able	Fabulous <b>fashionable</b> shoes – a <b>valuable</b> part of your wardrobe!	<b>fashionable</b> popular at the moment <b>fashion</b> <i>n</i> <b>valuable</b> very useful <b>value</b> <i>n</i>
-ous	Get our T-shirts with <b>humorous</b> slogans, in <b>various</b> colours.	<b>humorous</b> funny and entertaining <b>humour</b> <i>n</i> <b>various</b> several different <b>variety</b> <i>n</i>
-y	For beautiful, <b>shiny</b> hair, use Jango <b>creamy</b> shampoo and conditioner.	<b>shiny</b> causing a bright effect when in the sun or light <b>shine</b> <i>n</i> <b>creamy</b> with cream in, or smooth like cream <b>cream</b> <i>n</i>

### SPOTLIGHT adjectives ending in -ful and -less (2)

Some pairs of opposites end in -ful and -less.

- He's a **careful** student. OPP **careless**
- It was a **useful** suggestion. OPP **useless**
- It's a **painful** treatment. OPP **painless**

#### 4 Good or bad? Write G or B.

- |                                |          |                        |       |
|--------------------------------|----------|------------------------|-------|
| ▶ a powerful speaker           | <u>G</u> | 5 a useless idea       | ..... |
| 1 shiny windows                | .....    | 6 a humorous novel     | ..... |
| 2 an economical car            | .....    | 7 industrial smoke     | ..... |
| 3 a shop in a central location | .....    | 8 a careless essay     | ..... |
| 4 a valuable suggestion        | .....    | 9 a painless operation | ..... |

#### 5 Write the adjectives from these nouns.

- |                              |            |           |       |
|------------------------------|------------|-----------|-------|
| ▶ industry <u>industrial</u> | 4 practice | .....     |       |
| 1 power                      | .....      | 5 variety | ..... |
| 2 cream                      | .....      | 6 centre  | ..... |
| 3 fashion                    | .....      | 7 shine   | ..... |

#### 6 Complete the sentences using adjectives from the table.

- ▶ She left the water boiling on the cooker for an hour. That was very careless of her.
- I come from an ..... town in the north where they make chemicals.
  - A bike is much more ..... than a car for getting around town.
  - These shoes may be ....., but they're incredibly uncomfortable.
  - My sister made fish with a ..... sauce, which was delicious.
  - The teacher told us a very ..... story about himself. We couldn't stop laughing.
  - Soldiers entered the town from all sides, and we were ..... to stop them.
  - I can't see you today: there are ..... things I have to do in town.
  - My mother gave me a very ..... piece of advice: be patient and don't give in.

#### 7 -able and -al are common suffixes at the end of adjectives. Which of these nouns and verbs form adjectives ending in -able and -al? You will have to make some small spelling changes. Use the Word List or the APP to help you.

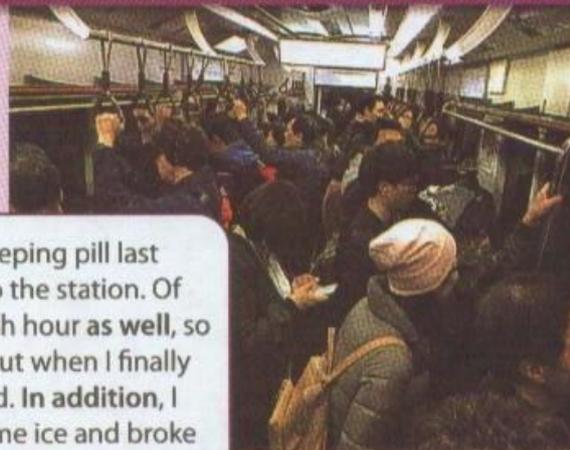
- |         |       |        |       |       |       |
|---------|-------|--------|-------|-------|-------|
| nature  | ..... | health | ..... | drink | ..... |
| emotion | ..... | music  | ..... | rely  | ..... |



### TEST YOURSELF

## A Reason, result and addition

A **link** between A and B is a connection between two or more people or things. The words in bold in this unit all **link** one idea **with** another idea.



... such an awful day! **Since** I'd had a bad night on Tuesday, I took a sleeping pill last night and **as a result**, I overslept this morning and had to take a taxi to the station. Of course, all the trains were delayed **due to** the snow, **plus** it was the rush hour as well, so I had to queue for ages at the ticket machine. That was bad enough, but when I finally got on the train, it was **not only** 30 minutes late **but also** very crowded. **In addition**, I had to stand all the way. Then when I got off the train, I slipped on some ice and broke my ankle. **As a consequence**, I've spent the whole day in hospital. Unbelievable!

### GLOSSARY

<b>since</b>	SYNS because, as	<b>not only ... but also</b>	used to emphasize that sth else is also true
<b>as a result</b>	because of sth that happened before SYN so	<b>in addition (to sth/sb)</b>	used when you want to mention another person or thing after sth else
<b>due to sth</b>	because of sth	<b>as a consequence (of sth)</b>	used to say one thing is the result of another
<b>plus</b>	used to add more information		
<b>as well</b>	We usually put <b>as well</b> at the end of a <i>clause</i> (= a part of a sentence that includes a subject and a verb). SYN also		

### 1 Circle the correct word.

- ▶ **As** / *In addition* I had no money, I couldn't pay.
- 1 It snowed heavily, and **as a result** / *plus*, we had to stay in for two days.
- 2 **Since** / **As a result** it was such a horrible day, we went to see a film.
- 3 He had to give up his job **as a consequence** / *due to* stress.
- 4 People are richer these days, and **so** / *since* they spend a lot more.
- 5 It was a long way to the station, and I had a suitcase **as well** / *as a result*.
- 6 **As** / *Due to* he had no money, I ended up paying the bill.
- 7 The attacker not only had a knife **but as well** / *but also* a gun.
- 8 The town has a good transport system. **In addition** / *As a consequence*, it is very cheap to get around town.

### 2 Write the circled link words in Exercise 1 in the table below.

ADDITION	RESULT	REASON
▶ <i>in addition</i>		

### 3 Complete the sentences in a logical way.

- ▶ I didn't get to the party on time because the train was late.
- 1 In winter, schools sometimes have to \_\_\_\_\_ due to bad weather.
- 2 Ulla lost her passport on the way to the airport. As a consequence, \_\_\_\_\_ fly that day.
- 3 The hotel was dirty and the service was poor. In addition, the food \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 As I \_\_\_\_\_ much money to spend, I decided to stay at home that evening.
- 5 Julius forgot his key and as a result, he couldn't \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 Jeans are extremely practical, plus \_\_\_\_\_ expensive.
- 7 I had a bad night's sleep: the bed was uncomfortable, and \_\_\_\_\_ hot as well.
- 8 Since I'll be away on holiday at the time of Lia's wedding, I \_\_\_\_\_ attend.
- 9 In the sentence 'I didn't get to the party on time because the train was late', there are two \_\_\_\_\_ . The second one is 'because the train was late'.



### TEST YOURSELF

## B Contrasting ideas

A **contrast** is a difference between two or more people or things which are being compared. The words in bold below introduce an idea which **contrasts** with something you have just said.

Contrasting two ideas in one sentence:	Notes
We got a ticket, $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{although} \\ \text{though} \\ \text{even though} \end{array} \right\}$ it wasn't easy.	The clause with <b>although</b> , <b>even though</b> and <b>though</b> can come at the beginning or the end: <b>Although</b> it wasn't easy, we got a ticket.
I went to work, $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{despite} \\ \text{in spite of} \end{array} \right\}$ feeling very unwell. the bad weather.	<b>despite</b> <b>SYN</b> <b>in spite of</b> are often followed by an <b>-ing</b> form or a noun.
On the one hand, the job is well paid, but on the other (hand), it's boring.	<b>on the one hand ... but on the other (hand)</b> introduce two contrasting points of view.
Contrasting two ideas in two separate sentences:	
The car was old. $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{Despite that,} \\ \text{In spite of that,} \end{array} \right\}$ I still bought it.	In <b>despite that / in spite of that</b> , the word <b>that</b> refers back to the fact that the car was old.
He didn't work hard. $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{However,} \\ \text{All the same,} \end{array} \right\}$ he still passed.	<b>However</b> is more formal. <b>All the same</b> is more informal.

### SPOTLIGHT *still*

**Still** can be used to emphasize that the second part of a sentence is surprising, especially after what was said in the first part of the sentence.

- She felt ill, but she **still** went to work.
- He left an hour early, but he **still** missed the train.

#### 4 Match 1-8 with a-i.

▶ He says nice things about you

1 He got the job in spite

2 I thought the acting was good

3 He went out despite

4 The soup was disgusting

5 We had a nice day even

6 He felt really cold. In spite

7 He went to bed very late. All the same,

8 On the one hand, the bike can go anywhere

g

a he got to work on time.

b feeling very unwell.

c although the main course was nice.

d though the weather wasn't very good.

e of his lack of experience.

f of that, he didn't put his sweater on.

g However, you can't trust him. ✓

h but on the other, the car's quicker.

i though I didn't enjoy the story of the film.

#### 5 Complete the sentences with one word. Sometimes more than one answer is possible.

▶ We had quite a nice day there. All the same, I wouldn't go back again.

1 I could just see the house \_\_\_\_\_ the thick fog.

2 You'll find it hard to get work there. \_\_\_\_\_, it's worth trying.

3 The queue for the exhibition was very long. In \_\_\_\_\_ of that, it was worth waiting.

4 There was more snow today, \_\_\_\_\_ I think it's warmer this evening.

5 \_\_\_\_\_ spite of leaving two hours early, we \_\_\_\_\_ missed the plane.

6 I didn't feel sleepy \_\_\_\_\_ though it was very late.

7 Jun has very little money. Despite \_\_\_\_\_, he's really generous.

#### 6 Complete the sentences in a suitable way.

1 She was very unkind to him. In spite of that, \_\_\_\_\_

2 Louise has plenty of money. All the same, \_\_\_\_\_

3 On the one hand, the hotel was very convenient, but on \_\_\_\_\_

4 I've applied for a job in the city, though \_\_\_\_\_

5 She has a serious illness. However, \_\_\_\_\_

6 She managed to arrive on time today in spite of \_\_\_\_\_

7 Despite being a very good driver, Anna still \_\_\_\_\_



### TEST YOURSELF

## A The school system

In the UK, children are **legally required** to **attend** school **up to** the age of 16. **Primary** education is for students aged 5–11, and then **secondary** education **lasts** until at least 16, with many students **carrying on** at school for two more years to prepare for university. Both **state** and **private** schools are run by a **head teacher**, who normally has a **deputy** in charge of certain areas of the school. The rest of the **staff** includes teachers, receptionists, secretaries, cleaners, etc. There are normally three **terms** in a school year, and each term usually lasts about 13 weeks. The school day is divided into about five lessons, with a lunch **break**, typically 45 minutes to an hour, and often shorter breaks in the morning and afternoon. As well as teaching lessons at school, teachers also **set** the students homework.

### GLOSSARY

<b>legally</b>	according to the law <b>legal</b> <i>adj</i>
<b>require</b> <i>formal</i>	If you are <b>required</b> to do sth, you need to do it or must do it.
<b>attend</b> <i>formal</i>	go to or be present at a place
<b>up to</b>	until; as far as
<b>state</b>	provided or controlled by the government of a country: <b>state</b> schools (People pay to go to a <b>private</b> school.)
<b>deputy</b>	the person in a company, school, etc. who does the work of the leader when they are not there
<b>break</b>	a short period of rest
<b>set</b>	give homework, a task, etc. for sb to do: <b>set</b> homework <i>for the class</i>

### SPOTLIGHT verbs that mean 'continue'

**Carry on** is a synonym of **continue**.

- We **continued/carried on** working until 5 o'clock.
  - If this noise **carries on/continues**, I will complain.
- You usually use **last** for a fixed period of time that something continues.
- The lessons **last** 45 minutes. ▪ The lunch break **lasts** an hour.

### 1 True or false about the UK? Write T or F. Correct any sentences that are false.

- ▶ In the UK students are not legally required to go to school. F - They are legally required to go to school.
- If you are required to do something, you can choose to do it. \_\_\_\_\_
  - Primary school is from 5–11. \_\_\_\_\_
  - Secondary school continues up to 18 for everyone. \_\_\_\_\_
  - Many students carry on at secondary school from 16–18 to prepare for university. \_\_\_\_\_
  - There are usually two terms in a school year. \_\_\_\_\_
  - A lunch break is always an hour. \_\_\_\_\_
  - Students have breaks in the morning and sometimes in the afternoon. \_\_\_\_\_
  - Students set homework for their teacher. \_\_\_\_\_
  - All schools in Britain are state schools. \_\_\_\_\_

### 2 Complete the sentences.

#### ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY

- ▶ We had three terms \_\_\_\_\_ a year in my school. \_\_\_\_\_
- You are required to \_\_\_\_\_ school in the UK from the age of 5. \_\_\_\_\_
  - I was five and a half when I started \_\_\_\_\_ education. \_\_\_\_\_
  - When I was eleven years old, I went to \_\_\_\_\_ school. You didn't have to pay: it was a \_\_\_\_\_ school, not a \_\_\_\_\_ school. \_\_\_\_\_
  - Most lessons \_\_\_\_\_ about an hour. \_\_\_\_\_
  - There were about 100 members of \_\_\_\_\_ at my school. \_\_\_\_\_
  - In secondary school, the teachers used to \_\_\_\_\_ us lots of homework. \_\_\_\_\_
  - We never saw the \_\_\_\_\_ teacher very much, but I know she worked very hard. \_\_\_\_\_
  - It was the head teacher's \_\_\_\_\_ who was responsible for the school rules. We were a bit afraid of him. \_\_\_\_\_
  - I didn't want to \_\_\_\_\_ at school after the age of 16, so I left. \_\_\_\_\_

### 3 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Are the sentences in Exercise 2 true for you? How is the school system different in your country? Write your answers, or talk to another student.

#### TEST YOURSELF

## B Exams

### Advice on how to sit written exams

- Follow the **instructions** on the exam paper.
- Don't **communicate with** other **candidates**. You could be asked to leave for **cheating**.
- Before you start, read the exam paper carefully. Don't **waste time** copying the questions.
- **Planning** is **essential** if you are writing essays. Spend 5-10 minutes making notes.
- Have a positive **attitude**. You are being **examined** on what you know, and this is your chance to show it. And it will be a **relief** when it's all **over**.

#### GLOSSARY

<b>sit an exam</b>	<b>SYN do/take an exam</b>	<b>waste time</b>	use time badly or in a silly way a <b>waste of time</b> <i>n</i>
<b>written</b>	sth that is <b>written</b> involves writing and not speaking	<b>planning</b>	the act or process of making plans for sth
<b>follow instructions</b>	do what sb/sth tells you to do	<b>essential</b>	absolutely necessary and important
<b>communicate (with sb)</b>	exchange information, ideas or feelings with sb <b>communication</b> <i>n</i>	<b>attitude</b>	the way you think, feel or behave
<b>candidate</b>	a person who is taking an exam	<b>examine formal</b>	ask questions to find out what sb knows or can do
<b>cheating</b>	doing sth that is not honest, especially in an exam or a game <b>cheat</b> <i>v</i> . The person who cheats is a <b>cheat</b> .	<b>relief</b>	the feeling you have when sth unpleasant stops
		<b>relieved</b> <i>adj</i>	
		<b>over</b>	finished

#### 4 Yes or No?

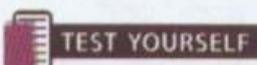
- ▶ Is *planning* useful? Yes
- 1 If you *follow instructions*, does it help? \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 If something is *over*, is it too difficult? \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 If something is *essential*, do you need it? \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Does your *attitude* to something show how you feel? \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 If something is *a waste of time*, is it useful? \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 Do *candidates* sit exams? \_\_\_\_\_

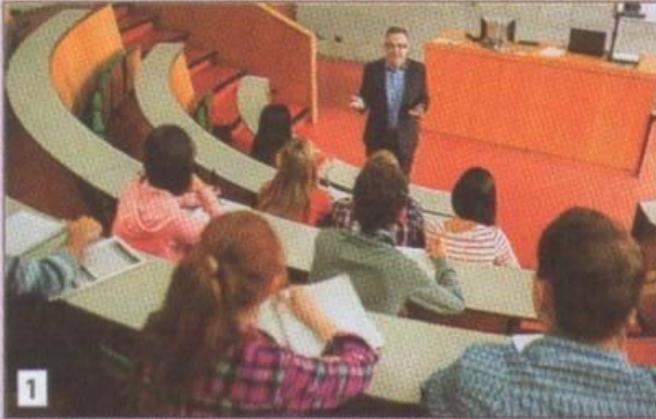
#### 5 Rewrite the sentences using the word on the right. The meaning must stay the same.

- ▶ They're asking him questions to see what he knows about Ancient Egypt.  
They're examining him to see what he knows about Ancient Egypt.
- 1 Do what he tells you. \_\_\_\_\_ EXAMINE
- 2 Don't talk to anyone. \_\_\_\_\_ INSTRUCTIONS
- 3 How you think and behave is important. \_\_\_\_\_ COMMUNICATE
- 4 It was a relief to finish the exam. \_\_\_\_\_ ATTITUDE
- 5 Don't spend your time doing nothing. \_\_\_\_\_ RELIEVED
- 6 He wouldn't do anything dishonest. \_\_\_\_\_ WASTE
- 7 I was pleased to finish the exam. \_\_\_\_\_ CHEAT
- 8 Do we need dictionaries? \_\_\_\_\_ OVER
- 9 We had a test where you write the answers. \_\_\_\_\_ ESSENTIAL
- \_\_\_\_\_ WRITTEN

#### 6 Complete the words in the text.

My brother doesn't like ▶ doing exams. He gets very nervous and generally has a negative (1) a \_\_\_\_\_ to them. In fact, he's so nervous that he sometimes can't follow the (2) i \_\_\_\_\_ . On one occasion, he forgot that he had his dictionary in his pocket and they thought he was trying to (3) c \_\_\_\_\_. Fortunately, my mother always gives him lots of advice: she tells him that (4) p \_\_\_\_\_ is (5) e \_\_\_\_\_ if he wants to write clear answers, and not to (6) w \_\_\_\_\_ time on things he can't answer. In our house, it's always such a (7) r \_\_\_\_\_ if he passes an exam.





Word	Example	Meaning
<b>higher education</b>	<i>After he left school, he went on to higher education.</i>	education at a college or university after the age of 18 <b>go on (to sth) = continue</b>
<b>educated</b> <i>adj</i>	<i>She's a very educated and professional member of staff.</i>	having had a high standard of education
<b>educate</b> (often <i>passive</i> )	<i>I was educated at a local school and then Cambridge University.</i>	teach sb over a period of time at school, university, etc.
<b>academic</b>	<i>I enjoy academic subjects like history and biology.</i>	connected to education, especially to school or university
<b>undergraduate</b>	<i>Undergraduates usually do a three-year course.</i>	a university student studying for their first degree (see <i>spotlight</i> )
<b>graduate</b>	<i>She's an Oxford graduate. She graduated last year.</i>	a person who has finished their degree <b>graduate v</b>
<b>tutor</b>	<i>You can ask your tutor for advice about the essay.</i>	sb who teaches and looks after a student or a small group of students in a university
<b>professor</b>	<i>She's a professor of law.</i>	the highest level of teacher in a university
<b>lecture</b>	<i>I went to an interesting lecture on Italian politics.</i>	a talk given to a large group to teach them a subject. The person is a <b>lecturer</b> . (see <i>picture 1</i> )
<b>take notes</b>	<i>I always take notes during lectures.</i>	write down the most important information from sth
<b>seminar</b>	<i>Are you going to the seminar this morning?</i>	a class at a university where a small group discuss a subject with a teacher
<b>laboratory</b> <b>ALSO lab</b> <i>inf</i>	<i>When I did my physics degree, we spent a lot of time in the lab.</i>	a special room where scientists do research, tests, experiments, etc.
<b>campus</b>	<i>I lived on campus during my first year.</i>	the area where the buildings of a college or university are (see <i>picture 2</i> )
<b>write a thesis</b>	<i>I'm writing a thesis on artificial intelligence.</i>	do a long piece of writing on a particular academic subject
<b>do research</b>	<i>He's doing research for a PhD.</i>	do a long and careful study of a subject. The person is a <b>researcher</b> .
<b>conference</b>	<i>I'm going to attend a conference on climate change at Cambridge University.</i>	a large official meeting where many people with the same job or interest come together to discuss their views

**SPOTLIGHT** degree courses

Universities give **degrees** to students who complete special courses. In the UK these are normally courses of at least three years, and up to five years for subjects such as medicine. You **do a degree** or **study for a degree**.

- *I'm doing a degree in law.*
- *My sister is studying for a degree in English.*

If you go on to do a higher degree, e.g. a Masters or a PhD, that is called a **postgraduate degree**. A student is then a **postgraduate** (**ALSO inf postgrad**).

1 Is the pronunciation of the underlined sounds the same or different? Write S or D.

Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.

- |                                       |       |                                    |  |
|---------------------------------------|-------|------------------------------------|--|
| ▶ write / <u>h</u> igher              | S     | 3 professor / conference           | 6 a graduate / to graduate               |
| 1 tu <u>t</u> or / tu <u>r</u> n      | ..... | 4 <u>t</u> he / <u>t</u> hesis     | 7 <u>u</u> ndergraduate / <u>c</u> ampus |
| 2 re <u>s</u> earch / <u>l</u> ecture | ..... | 5 de <u>g</u> ree / <u>t</u> hesis | 8 e <u>d</u> ucate / <u>g</u> raduate    |

2 Tick the words that are people.

- |             |                                     |               |       |            |       |
|-------------|-------------------------------------|---------------|-------|------------|-------|
| ▶ professor | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | educated      | ..... | researcher | ..... |
| thesis      | .....                               | undergraduate | ..... | lecturer   | ..... |
| tutor       | .....                               | research      | ..... | seminar    | ..... |
| lecture     | .....                               | campus        | ..... | a graduate | ..... |

3 Match 1-7 with a-h.

- |             |       |                                  |
|-------------|-------|----------------------------------|
| ▶ lecture   | d     | a a degree                       |
| 1 go on     | ..... | b in the lab                     |
| 2 study for | ..... | c to higher education            |
| 3 do        | ..... | d to a group of undergraduates ✓ |
| 4 take      | ..... | e a conference                   |
| 5 write     | ..... | f research                       |
| 6 attend    | ..... | g a thesis                       |
| 7 work      | ..... | h notes                          |

4 Underline the correct answer.

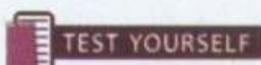
- ▶ I thought the thesis/lecture this morning was a bit boring.
- 1 He's in his second year, so he's still an undergraduate / a graduate.
- 2 We had an interesting discussion in the lecture / seminar this morning.
- 3 I have decided to live on campus / university this year.
- 4 The students all have to write a 10,000 word lecture / thesis this year.
- 5 You can talk to your lecturer / tutor if you need more help.
- 6 She's been a professor in that school / university for many years.
- 7 He finished his degree and now he's a postgraduate / an undergraduate student.
- 8 Scientists spend a lot of time in laboratories / seminars.
- 9 Where were you graduated / educated?

5 Complete the text.

In ▶ higher (1) e....., if you are an (2) u..... studying for a (3) d..... in history or English, you will spend a lot of time studying alone, but you also have to attend some lectures and (4) s..... In seminars, the discussion is usually led by a (5) t....., and you may have to express your opinions on a range of (6) a..... topics. At the end of the course you take exams, and if you are successful, you (7) g..... Some (8) g..... leave university at this point, but those with a good degree may decide to stay on and do (9) r..... or a higher degree. This may take one, two or three more years of study, and for arts students usually involves writing a (10) t.....

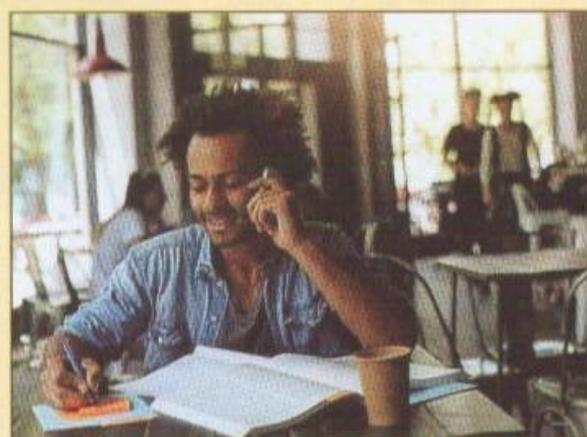
6 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Write your answers, or talk to another student.

- 1 How long are most degrees in your country? .....
- 2 Which degrees usually take the longest time to complete? .....
- 3 Do many students go on to higher education after they leave school? .....
- 4 Do students often live on campus? .....
- 5 Do many students go on to do postgraduate degrees? .....
- 6 Do universities often hold conferences? .....



## University life in Britain

- In Britain, many university students live **away from home**. This gives them more **freedom** and the opportunity to meet lots of new people, but can also be difficult for some students who **are not used to being on their own** and have never learnt to cook for themselves or even **iron** their clothes. In their first year, most students choose to live in student **accommodation**, which is sometimes on **campus**. After that, they **tend to rent** a flat or house with other students.
- Part of student life is about understanding the **importance** of **managing** your money carefully: tuition **fees**, **loans** you may have **taken out**, money for food, and **payments** you have to **make** for your living costs, for electricity, etc. **For this reason**, many students find **part-time jobs**.
- **At university**, you can often choose when you want to study, but you need to attend lectures, do your **assignments on time**, and plan your **revision** period before exams.



### GLOSSARY

<b>away from somewhere</b>	in a different place: <i>away from home/school</i>	<b>fee</b>	money you pay for the professional advice or service of a doctor, lawyer, etc. University students pay <b>tuition fees</b> for their teaching.
<b>freedom</b>	the right or ability to say or do what you want	<b>loan</b>	a sum of money that sb borrows, usually from a bank <b>take out a loan</b> arrange to borrow money from a bank
<b>on my/your, etc. own accommodation</b>	<b>SYN by yourself / alone</b> a place to stay or live	<b>payment</b>	the act of paying sb: <b>make a payment</b>
<b>campus</b>	the buildings of a university or college and the lands around them <b>on campus</b> in the main university area	<b>for this/that reason</b>	because of this/that
<b>tend (to do sth)</b>	usually do or be sth	<b>part-time job</b>	work for only a part of the day or week <b>OPP full-time job</b>
<b>rent</b>	pay to stay in a place or use sth that doesn't belong to you: <b>rent a flat/car rent n</b>	<b>at university</b>	If you are <b>at university</b> (without <i>the</i> ), you are studying at a university. <b>ALSO at school</b>
<b>importance (of sth / of doing sth) [U]</b>	the quality of being important	<b>assignment</b>	a job or piece of work that sb is given to do not late or early; at the correct time
<b>manage</b>	be in control of sth	<b>on time</b>	the process of studying sth again, often to prepare for an exam <b>revise (for sth) v</b>
		<b>revision</b>	

### SPOTLIGHT *be used to (doing) sth and be accustomed to (doing) sth*

If you **are used to (doing) something**, you know it well because you have seen, heard, done, etc. it a lot. **Be accustomed to (doing) something** is a synonym, but less common and more formal.

- *I live in England so I'm **used to** bad weather.*
- *My brother doesn't have a car so he **is used to** walking.*
- *I live with my family so I'm **not used to** cooking for myself.*

Don't confuse this structure with **used to + infinitive**, which is for talking about something that you did in the past but don't do now.

- *I **used to be** in the army, but I'm a teacher now.*

1 Write the words in the box in the correct column, according to the underlined sound. Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

university ✓ revise	campus importance	tuition assignment	fees accommodation	accustomed reason
<u>see</u>	<u>shoe</u>	<u>zoo</u>		
university				

2 Replace the underlined word/phrase with another word/phrase that has a similar meaning.

- ▶ I did several pieces of work each term. assignments
- 1 I'm not really accustomed to getting up early. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 I've never lived on my own. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 I washed my shirt but now I need to press an iron across it to make it look good. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 I liked the place where I stayed. It was cheap and convenient. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 I had to borrow money from the bank. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 The university was a long way from home and because of this I decided not to go. \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 Restaurants are expensive for students, so I usually eat at home. \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 Have you seen the university buildings and land around it yet? \_\_\_\_\_

3 One word or part of a word is missing in each sentence. What is it and where does it go?

- ▶ She / used to studying by herself. is
- 1 I took a part job during the summer. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 I understand the importance revision. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 I always try to arrive time. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 I was away home for two months. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 I'm not used studying hard. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 I don't go there my own. \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 I have two brothers university. \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 I tend study better in the mornings. \_\_\_\_\_
- 9 Could you these trousers for me? \_\_\_\_\_

4 Complete the sentences with words and phrases from the box.

revision	on time	for this reason ✓	manage	payment
importance	freedom	tend	rent	take out

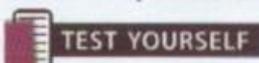
- ▶ University can be very expensive. For this reason I decided not to go.
- 1 I decided to \_\_\_\_\_ a flat with some friends in my second year.
- 2 The owner of our flat asked us to make a large \_\_\_\_\_ before we could move in.
- 3 Fortunately, the train was \_\_\_\_\_, so I wasn't late for my lecture.
- 4 I \_\_\_\_\_ to work in the library in the afternoon until about 5 p.m.
- 5 Do lots of \_\_\_\_\_ before the exam.
- 6 I don't know how to \_\_\_\_\_ my money. I've never had to do it.
- 7 Do you think university students have too much \_\_\_\_\_, or is it good for them?
- 8 I had to \_\_\_\_\_ loans when I was at university.
- 9 Ariana doesn't really understand the \_\_\_\_\_ of giving your essays in on time.

5 Complete the questions.

**ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY**

- 1 Do students usually live ▶ at \_\_\_\_\_ home, or a \_\_\_\_\_ from home? \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Do most students choose to live in student a \_\_\_\_\_? \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Do they live on c \_\_\_\_\_ or in the town? \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Do they have to pay tuition f \_\_\_\_\_? \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Do many have to take out l \_\_\_\_\_ to pay the bills? \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 Do they often get p \_\_\_\_\_-t \_\_\_\_\_ jobs to help pay the bills? \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 Are students u \_\_\_\_\_ to working on their own? \_\_\_\_\_

6 **ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY** Based on universities in your country, write your answers to Exercise 5, or ask another student.



**A Different jobs**

Job	What does he/she do for a living? (= What's his/her job?)
hairdresser	a person who cuts people's hair <b>hairdressing</b> <i>n</i>
mechanic	a person who repairs <b>engines</b> (= a machine that makes things move), especially in cars and lorries
photographer	a person who takes photographs/photos <b>photography</b> <i>n</i>
chemist SYN pharmacist	a person who prepares and sells <b>medicines</b> (= special liquids or tablets that help you get better when you are ill)
travel agent	a person who <b>makes travel arrangements</b> for people and works in a <b>travel agency</b> (An <b>agent</b> is a person who does business for another person.)
estate agent	a person who buys and sells homes for people
postman postwoman	a person who <b>delivers</b> (= takes sth to the place it must go to) letters and packages to people's homes
importer exporter	a person who <b>imports</b> goods (= buys sth from another country to sell in your country) <b>import</b> <i>v, n</i> OPP <b>export</b> <i>v, n</i>
priest	a person who performs religious ceremonies in some religions
sailor	a person who works on a ship; a person who <b>sails</b> a boat (= travels on water on a ship or boat)

**1 Are these sentences true or false? Write T or F. Correct the sentences that are false.**

- ▶ A hairdresser cuts hair. T
- 1 An estate agent sells holidays. .... **6** A mechanic repairs roads and bridges. ....
- 2 A chemist sells medicines. .... **7** A priest marries people. ....
- 3 An importer exports goods to sell. .... **8** A postman delivers new furniture. ....
- 4 A photographer takes pictures. .... **9** An exporter lives abroad. ....
- 5 A travel agent arranges flights for people. .... **10** A sailor sometimes sleeps on a ship. ....

**2 Complete the sentences.**

- ▶ I export wool from Wales, mostly to countries in the Far East.
- 1 What does your father do for a .....?
- 2 The ..... agent showed us several nice flats.
- 3 I asked the ..... not to cut too much off.
- 4 The travel ..... talked to us about holidays in Estonia and Lithuania.
- 5 The postwoman ..... the letters to the wrong house.
- 6 I believe he ..... silver jewellery from abroad and sells it in his shops.
- 7 There was something wrong with the ....., so the mechanic had a look at it.
- 8 The ..... in our church is a wonderful man.
- 9 I asked the ..... to recommend something for a bad back.
- 10 I've been an ..... for years: I buy things in France, then sell them here in the UK.
- 11 She works in a travel ..... with offices all over London.
- 12 I've always been interested in ..... I take hundreds of photos.

**3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or talk to another student.**

Which jobs above:

- need a lot of training? .....
- don't need a lot of training? .....
- need some creativity? .....
- would you like to do for a living? .....



**TEST YOURSELF**

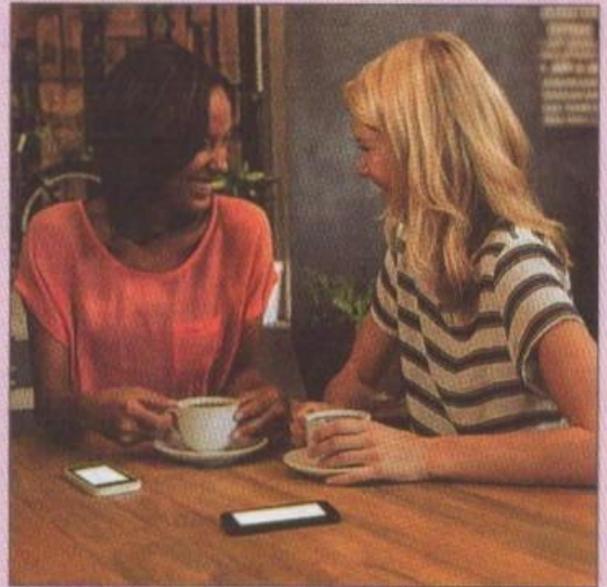
## B Job responsibilities

**Malala** Amy, I know you work in reception at the sports centre, but **what does that involve?**

**Amy** Well, one of my main **duties** is to **greet** customers, and I'm **in charge of** customer **bookings** – I do quite a lot of that on the phone, and sometimes organizations want to **hire** our pool for an event, for example. But I also have to **deal with** a certain number of **complaints** from customers.

**Malala** Oh, that sounds fun!

**Amy** Well, it's OK most of the time. And, of course, in an **emergency**, I have to **make sure** that people get out of the building quickly so that everyone is safe.



### GLOSSARY

<b>What does your job, etc. involve?</b>	= What do you have to do in your job, etc?	<b>hire</b>	pay money to borrow sth for a short time
<b>duty</b>	sth you must do because it is part of your job	<b>deal with sth</b>	take suitable action in a situation in order to solve a problem
<b>greet</b>	say hello when you meet sb	<b>complaint</b>	a statement that you are not happy with sth: <b>make a complaint; complain v</b>
<b>in charge (of sth/sb)</b>	in a position of control over sth/sb SYN <b>responsible for sth/sb</b>	<b>emergency</b>	a sudden dangerous situation when people need help quickly
<b>booking</b>	an arrangement to do sth or have sth: <b>make a booking</b>	<b>make sure</b>	check sth so that you can be certain about it

#### 4 Tick the phrases that describe the duties a hotel receptionist could have.

- ▶ answer the phone       deal with requests       make a complaint   
 be in charge of the keys       have an emergency       hire a room   
 be responsible for the bookings       greet somebody

#### 5 Complete the dialogues.

- ▶ Do customers come to you for help? ~ Yes, I have to make sure they're happy.
- 1 Were the customers pleased? ~ No, not at all. Some of them \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 2 What did you do about the situation? ~ As soon as I had \_\_\_\_\_ with one problem, another came along!
  - 3 Does the manager decide what you have to do? ~ Yes, that's one of his \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 4 Who's in \_\_\_\_\_ of reception when you're not there? ~ My colleague, Jan.
  - 5 I've got a new job in an estate agency. ~ Really! What does that \_\_\_\_\_?
  - 6 Are you \_\_\_\_\_ for the whole department? ~ No, just my office.
  - 7 We had an \_\_\_\_\_ last week: someone fell out of a window. ~ Oh, my goodness!
  - 8 Did you take your car to the island? ~ No, we \_\_\_\_\_ one when we got there.

#### 6 Complete the text.

I've worked in a tourist information office in Liverpool for two years. I ▶ greet people when they come in, but the job (1) \_\_\_\_\_ lots of different things. My main (2) \_\_\_\_\_ is to help with tourist accommodation, and (3) \_\_\_\_\_ with any problems that customers may have. And recently I was made (4) \_\_\_\_\_ for the Beatles tour: I organize trips to the houses where John Lennon and Paul McCartney used to live as children, and I have to make (5) \_\_\_\_\_ everything goes well. Of course, it doesn't always go well, and then people make (6) \_\_\_\_\_. You can't please everyone!



### TEST YOURSELF

## A The armed forces



If you join **the armed forces**, you will be **serving** your country, but it is important to remember that the forces also provide a good **career structure**. Young men and women can receive **advanced technical** training in a variety of **fields** that can help them to develop a wide range of **skills**. An added **benefit** of this is that when you eventually leave the forces, you will have more experience and better **qualifications** than before you joined, and the opportunity to go on to another interesting career.

### GLOSSARY

<b>the (armed) forces</b>	a country's soldiers who fight on land (the <b>army</b> ), at sea (the <b>navy</b> ), or in the air (the <b>air force</b> )
<b>serve</b>	do work for other people
<b>structure</b>	the way that the parts of sth are put together and organized
<b>advanced</b>	for sb who is already of a high level: <i>an <b>advanced</b> English class</i>
<b>technical</b>	connected with the practical use of machines, methods, etc. in science and industry
<b>field</b>	an area of study or knowledge: <i>the <b>field</b> of medicine</i>
<b>skill</b>	a particular ability or type of ability
<b>benefit</b>	sth that is good or helpful <b>benefit</b> v
<b>qualification</b>	an exam you have passed or a course you have finished

### SPOTLIGHT *career, job, profession*

A **career** is the series of jobs you have in a particular area. *a **career** in the army/publishing/teaching, etc.*

A **job** is any work you do to earn money.

■ *I got a **job** as a designer with ABC Designs.*

A **profession** is a job with a high level of training and/or education.

*the **medical/teaching/legal profession***

### 1 Underline the correct or best answer.

► A job/career in medicine

- 1 What are the **benefits** / **qualifications** of working as a team?
- 2 Making a **cake** / **mistake** is a skill.
- 3 You need technical knowledge to understand **poetry** / **computer systems**.
- 4 **Teaching** / **Bus driving** is a profession.

5 **Advanced** / **Elementary** courses are at a low level.

6 **Two years in the army** / **A university degree** is a qualification.

7 The **navy** / **army** work on ships or submarines.

8 I worked in the **field** / **job** of training and communication systems.

### 2 Complete the words in the text.

After I leave university, I would like to join the armed ► forces . I have always wanted a (1) \_\_\_\_\_ as a pilot, and the (2) \_\_\_\_\_ has a very good career (3) \_\_\_\_\_. It would also be an opportunity to (4) \_\_\_\_\_ my country. I already have some experience of flying, but in the air force, you learn to fly a range of different aircraft: that is one of the great (5) \_\_\_\_\_. As a result, you get a very (6) \_\_\_\_\_ level of (7) \_\_\_\_\_ training, and the opportunity to develop a wide range of different (8) \_\_\_\_\_. If I trained as an air force pilot, I would have the (9) \_\_\_\_\_ and experience that I need in later life.

### 3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or talk to another student.

- 1 Would you like a career in the armed forces? .....
- 2 If you were in the forces, would you prefer the army, the navy or the air force? .....
- 3 What qualifications do you have? .....
- 4 Are there other qualifications you would need or like to have? .....
- 5 Are there other skills you would like to have? .....
- 6 Do you want a career in just one profession, or would you prefer to work in different fields? .....



### TEST YOURSELF

## B A working life

I left school with very few qualifications. It was a time of high **unemployment**, but I got a job as a postman. However, it's not an **occupation** with a real career structure, so I soon left. I was **unemployed** for a while, but I finally **managed to** get a job in an engineering company. I worked really hard, and within two years I was **promoted**. The company then paid for me to do a two-year **diploma** in mechanical engineering, which was good for my **CV**. And by my late 30s, I was **appointed assistant manager** of a company in a nearby town, where I **remained** for the rest of my working life. I **retired** last year.

### SPOTLIGHT *employment*

**Employment** is having a job you are paid to do.

▪ *It is hard for young people to find **employment** at the moment.*

**Unemployment** is when there are not enough jobs for the people who want to work. **unemployed** *adj*

### GLOSSARY

<b>occupation</b> <i>formal</i>	job
<b>manage (to do sth)</b>	be able to do sth, often sth difficult
<b>promote</b> (often passive)	give sb a better job at a higher level in a company <b>promotion</b> <i>n</i>
<b>diploma</b>	a course of study. At the end of it you receive a piece of paper that shows you have passed an exam or finished the course.
<b>CV</b> (short for <b>curriculum vitae</b> )	a written list of your education and work experience that you send when you are trying to get a job
<b>appoint</b>	choose sb for a job <b>appointment</b> <i>n</i>
<b>assistant</b>	having a position below that of a senior person and helping them in their work: <b>an assistant manager</b>
<b>remain</b> <i>formal</i>	stay in the same way or place; not change
<b>retire</b>	stop working because you are a certain age (usually 65 or older) <b>retirement</b> <i>n</i>

4 Is the pronunciation of the underlined sounds the same or different? Write **S** or **D**. Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| ▶ appoint / employ <u>ment</u> <u>S</u>           | 4 promote / appo <u>int</u> _____                  |
| 1 occ <u>u</u> pation / dipl <u>o</u> ma _____    | 5 occu <u>p</u> ation / manag <u>e</u> _____       |
| 2 dipl <u>o</u> ma / ret <u>ir</u> e _____        | 6 ass <u>is</u> tant / unemp <u>lo</u> yment _____ |
| 3 curr <u>i</u> culum / occu <u>p</u> ation _____ | 7 manag <u>e</u> / rem <u>ai</u> n _____           |

5 Good news? Bad news? Not sure? Write **G**, **B** or **not sure**.

- |   |                |
|---|----------------|
| ▶ They've appointed me.                         | <u>G</u> _____ |
| 1 They've promoted me.                          | _____          |
| 2 They didn't want my CV.                       | _____          |
| 3 I remained with the company.                  | _____          |
| 4 I was unemployed.                             | _____          |
| 5 I had to retire.                              | _____          |
| 6 I got my diploma.                             | _____          |
| 7 I was manager, but now I'm assistant manager. | _____          |
| 8 Unemployment is going down.                   | _____          |

6 Complete the sentences with a single word.

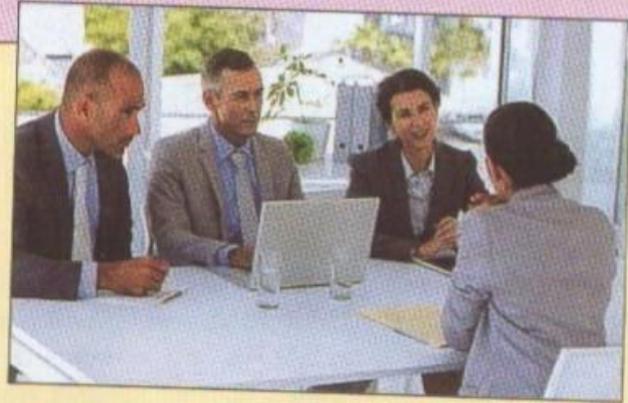
- ▶ I did well and I was soon promoted. (*given a better job*)
- 1 I was pleased when they \_\_\_\_\_ me. (*chose me for the job*)
- 2 It was difficult but I \_\_\_\_\_ to finish the work on time. (*was able*)
- 3 He asked me for my name, address and \_\_\_\_\_. (*the job I did*)
- 4 I've never been \_\_\_\_\_. (*without a job*)
- 5 I thought about leaving but I've decided to \_\_\_\_\_. (*stay in the same place*)
- 6 After five years, I was made \_\_\_\_\_ manager. (*helper to the manager*)
- 7 I've got a \_\_\_\_\_ in Business Studies. (*a course followed by an exam*)
- 8 I \_\_\_\_\_ when I was 65. (*stopped working*)
- 9 There are problems with \_\_\_\_\_ in my town. (*not enough work and jobs*)
- 10 I've sent in my \_\_\_\_\_ to the company. (*a list of my education and work experience*)



### TEST YOURSELF

## Applying for a job with Decom GB

You can apply for any advertised **position**. We never **discriminate** on the **basis** of age, sex or race.



## Work permits

For jobs in the UK, you will usually **require** a UK **work permit**. For jobs outside the UK, the local Decom office will **advise** you about the permit you may need.

## Closing dates

Your **application** must reach us by the advertised closing date. Online applications will **receive** an **automatic** reply.

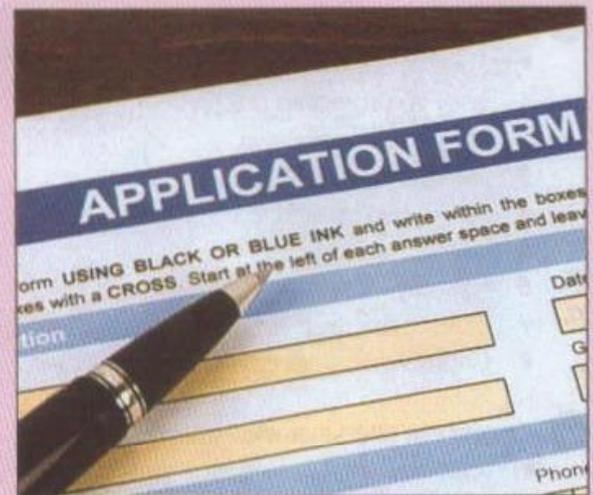
## Selection process

If we would like you to **attend** an interview, we will **contact** you. At that time, and if **requested**, we will also consider other skills you may have or need. If you are not invited to attend an interview, we will contact you and, wherever possible, explain why your application was unsuccessful.

If you are the successful **candidate**, and we have received **satisfactory references**, we will offer you the position. We **shall** also **require confirmation** that you are medically fit to do the job and have the necessary permit/visa.

### GLOSSARY

<b>discriminate</b> (in favour of / against sb)	treat one person or group better/ worse than another in an unfair way
<b>basis</b>	the principle or reason behind sth: <b>on the basis of sth</b>
<b>sex</b>	the state of being either male or female <b>SYN gender</b>
<b>race</b>	one of the groups into which people can be divided according to the colour of their skin, their hair types, the shape of their face, etc.
<b>work permit</b>	an official document which says you are allowed to work in a particular country
<b>advise</b>	tell sb the best thing to do <b>advice n [U]: give sb (some) advice</b>
<b>application</b>	a formal written request for sth (often a job or course), usually using an <b>application form</b> ; <b>apply (for sth) v</b>
<b>automatic</b>	If sth is <b>automatic</b> , it can work by itself without people controlling it. An <b>automatic</b> reply usually comes from a computer.
<b>selection</b>	the process of choosing the thing or person you like best <b>select v formal SYNS choice n; choose v</b>
<b>process</b>	a number of actions, one after the other, for doing or making sth
<b>contact</b>	phone or write to sb <b>contact n</b>
<b>candidate</b>	a person who makes a formal application for a job
<b>satisfactory</b>	good enough for a particular purpose
<b>reference</b>	a statement or letter which describes sb's character and ability to do a job. A person who writes this is a <b>referee</b> .
<b>confirmation</b>	a statement in writing which says that sth is true or accurate <b>confirm v</b>



### SPOTLIGHT formal language

In a written text like this, some language will be formal. For example:

- position** = job
- require** = need
- receive** = get
- attend** = go to/for sth
- request** = ask for sth **request n**
- shall** = will

The words in bold are more formal than the alternatives, which we would normally use in spoken English.

1 Cover the glossary and complete the table.

VERB	NOUN	VERB	NOUN
advise	► <u>advice</u>	confirm	.....
apply	.....	request	.....
select	.....	contact	.....

2 Correct the mistake in each sentence.

- My old boss said he would be my reference. My old boss said he would be my referee.
- They say they will contact to me. ....
  - Have you got a work permission? .....
  - I got the job on the base of my qualifications. ....
  - He gave me some good advices. ....
  - I have to confirmate it in writing. ....
  - They said I must choice the best one. ....
  - He told me some good advice. ....

3 Replace the underlined words with a more formal word with the same meaning.

- We will contact you as soon as possible. shall
- Has the company asked for references? .....
  - They offered me the job on Thursday. ....
  - I went for an interview last week. ....
  - If you need more information, please contact me. ....
  - Did you get my email? .....

4 Complete the sentences with a single word.

- The job is abroad and I have to get a work permit.
- Friends thought I would like the job, and they ..... me to apply for it.
  - He offered me the job on the phone, but I haven't had written ..... from him yet.
  - My boss said my work was ..... - in other words, not great, but OK.
  - You don't need to ask for a reply: you get an ..... response.
  - They go through the applications and then ..... about ten people to interview.
  - It's against the law to ..... against candidates on the basis of their sex or .....
  - He wants to ..... for the job, but he still has to fill in the ..... form.
  - You have to do tests and have several interviews. It's quite a long .....
  - We have three good ..... We have to consider who has the right balance of skills that we need.
  - Nursing is open to people of either ....., although it's often more popular with women.

5 Complete the conversation.

- A You know that job you were looking at. What was the ► position ?
- B Oh, it was to be the manager of a new hotel.
- A And did you (1) ..... for it?
- B Yes, and I (2) ..... an interview on Wednesday.
- A Wow! How did it go?
- B It seemed OK. They said they'd (3) ..... me by the end of the week.
- A What about (4) ..... ?
- B They said they'd already spoken to one of my referees.
- A Oh really? And are there many other (5) ..... ?
- B Yes, over a hundred. But I'm not sure if I want the job because it's based in Scotland. Still, at least I don't need a work (6) .....

6 ABOUT YOU Write answers to the questions, or ask another student.

- What jobs have you applied for in the past?
- How many interviews have you attended?
- How many times have you been the successful candidate?
- Who were your referees?
- Have you ever had to get a work permit? If so, what for?



## A Financial terms

Example	Meaning
We need to <b>raise capital</b> for the new musical.	<b>capital</b> a large amount of money you need to start a business, etc. <b>raise capital</b> find the money you need to run a business or for a particular project
I would like to <b>invest</b> more money in wind energy.	<b>invest</b> give money to a business or bank in order to get more money back
The company has an <b>annual turnover</b> of \$20m.	<b>turnover</b> the total value of goods or services that a company sells in a particular period of time <b>annual</b> for the period of one year
<b>Inflation</b> is now 3%.	<b>inflation</b> a general rise in the price of services and goods in a particular country
We paid £1m in <b>tax</b> last year.	<b>tax</b> money you have to pay to the government
The company made a <b>pre-tax profit</b> of £2m.	<b>profit</b> the money you make in a business after paying costs OPP <b>loss: make a profit/loss</b> <b>pre-tax</b> before paying tax
We pay a lot of <b>interest</b> on our loan. The <b>interest rate</b> is 5%.	<b>interest</b> extra money you pay when you borrow money. The <b>interest rate</b> is the percentage at which your interest is calculated.
We trade in <b>foreign currencies</b> .	<b>currency</b> [C] [U] the system or type of money that a country uses, e.g. <i>dollars, yen</i>
<b>Production</b> needs to increase to make a profit.	<b>production</b> the action of making or growing sth. The company or country that does this is the <b>producer</b> .

SPOTLIGHT *finance*

**Finance** can be the money somebody borrows or receives to operate a business.

▪ They need to **raise more finance**.

It is also the activity of managing money in a company. **financial adj**

▪ He's the new **Director of Finance / Financial Director**.

## 1 Good news or bad news? Write G or B.

- |   |                                    |
|---|------------------------------------|
| ▶ We need to raise more capital. <u>B</u>   | 4 Inflation is up. ....            |
| 1 Pre-tax profit is down. ....              | 5 Turnover is up. ....             |
| 2 You can buy foreign currency online. .... | 6 We're paying more interest. .... |
| 3 They want to invest in our business. .... | 7 Tax is lower. ....               |

## 2 Cover the glossary and write the answers.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| ▶ the money you make in a business after paying tax = <u>profit</u> | 4 the money you have to pay when you borrow money = .....   |
| 1 turnover every year = ..... turnover                              | 5 a general rise in the price of services and goods = ..... |
| 2 pre-tax profit = profit ..... paying tax                          | 6 the action of making or growing something = .....         |
| 3 money you need to start a business = .....                        |   |

## 3 Complete the sentences.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| ▶ We can't start the business until we <u>raise</u> ..... more finance.                        |  |
| 1 The current interest ..... is 5%.  | 4 It's been a bad year; we've made a pre-..... of \$3.5m.      |
| 2 It has been a good year and the company should make a .....                                  | 5 If sales continue to rise, the annual ..... could reach £5m. |
| 3 The company has had ..... problems and they need people to ..... more money in the business. | 6 Brazil is one of the largest ..... of coffee.                |



## TEST YOURSELF

## B Trends

A **trend** is the general direction in which a situation is changing.

Trend	Verbs	Nouns
↑	go up, rise, increase <i>Prices have risen this year.</i>	rise, increase, growth [U] <i>We saw some growth in imports last year.</i>
↓	go down, fall, drop <i>Sales of petrol cars went down last month.</i>	fall, drop <i>There has been a drop in sales.</i>
→	remain stable SYN stay the same <i>Prices have remained stable.</i>	stability <i>There is stability in the cotton market.</i>
↗	reach the highest point <i>Sales reached their highest point in the second quarter (= April to June).</i>	peak <i>Sales reached a peak in 2007.</i>
↻	fluctuate <i>Mobile phone sales have fluctuated all year.</i>	fluctuation [U, C] <i>There's been a fluctuation in mobile phone sales.</i>

We use adjectives and adverbs to describe changes in more detail:

ADJECTIVE	Meaning	ADVERB
a <b>slight</b> rise in costs	very small OPP <b>sharp</b>	Costs rose <b>slightly</b> . (OPP <b>sharply</b> )
a <b>steady</b> increase in the interest rate	slow but regular and continuing	The interest rate has increased <b>steadily</b> .
a <b>significant</b> fall in profits	clear to see and important	Profits fell <b>significantly</b> .

### SPOTLIGHT prepositions with rise and fall

Notice how these prepositions are used to describe movement.

- Sales fell **from** 100,000 to 75,000. OR Sales fell **by** 25,000.

#### 4 Complete the sentences on the right. The meaning must stay the same.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| ▶ There was a significant fall in sales.                 | Sales have <u>fallen sharply</u> .          |
| 1 The price of oil went up from \$8 to \$10.             | The price of oil went up by _____.          |
| 2 There has been a significant rise in the price of oil. | The price of oil _____.                     |
| 3 There was a slight fall in profits.                    | Profits _____.                              |
| 4 There has been stability in production.                | Production has remained _____.              |
| 5 There has been a steady rise in sales.                 | Sales have _____.                           |
| 6 Sales reached their highest point in June.             | Sales reached a _____ in June.              |
| 7 Sales have gone up by 4% this year.                    | We have seen a 4% _____ in sales this year. |

#### 5 Complete the text. Use a different word each time.

Last year started well. In the first ▶ quarter sales (1) \_\_\_\_\_ steadily. The second quarter was even better: sales increased (2) \_\_\_\_\_. They continued to (3) \_\_\_\_\_ steadily in the third quarter and reached a (4) \_\_\_\_\_ at 90,000. This meant that over the first nine months of the year, sales had (5) \_\_\_\_\_ up (6) \_\_\_\_\_ almost 50%. In the last quarter there was a slight (7) \_\_\_\_\_, but it was still a good year. This year has been very different. Sales (8) \_\_\_\_\_ in the first half of the year – up one month and down the next, but in the last three months they have remained (9) \_\_\_\_\_.

#### 6 Look at the arrows and complete the sentences.

- |  |                           |
|--|---------------------------|
| ▶ There was a ↘ <u>slight</u> <u>fall</u> _____ in 2013. | 3 Sales → _____ in 2016.  |
| 1 Sales ↗ _____ in 2014.                                 | 4 In 2017, sales ↘ _____. |
| 2 There was a ↗ _____ in 2015.                           | 5 In 2018, sales ↘ _____. |



### TEST YOURSELF

## A Setting up a business

If you **set up** a business, you are taking a big **risk**. 20% of new businesses **fail** within twelve months, and that **percentage** rises to 50% within three years. It may be because of poor quality services or **goods**, or one of these common mistakes:

- poor **market research**
- being **overambitious** and **over-optimistic**
- poor knowledge of **competitors**
- poor control over **suppliers**
- poor **management** of **stock**
- the wrong people **running** the business

### GLOSSARY

<b>set sth up</b>	start sth such as a business, company, etc.
<b>risk</b>	the possibility that sth bad may happen in the future <b>risky</b> <i>adj</i>
<b>fail</b>	(of a business, etc.) be unable to continue <b>SYN go out of business</b>
<b>percentage</b>	= % <i>What percentage passed the exam? ~ About 80 percent.</i>
<b>goods</b> <i>pl</i>	things that are made to be sold
<b>market research</b>	the study of what people want to buy and why
<b>competitor</b>	a company that sells the same goods or services as another company
<b>supplier</b>	a company that provides sth for another company <b>supply</b> <i>v, n</i>
<b>management</b>	the control or organization of sth; the people who control a business
<b>stock</b> [U]	everything a company has for sale at any particular time
<b>run</b>	organize or be in charge of sth

### SPOTLIGHT the prefixes *over-* and *under-*

As a prefix, *over-* usually means 'too much' and *under-* means 'too little'.

- He **overcharged** us. = He made us pay too much for something.
- I was **underpaid** for the work I did. = paid too little
- The sales plans were **overambitious**.

### 1 Good news or bad news? Write G or B.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| ▶ They do a lot of market research. <u>G</u> | 4 It's a big risk. ....                   |
| 1 They went out of business. ....            | 5 We don't have serious competitors. .... |
| 2 Supplies of food have increased. ....      | 6 The business failed. ....               |
| 3 They overcharged us. ....                  | 7 Stock is very low at the moment. ....   |

### 2 Complete the sentences. The meaning must be similar to the sentences on the left.

- |   |                                      |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| ▶ This business is risky.                 | This business is a <u>risk</u> ..... |
| 1 When did she start the business?        | When did she set .....?              |
| 2 Why did the business fail?              | Why did they go out .....?           |
| 3 We are the main people who supply them. | We are their main .....              |
| 4 They didn't pay the workers enough.     | They .....                           |
| 5 They made us pay too much.              | They .....                           |
| 6 Their price rise was over 80%.          | The price rise was a very high ..... |

### 3 What mistakes do businesses make? Complete the sentences in a suitable way.

- ▶ The business has poor management of its stock.
- 1 They don't do enough market .....
  - 2 The ..... or services may not be of good enough quality.
  - 3 They don't have a very good knowledge of their .....
  - 4 They don't have effective controls over their .....
  - 5 The business is over ..... and over ..... about what it can achieve.
  - 6 The wrong people .....



### TEST YOURSELF

## B Growth

The first years require a huge **effort**, but if a business can **survive** this difficult period, it may become successful:

- Client numbers **grow**, and the business gets a bigger **share** of the **market**.
- Turnover increases – the business starts to make a profit.
- The **brand** develops a **reputation**.
- Eventually this growth may result in **takeovers** of competitors.

### SPOTLIGHT *market*

The **market** is the amount of buying and selling of a particular type of goods.

■ *There is a large market for these computers.*  
It also refers to an area or group of people who buy something.

■ *the European market* ■ *the teenage market*

### GLOSSARY

<b>effort</b>	the mental or physical strength or energy that you need to do sth: <i>I made an effort to get there on time.</i>	<b>share</b>	a part of sth that has been divided
<b>survive</b>	continue to exist in a difficult situation <b>survival</b> <i>n</i>	<b>brand</b>	the name of a product that is made by a particular company, e.g. Nike™
<b>client</b>	a person who pays for a service. Professional services have <b>clients</b> , and shops and restaurants have <b>customers</b> . In some industries both words can be used.	<b>reputation</b>	the opinion that people have of sth. It can be good or bad.
<b>grow</b>	become bigger in size or number <b>growth</b> <i>n</i> [U]	<b>result in sth</b>	cause sth to happen; produce as an effect
		<b>takeover</b>	the act of taking control of another business
			<b>take sth over</b> <i>phrasal v</i>

#### 4 Underline the correct answer.

- ▶ They've had good *survival* / *growth* in the last five years.
- 1 We don't get many *customers* / *clients* in the shop at weekends.
  - 2 The changes could result *to* / *in* more sales.
  - 3 They are making a big *growth* / *effort* to stay in business.
  - 4 They want a larger market *part* / *share*.
  - 5 Piotr works for a law firm – most of their *clients* / *customers* are in finance.
  - 6 The company could *survive* / *be taken over* by a competitor.
  - 7 Someone will take *over* / *off* that business.
  - 8 They're getting a *brand* / *reputation* for good service.

#### 5 Complete the sentences on the right. The meaning must stay the same.

- ▶ Will they continue to grow? Will there be more growth .....
- 1 Will they take it over? Will there be a .....?
  - 2 People say it's a very good business. The business has a very good .....
  - 3 The workers have tried very hard. The workers have made a big .....
  - 4 The books will sell to people in Europe. The books will sell in the European .....
  - 5 Are you worried the business may not survive? Are you worried about their .....?
  - 6 The meeting could lead to more business. The meeting could result .....

#### 6 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ It's been difficult, but I think the business will survive .....
- 1 The business now has a 10% ..... of the market.
  - 2 They managed to ..... the problems of the last year, and sales are improving.
  - 3 People go on buying the same ..... of breakfast cereal because it is familiar.
  - 4 There has been considerable ..... in the soft drinks ..... : 25% up in two years.
  - 5 I think the business is failing, so it will probably be ..... over by the end of the year.
  - 6 You have to make a big ..... to improve when things are not going well in your business.



### TEST YOURSELF

**A The basis of marketing**

**Marketing** is the activity of presenting, advertising and selling a company's products. To **market** a product, you need to understand the company's **strengths** and **weaknesses**, and be aware of possible **opportunities** and **threats**. This is called a 'SWOT analysis':

- S**trengths, e.g. specialist **skills** in the company
- W**eaknesses, e.g. **limited** financial resources
- O**pportunities, e.g. increased **demand** for a product from one **section** of the market
- T**hreats, e.g. the economy is doing badly, **reducing** the demand for products

**SPOTLIGHT** *skill*

A **skill** is a particular ability that you need in order to do a job, an activity, etc. well.

- *He has the right management **skills**.*

The adjective **skilled** is used about jobs that need skill.

- *The company has a number of **skilled** workers.*

**GLOSSARY**

<b>advertising</b>	the activity of telling people about a product to try and make them buy it <b>advertise v</b>
<b>strength</b>	a good quality or feature <b>OPP weakness</b>
<b>opportunity</b>	a time when you can do sth that you want to do <b>SYN chance</b>
<b>threat</b>	a possible danger or problem
<b>analysis</b>	the process of carefully examining the different parts of sth <b>analyse v</b>
<b>limited</b>	small in number or amount <b>OPP unlimited</b>
<b>resource (usually pl)</b>	a supply of sth, a piece of equipment, materials, etc. that is available for sb to use
<b>demand (for sth)</b>	the need for sth from a particular group of people
<b>section</b>	a part of sth
<b>reduce</b>	make sth less or smaller <b>reduction n</b>

**1 Good news or bad news for the company? Write G or B.**

- ▶ Limited demand B
- 1 There are many opportunities. ....
- 2 Our company has a lot of skilled workers. ....
- 3 There are a number of threats. ....
- 4 Unlimited financial resources. ....
- 5 A reduction in demand. ....
- 6 They have a number of strengths. ....
- 7 Their marketing is clever. ....

**2 Replace the underlined word/phrase with a single word. The meaning must stay the same.**

- ▶ We only have a small number of products available at the moment. limited
- 1 There is a lot of competition in this part of the industry. ....
- 2 There isn't much need for beach umbrellas in the winter. ....
- 3 They have a number of good qualities. ....
- 4 There is another company in the market, which could be a real danger. ....
- 5 Does he have the necessary abilities to do the job? ....
- 6 Does the company have the money, materials and workers that they need? ....
- 7 Our success last year gives us the chance to expand and grow. ....
- 8 We need to examine carefully the reasons for the fall in sales. ....

**3 Complete the sentences.**

- ▶ New markets in Asia could be a great opportunity for us.
- 1 If you work with advanced technology, you need people with the right .....
- 2 More people will know about the product if we ..... it on social media.
- 3 The high quality of our products is one of our main .....
- 4 We need to ..... these clothes for people aged under twenty-five.
- 5 If there is more competition, we may have to ..... the price.
- 6 First we need to do a careful ..... of our strengths and .....
- 7 You need a lot of ..... workers in manufacturing.
- 8 ..... is one of the best ways of making people aware of a new product.

**TEST YOURSELF**

## B Marketing strategy

### Some top tips

- Don't **assume** you know what your customers want.
- **Target** the 20% of your customers who provide 80% of your profit.
- Don't **ignore** the competition, and be ready to **respond** to it.
- Don't try to compete only on price: **highlight** the quality, reliability, etc.
- You need to **gather** reliable **data** to make good market **predictions**.
- You need to have **realistic** aims.
- Don't forget to **evaluate** your **strategy**. If something isn't working, change it.

### GLOSSARY

<b>assume</b>	accept or believe sth is true without being sure
<b>target</b>	choose sb, or a group, and try to influence them (your <b>target market</b> ) <b>target</b> n
<b>ignore</b>	pay no attention to sb/sth
<b>respond</b> (to sb/sth)	do sth as a reaction to sth that has been said or done <b>response</b> n
<b>highlight</b>	emphasize sth so that people give it more attention
<b>gather</b>	bring many things together, e.g. information or data
<b>data</b> [U]	facts or information
<b>prediction</b>	a statement saying what will happen in the future (ALSO <b>forecast</b> ) <b>predict</b> v
<b>realistic</b>	sensible, and based on what is possible in a situation
<b>aim</b>	sth you are trying to achieve SYN <b>goal</b> ; <b>aim</b> v
<b>evaluate</b>	study the facts then form an opinion about sth
<b>strategy</b>	a plan you make in order to achieve sth

#### 4 Cover the glossary, then match the words and definitions.

- |                    |  |
|--------------------|--|
| ▶ respond <u>d</u> | a pay no attention to something                          |
| 1 assume .....     | b choose somebody and try to influence them              |
| 2 evaluate .....   | c bring many things together                             |
| 3 ignore .....     | d say or do something as a reaction ✓                    |
| 4 gather .....     | e study the facts and then form an opinion               |
| 5 target .....     | f accept or believe something without knowing it is true |

#### 5 Complete the dialogues without repeating the same words.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| ▶ Did she know it was true?                                 | ~ No, she just <u>assumed</u> it.                            |
| 1 Did you give him some advice?                             | ~ Yes, but he _____ it.                                      |
| 2 Do they have a plan for this?                             | ~ Yes, they're working on a _____.                           |
| 3 Does he know what he wants from the meeting?              | ~ Not really, but it will be better if he has a clear _____. |
| 4 Do you have the information you need?                     | ~ Yes, we've gathered all the _____.                         |
| 5 Make sure clients understand the quality of the product.  | ~ Yes, we need to _____ it.                                  |
| 6 Do you know what the future looks like for printed books? | ~ Well, we've made some _____.                               |

#### 6 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ We contacted the company, but so far they haven't responded.
- 1 The engineering company got into trouble because they \_\_\_\_\_ all of their competitors.
  - 2 Have you seen any sales \_\_\_\_\_ for next year?
  - 3 We don't know if they're competing for this contract, but we \_\_\_\_\_ they are.
  - 4 The company has decided to \_\_\_\_\_ the youth market next year.
  - 5 We've \_\_\_\_\_ all the sales reports together. Now we need to evaluate them.
  - 6 They want to open three new factories. Is that a \_\_\_\_\_ aim?
  - 7 The target \_\_\_\_\_ for winter cruises is mostly people who are retired.
  - 8 Remember, you need to \_\_\_\_\_ your strategy to know if it's working, and you must be prepared to change it if it isn't.

#### 7 ABOUT YOU Do you agree that the marketing advice at the top of the page is important? Do you think one piece of advice is more important than the others? Can you add to this list? Write your answers, or talk to another student.



TEST YOURSELF

## Inseparable phrasal verbs

With inseparable phrasal verbs, you cannot put other words between the different parts of the phrasal verb. These include phrasal verbs that don't take an object.

Verb	Example	Meaning
pull up	<i>The driver pulled up in front of the hospital.</i>	(of a car or its driver) stop
drop by	<i>Please drop by if you're in the area.</i>	go to sb's house on an informal visit or without telling them that you are coming
stay up	<i>We stayed up late to watch the match last night.</i>	go to bed later than usual
go off	<i>I woke up when the alarm clock went off.</i>	make a sudden loud noise



I broke down in the countryside.



I woke up at 7 o'clock.



Look out! The floor's wet.

Some phrasal verbs take an object, which can only go after the phrasal verb. All phrasal verbs with three parts belong to this group.

get into sth	<i>Mina wants to get into teaching when she finishes university.</i>	start a career in a particular profession
run into sb SYN bump into sb	<i>I ran into Daisy in the sports centre – what a surprise!</i>	meet sb by chance
take up sth	<i>Sport takes up all my time.</i>	use or fill time or space
go off sth	<i>I've gone off coffee – it keeps me awake.</i>	stop liking or being interested in sth
get out of sth/ doing sth	<i>I've got a meeting this afternoon, but I'll try and get out of it.</i>	avoid a duty or doing sth that you have said you will do
come up with sth	<i>Max came up with a great way of saving money.</i>	find an answer or solution to sth

## Separable phrasal verbs



I turned the volume up.



I threw the papers away.



I switched the light on.  
(OPP switch sth off)

fill sth in	<i>I received the form, so I filled it in.</i>	complete a form, etc. by writing information on it
check sth out	<i>We're going to check out the restaurants in the area.</i>	find out more information about sth
put sth out	<i>They put the fire out very quickly.</i>	make sth stop burning, e.g. a fire, cigarette, etc.

## SPOTLIGHT separable phrasal verbs

With separable phrasal verbs, the object can go (1) after the verb and particle, (2) or between the verb and the particle, but (3) a pronoun must go between the verb and particle.

1 He put on his jacket. ✓

2 He put his jacket on. ✓

3 He put it on. ✓ (NOT He put on it.)

1 Can you put another word between the different parts of these phrasal verbs?

- |              |                          |              |                             |
|--------------|--------------------------|--------------|-----------------------------|
| ▶ get into   | <u>No (get into sth)</u> | ▶ throw away | <u>Yes (throw sth away)</u> |
| 1 go off     | .....                    | 4 bump into  | .....                       |
| 2 switch on  | .....                    | 5 fill in    | .....                       |
| 3 get out of | .....                    | 6 put on     | .....                       |

2 Do these sentences need an object? If so, add a possible ending. If not, write -.

- |                                 |   |
|---------------------------------|---|
| ▶ Then I woke up. -             | ▶ I want to get out of <u>cleaning the house.</u> |
| 1 Several cars broke down. .... | 5 He said he'd drop by. ....                      |
| 2 I'd like to get into. ....    | 6 The alarm went off. ....                        |
| 3 She pulled up. ....           | 7 I ran into. ....                                |
| 4 The bed takes up. ....        | 8 Look out. ....                                  |

3 Right or wrong? Write R or W. Correct the wrong answers.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| ▶ She threw away it. <u>W - She threw it away.</u> |   |
| 1 I've gone tea off. ....                          | 5 I ran Tina into today in town. ....                 |
| 2 Put your coat on. ....                           | 6 She can't switch off it. ....                       |
| 3 How do I get out of going to the concert? .....  | 7 I wasn't expecting Sara - she just dropped by. .... |
| 4 Why did they stay so late up? .....              | 8 Did you fill in it? .....                           |

4 Circle the correct answer.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| ▶ She put <u>on</u> / in her shoes.                                  | 4 I got <u>in</u> / into journalism about twenty years ago. It's changed a lot. |
| 1 I always try to get out <u>of</u> / from doing the washing up.     | 5 I <u>switched off</u> / out the TV.   |
| 2 Who came <u>down</u> / up with that idea?                          | 6 Did they put <u>out</u> / off the fire?                                       |
| 3 Don't stay <u>up</u> / down too late - you've got school tomorrow. | 7 The bed takes <u>on</u> / up most of the room.                                |
|  | 8 Look <u>over</u> / out, there's a big hole in the road.                       |

5 Complete the phrasal verbs in the questions.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1 What time do you usually <u>wake</u> ..... up .....                 | <b>ABOUT YOU</b><br>.....<br>.....<br>.....<br>.....<br>.....<br>.....<br>..... |
| 2 Have you ever had to p..... o..... a fire?                          |   |
| 3 What was the last form you f..... i.....?                           |   |
| 4 Is there any food, drink or activity you've g..... o..... recently? |   |
| 5 When was the last time you t..... some clothes a.....?              |   |
| 6 Have you ever b..... d..... in a car?                               |   |
| 7 Have you ever s..... u..... all night?                              |   |
| 8 Do you ever r..... i..... other people in your class in the street? |   |

6 Complete the sentences with a suitable phrasal verb.

- ▶ I didn't hear my alarm clock and didn't wake up ..... until 9 o'clock.
- 1 We didn't need the files any longer, so I ..... them .....
- 2 You can't smoke in here. You'll have to ..... that cigarette .....
- 3 It was getting dark, so I ..... the light .....
- 4 She didn't expect to see Ellie; she just ..... her in the street.
- 5 My niece wants to ..... politics as a career.
- 6 I had to ..... a form to get a new passport.
- 7 The car ..... and I had to phone for help.
- 8 I asked the driver to stop, and he ..... outside the police station.
- 9 I'm looking for an English course, so I need to ..... a few schools.
- 10 I can't hear the radio very well. Could you ..... it ....., please?

7 ABOUT YOU Write answers to the questions in Exercise 5, or talk to another student.



## A Meaning

Sometimes the meaning of a phrasal verb is very similar to the meaning of the base verb, e.g. **sit down, stand up, lie down, wake up, save up (for sth), hurry up, hang sth up**:

*I'm **saving up** for a new computer.*

***Hang** your coat **up** behind the door.*

More often, the meaning of a phrasal verb is different from the meaning of the base verb:

*We **set off** for the coast at about 7.30.*

*I **picked up** a bit of Greek when I was on holiday.*

*Greg **turned up** late again, so the boss gave him a warning.*

*She told me she was leaving but I couldn't **take it in**.*

*The boys **take after** their father: they're all very practical.*

*The neighbour is so noisy. I can't **put up with** it any longer.*

*They offered me a trip to Paris, but I **turned it down**.*

*I'm too busy.*

## GLOSSARY

<b>set off</b>	start a journey SYN <b>set out</b>
<b>pick sth up</b>	learn sth without formal lessons
<b>turn up</b>	arrive, appear
<b>take sth in</b>	understand what you hear, see or read
<b>take after sb</b>	look or behave like an older member of your family
<b>put up with sth/sb</b>	suffer sth/sb unpleasant and not complain about it
<b>turn sth/sb down</b>	refuse an offer, etc. or the person who makes it

## SPOTLIGHT different meanings

Some phrasal verbs may have more than one meaning, sometimes with a different grammatical pattern.

- *The plane couldn't **take off** because of bad weather.* (= leave the ground)
- *Jonah's business has really **taken off**.* (= suddenly start being successful)
- *It was hot so I **took** my jacket **off**.* (= remove)

## 1 Change the base verb to a phrasal verb.

- ▶ I asked them to stand. **up** .....
- 1 I sat on the bed. ....
  - 2 They woke late this morning. ....
  - 3 I'm saving for my holiday. ....

- 4 He asked me to lie over there. ....
- 5 I told them to hurry. ....
- 6 Where shall I hang my jacket? .....

## 2 Circle the correct answer(s). Be careful: both answers may be correct.

- ▶ The plane took **up / off** an hour late.
- 1 The flat they offered me looked rather dirty so I turned it **out / down**.
  - 2 I don't know how you put **up / out** with my brother.
  - 3 We want to set **out / off** before the traffic gets bad.

- 4 It was hot, so I **took / put** off my tie.
- 5 The lesson was difficult. I couldn't take it all **after / in**.
- 6 The children didn't **take / turn** up until midnight.
- 7 I didn't actually study French. I just **picked / took** it up.
- 8 She decided to **lie / lie down** on the floor.

## 3 Complete the dialogues.

▶ The children's behaviour is terrible.

- 1 Did you start early?
- 2 Do we have to leave now?
- 3 Why haven't you kept your coat on?
- 4 Is his career going well?
- 5 What time did the builder arrive?
- 6 Alice is so good at maths.
- 7 How did you learn to play the guitar?
- 8 Did they offer Ned the job?

- ~ I know. I can't **put** ..... **up** ..... **with** ..... it much longer.
- ~ Yes, we ..... at about seven.
- ~ Yes, so ..... !
- ~ I ..... it ..... because it was wet.
- ~ Yes, it's really .....
- ~ He was late and finally ..... at 11.00.
- ~ She ..... her father. He's a maths professor.
- ~ I ..... it ..... watching YouTube videos.
- ~ Yes, but he's going to ..... it ..... The salary is terrible.



## TEST YOURSELF

## B In the classroom

TEACHER How are you **getting on**, Suki?  
 STUDENT I can't **work out** question seven.  
 TEACHER OK. **Leave it out** and **go on to** the next one.  
 STUDENT Fine, thank you.

TEACHER Could you **pick up** those bits of paper and put them in the bin?

TEACHER OK, I'm afraid we've **run out of** time. Please **tidy up** before you go.

STUDENT Shall I **give out** the dictionaries?  
 TEACHER Yes, but could you **put them back** when you've finished.

TEACHER If we **get through** the exercises today, we can **go over** the answers tomorrow.

### GLOSSARY

<b>get on (with sth)</b>	make progress with sth you are doing	<b>tidy up</b>	make sth tidy; put everything in the correct place
<b>work sth out</b>	find an answer to an exercise, a problem, etc.	<b>give sth out</b>	give one of sth to each person in a group SYN <b>hand sth out</b>
<b>leave sth out</b>	not include sth SYN <b>omit formal</b>	<b>put sth back</b>	return sth to its place
<b>go on (to sth)</b>	continue (with sth) SYN <b>move on (to sth)</b>	<b>get through sth</b>	complete a task or activity
<b>pick sth up</b>	take hold of sth and lift it to a higher place OPP <b>put sth down</b>	<b>go over sth</b>	look at, think about or discuss sth carefully from beginning to end SYN <b>go through sth</b>
<b>run out (of sth)</b>	finish your supply of sth: I've <b>run out of coffee</b> .		

#### 4 Make sentences from the words.

- ▶ go / can / later / we / it / over
- 1 out / bread / afraid / run / we've / of / I'm
- 2 chairs / before / put / the / go / back / you
- 3 you / out / them / could / hand ?
- 4 work / get / with / I / on / must / my
- 5 it / difficult / out / if / it's / leave
- 6 tried / out / couldn't / it / I / work / but / I

We can go over it later.

#### 5 Replace the underlined words with a phrasal verb with the same meaning.

- ▶ We put everything in order before we left.
- 1 Do you want us to omit the next exercise?
- 2 Do you think we'll complete the book by the end of term?
- 3 I couldn't find an answer to the last question.
- 4 Do the exercise for homework and we'll check it on Thursday.
- 5 I asked her about her course yesterday. She's not doing very well.
- 6 Let's finish this first, then we can continue with Exercise 6.

We tidied up before we left.

#### 6 Complete the sentences with a suitable phrasal verb.

- ▶ If you don't want to do it, you can leave it out.
- 1 Could you \_\_\_\_\_ the books to the other students, Claude?
- 2 I'd like to \_\_\_\_\_ Unit 5 by Friday, then start Unit 6 on Monday.
- 3 I don't know why the dictionaries aren't on the shelf. I \_\_\_\_\_ them \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday.
- 4 You all did the homework last night, didn't you? How did you \_\_\_\_\_ ?
- 5 Marcel; you've got stuff everywhere. Make sure you \_\_\_\_\_ before you leave.
- 6 I can't write any more: I've \_\_\_\_\_ of paper.
- 7 We couldn't \_\_\_\_\_ the answer until the teacher gave us some help.
- 8 My bag was very heavy. I had to keep \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ and putting it down.



### TEST YOURSELF

## A In conversation

- A How's it going with that flat you're buying?
- B Well, there are **one or two** things still to organize, but it's fine **so far**. We're **about to** see the lawyer to go through a few more documents, then we hope to exchange contracts in a **week or so**.
- B Great. And are you moving in **straight away**?
- A Well, we haven't **made up our minds** about that yet. There's **quite a bit** to do – putting in a new bathroom and decorating, **for a start** – so we may have to ask my brother to **do us a favour** and let us stay in his spare room for a **while**.

SPOTLIGHT *mind*

There are a number of expressions using **mind**:

**make up your mind** decide

▪ *Come on! **Make up your mind!***

**change your mind** change your decision or opinion

▪ *I was going to Paris, but I've **changed my mind**.*

**never mind** = it doesn't matter

▪ *I forgot the letter. ~ Oh, **never mind**.*

## GLOSSARY

<b>How's it going?</b>	a spoken phrase used to ask sb about their progress or general situation	<b>straight away</b>	immediately; now
<b>one or two</b>	a few	<b>quite a bit</b>	a fairly large amount or number
<b>so far</b>	until now	<b>for a start</b> <i>inf</i>	words you use when you give your first reason for sth
<b>be about to do sth</b>	be going to do sth very soon	<b>do sb a favour</b>	do sth to help sb
<b>or so</b>	used to show a number is not exact or accurate: <i>a week/day, etc. or so</i> ; <b>SYN</b> <b>or two</b>	<b>for a while</b>	for a short period of time

## 1 Find seven more expressions using words from each box.

for ✓    quite    straight    never  
make up    so    a week    for

far    your mind    away    a while ✓  
a bit    or two    a start    mind

- ▶ for a while \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_

## 2 Make correct sentences from the words.

- ▶ money / I / have / a / start / don't / enough / for    For a start, I don't have enough money.
- 1 do / a / could / you / favour / me ? \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 up / I / yet / made / haven't / mind / my \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 new / in / going / your / how's / job / it ? \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 she's / her / to / new / about / course / start \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 month / they'll / a / for / be / or / away / so \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 you / again / mind / your / have / changed ? \_\_\_\_\_

## 3 Agree with the questions using an expression that keeps the same meaning.

- ▶ Are you going away for a bit?    ~ Yes, just for a week or so.
- 1 Has the job been OK until now?    ~ Yeah, \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 Are you staying at Henry's for a few weeks?    ~ Yes, \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 Are you going immediately?    ~ Yes, \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 Have you got a few ideas?    ~ Yes, \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 Is there a lot to do on the new house?    ~ Yes, \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 Have you both decided where to go yet?    ~ Yeah, we've \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7 Did you help her?    ~ Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_.
- 8 Is the class finishing very soon?    ~ Yes, it's \_\_\_\_\_.



## TEST YOURSELF

## B Short responses

In conversation, we often use common expressions as short responses.

- A I've just passed my driving test.  
 B Oh, **well done**. Congratulations!  
 A What do you **feel like** doing?  
 B **It's up to you**.  
 A Did you **tip** the waiter?  
 B **No way!** The service was terrible.  
 A Can I ask you another question?  
 B No, **go away!** I'm trying to work.  
 A Are you going away this summer?  
 B **That depends**.  
 A Is anyone sitting here?  
 B No, **help yourself**.  
 A I'm afraid I **can't make it** tonight.  
 B Oh, **what a pity**.

### GLOSSARY

<b>well done</b>	used when sb has just done sth very well SYN <b>congratulations</b> used when sb is getting married, etc.
<b>feel like sth / doing sth</b>	want to do sth
<b>it's up to you</b>	= it's your decision or responsibility
<b>tip</b>	give sb a small amount of extra money to sb who serves you, e.g. in a restaurant <b>tip n</b>
<b>no way! inf</b>	a strong way of saying 'no'
<b>that depends</b>	words you use to show that sth is not certain SYN <b>it depends</b>
<b>help yourself make it</b>	used to tell sb they can do sth or take sth If you <b>can't make it</b> , it means you won't be able to go to sth at a particular time.
<b>what a pity</b>	used to express sadness or disappointment SYN <b>what a shame</b> ALSO <b>that's a pity/shame</b>

### SPOTLIGHT *go away*

**Go away** can mean:

- leave the place where you live for at least one night, usually to go on holiday: *We're **going away** for the weekend.*
- tell somebody to leave a person or place, usually because they are disturbing you SYN **leave sb alone**

#### 4 Positive, negative, or not sure? Write P, S or not sure.

- ▶ No way! N \_\_\_\_\_
- |                          |                               |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1 That's a pity. _____   | 6 Well done. _____            |
| 2 Congratulations! _____ | 7 It's up to you. _____       |
| 3 It depends. _____      | 8 I don't feel like it. _____ |
| 4 Leave me alone. _____  | 9 He gave me a tip. _____     |
| 5 What a shame. _____    |                               |

#### 5 Replace the underlined words with words that keep the same meaning.

- ▶ I'll have to leave the course - I'm too busy. ~ What a pity. shame \_\_\_\_\_
- Can I ride your horse? ~ Certainly not. \_\_\_\_\_
  - Oh, well done. \_\_\_\_\_
  - Are you going next week? ~ Possibly. \_\_\_\_\_
  - Leave me alone! \_\_\_\_\_
  - What do you want to do? \_\_\_\_\_
  - Where shall we go? ~ You decide. \_\_\_\_\_
  - Do you need this chair? ~ No, take it. \_\_\_\_\_
  - I'm afraid I can't come this evening. \_\_\_\_\_
  - He gave some extra money for service to the driver. \_\_\_\_\_

#### 6 Complete the dialogues using a suitable expression.

- ▶ Are you going on Tuesday? ~ No, I'm afraid I can't make it. \_\_\_\_\_
- Where shall we go? ~ I don't mind. \_\_\_\_\_
  - Can I borrow your car? ~ No, \_\_\_\_\_! Your driving is terrible.
  - I've got a new job. ~ Wow! \_\_\_\_\_
  - Are you coming out with us? ~ No, I'm working! \_\_\_\_\_!
  - Could I borrow your dictionary? ~ Of course. \_\_\_\_\_
  - Why don't you want to go to the cinema? ~ I don't know. I just don't \_\_\_\_\_.
  - Will you be here next week? ~ No, we're \_\_\_\_\_.
  - Sam and Scarlett can't make it tonight. ~ Oh, \_\_\_\_\_.



### TEST YOURSELF

## A Linking expressions

The Council are proposing to replace the old Avon Street multi-storey car park with new modern office space, a leisure park, and a much smaller underground car park. They say:

- they are doing it **in order to** reduce the number of cars in the town centre.
- it will **result in** less pollution, which is largely **due to** cars.
- **in contrast to** an earlier plan, this scheme provides much needed office space, **as well as** a leisure park.
- it is good for residents, and **what's more**, tourists will find it more attractive.
- that **even if** they kept a large car park, the existing one would have to be rebuilt at enormous cost.

**At the same time**, motorists say there won't be enough parking spaces in the town centre. Other residents have said they might support it, **depending on** the cost. **To put it another way**, they will support it if they don't have to pay too much for it.

## GLOSSARY

<b>in order to do sth</b>	so that you can do sth
<b>result in sth</b>	make sth happen; cause
<b>due to sth/sb</b>	because of sth/sb
<b>in contrast to sth</b>	showing a difference between two things/people
<b>as well (as sth/sb)</b>	in addition to sth/sb
<b>what's more</b>	used for adding another fact; also
<b>even if</b>	used for saying that what follows <i>if</i> makes no difference
<b>at the same time</b>	used to introduce a contrasting fact <b>SYN on the other hand</b>
<b>depending on sb/sth</b>	used for saying you are not certain of sth until other things have been considered
<b>to put it another way</b>	used to introduce a different way of saying the same thing <b>SYN in other words</b>

## 1 Complete the expressions.

- ▶ due to
- 1 in other \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 depending \_\_\_\_\_ the weather
- 3 what's \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 in contrast \_\_\_\_\_ December
- 5 result \_\_\_\_\_ war
- 6 even \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 at the same \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 in order \_\_\_\_\_ improve conditions

## 2 Complete the sentences in a logical way.

- ▶ My father came to the concert as well as my mother.
- 1 The accident was due to \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 I bought a telescope in order to \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 Sarah doesn't tell the truth. To put it another way, she \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 The beds were small, and what's more, \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 I wouldn't do a 50 km walk even if \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 The new machines will result in \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7 It's not a very attractive suitcase and was expensive. At the same time, \_\_\_\_\_.
- 8 We may have a picnic, depending on \_\_\_\_\_.

## 3 Complete the sentences with a suitable expression.

- ▶ The new timetable is much better, and I think it will also result in \_\_\_\_\_ a better service.
- 1 With this phone, I get much more data \_\_\_\_\_ unlimited free calls and texts.
- 2 To be honest, I think most of his success was \_\_\_\_\_ luck.
- 3 This food mixer is difficult to use and clean, \_\_\_\_\_ it was a bad buy.
- 4 The children are noisy and a bit rude, and \_\_\_\_\_, their parents are no better.
- 5 I may have time for lunch, \_\_\_\_\_ what time I get there.
- 6 I had to go to the station \_\_\_\_\_ buy some tickets.
- 7 \_\_\_\_\_ Dad's old flat, which was small and dark, the new place has big rooms and is really light.
- 8 I don't think the job is well paid. \_\_\_\_\_, it's a good company with good prospects.



## TEST YOURSELF

## B Trouble with exams

Hi Abi

Well, yesterday's exam was a **total disaster**! I worked all night, trying to **learn** everything **by heart**, but it **didn't make any difference** - I still couldn't answer the questions. **I'm getting nowhere** and it's kind of worrying - I'm just getting **more and more** stressed. And I've got another three exams next week!

Send

Hi Tara

Look, you can only **do your best**. I wouldn't stay up all night, **if I were you**. You'd be **better off** having an **early night**. I usually stop every 30 minutes for a short break. Why don't you **give that a go**?

Send

### GLOSSARY

<b>total</b>	complete: <b>a total disaster</b>	<b>do/try your best</b>	do all or the most that you can
<b>by heart</b>	by remembering sth exactly: <b>learn sth by heart</b>	<b>if I were you</b>	used when you are giving advice
<b>make a difference</b>	have an effect: <b>make no difference / not make any difference</b>	<b>be better off (doing sth)</b>	be in a more pleasant or suitable situation
<b>get somewhere/nowhere</b>	make/not make progress	<b>an early night</b>	an evening when you go to bed earlier/later than usual <b>OPP a late night</b>
<b>kind of inf</b>	a little	<b>a go (at sth/doing sth) inf</b>	an occasion when you try to do sth: <b>give sth a go / have a go at sth</b>
<b>more and more</b>	an increasing amount or number		

#### 4 Same or different? Write S or D.

▶ I'm having an early night. / I'm going to bed early.

1 if I were you / if I knew you

2 It's a total disaster. / It's a complete disaster.

3 more and more / more or less

4 I'll give the game a go. / I'll try to play the game.

S

5 She learns verbs by heart. / She learns verbs easily.

6 I'm kind of busy. / I'm incredibly busy.

7 You'd be better off going to bed. / You'd prefer to be in bed.

8 I'm getting somewhere. / I'm making progress.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

#### 5 One word is missing in each sentence. What is it, and where does it go? Write it at the end.

▶ The meal was a total / - I'm never cooking fish for anyone again.

1 You don't look well. I think you'd be off staying at home tomorrow.

2 Donna had a very night so she's tired and in a bad mood today.

3 I've never been horse riding, but I'd love to give a go.

4 When I was at school, we learnt irregular verbs heart. I can still remember them.

5 Whatever you say, it won't make difference. I'm not going to work!

6 I'm writing a novel, and it's very difficult. I feel I'm nowhere. I may just give up.

7 I know it's hard but if I you, I would try to put the children to bed earlier.

8 Marisa is kind odd, but she can be fun to be with.

disaster

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

#### 6 Complete the dialogues.

▶ You've had no luck finding a job, then?

1 Are you happy to try the race?

2 Are you going to bed so soon?

3 Can you be here before ten tomorrow?

4 Did you talk to someone about your problems?

5 Is the new company making progress?

6 Did you study poetry at school?

7 Are you looking forward to the holiday?

8 What shall I do about the car?

~ No, it's terrible. I'm getting nowhere.

~ Yes, I'll .....

~ Yes, I need .....

~ OK, I'll do .....

~ Yes, and it made .....

~ Yes, at last we're .....

~ Yes, I still remember the poems I learnt .....

~ Yes, I'm getting more .....

~ I'd sell it, if I .....



### TEST YOURSELF

**A Likes and dislikes**



**MISCHA BARON:  
the food king!**

I'm mad about food and I absolutely love cooking.

I'm very fond of spicy Asian food, particularly Thai and Korean.

I'm not very keen on washing up afterwards, though!

As a child, I didn't like cabbage very much, but I've got used to it now.

There are only two things I really dislike: one is sweetcorn, and the other thing I can't stand is yoghurt.

I don't like takeaway food at all.

**Meaning**

be mad about sth/sb *inf* like sth/sb very much

SYN be crazy about sth/sb *inf*

absolutely love (doing) sth *inf* love (doing) sth very much

be fond of sth/sb / of doing sth like or enjoy sth/sb, especially sth/sb you have liked for a long time

spicy having a strong taste because it contains powder of the seeds from a plant

be keen on (doing) sth *inf* (usually used in the negative) like or enjoy (doing) sth

get used to sth start to know sth well or accept it after a time

dislike *rather formal* not like sth/sb dislike *n*

can't stand (doing) sth strongly dislike SYN hate

not at all not in any way. If you don't like sth at all, you dislike it very much.

**SPOTLIGHT** word order with *like/enjoy*, etc.

Look at the word order in these examples.

▪ I like cooking **very much**. (NOT *I like very much cooking*.) ▪ Jules likes Japanese food **a lot**. ▪ She **doesn't enjoy** eating meat **very much**.

**1 Write the words and phrases in the wordpool in the correct column.**

hate ✓ can't stand	be mad about not like (sth) at all	be fond of be crazy about	absolutely love be keen on
-----------------------	---------------------------------------	------------------------------	-------------------------------

like very much	like	dislike
.....	.....	hate
.....	.....	.....
.....	.....	.....

**2 Rewrite the sentences using the words on the right. The meaning must stay the same.**

- ▶ I don't enjoy eating in street cafés. FOND I'm not very fond of eating in street cafés.
- 1 My sister absolutely loves seafood. CRAZY .....
- 2 I hate cooking for a lot of people. STAND .....
- 3 Sayid doesn't like spicy food very much. KEEN .....
- 4 My father really dislikes fish. AT ALL .....
- 5 I'm not very fond of fried food. LIKE; VERY MUCH .....
- 6 I'm starting to like the local food here. GET USED TO .....

**3 ABOUT YOU** Correct the mistakes in the sentence beginnings.

- ▶ I'm not very keen for ... I'm not very keen on
- 1 I'm mad in ... ..
- 2 I don't stand ... ..
- 3 I very don't much like ... ..
- 4 I not very fond of ... ..
- 5 I love absolutely ... ..
- 6 Recently, I've got use to ... ..
- 7 I hate cook ... ..

**4 ABOUT YOU** Complete the sentences in Exercise 3. Write about food or other things you like or like doing. If possible, tell another student.

- ▶ I'm not very keen on food that is very spicy.



## B Preferences and responses

In general, do you prefer black or white coffee? ~ I prefer my coffee black. ~ So do I.	prefer X or Y like one thing or person more than another so do I = me too (Use so to agree with a positive statement.)
Do you prefer lamb to beef? ~ Oh, no. I can't stand lamb. ~ No, neither can I.	prefer X to Y neither/nor can I I think the same as you. (Use neither to agree with a negative statement.)
Do you usually go to the office? Yes, but I prefer working at home.	prefer doing (sth)
Would you prefer to } stay in or go out tonight? Would you rather } ~ I'd rather stay in (than go out). ~ So would I.	would prefer to do sth would like to do one thing more than another thing SYN would rather do sth
Shall we have rice or pasta? Do you have a preference? ~ I don't mind what we have. Whatever you prefer.	Do you have a preference? = Which do you prefer? I don't mind. = I don't have a strong opinion about it. whatever used to say it doesn't matter to the speaker which thing is chosen

### SPOTLIGHT so/neither do/have/can, etc.

When we use so and neither to express the same opinion as the speaker, we use auxiliary verbs be, do, did, have, and modal verbs would, can, should, etc.

- I like ice cream. ~ So do I.
- I've tried crocodile meat. ~ So have I.
- I'd prefer water, please. ~ So would I.
- I don't mind sugar in coffee. ~ Neither do I.
- I can't stand butter. ~ Neither can I.
- I didn't like that film. ~ Neither did I.

### 5 One word is missing for each speaker. What is it, and where does it go?

- ▶ A Would you / banana or cherry yoghurt? prefer
- B I /mind. don't
- 1 A I can't stand hip hop music.  
B can I - I hate it. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 A We can fly or drive. Do you a preference? \_\_\_\_\_  
B Not really - you prefer. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 A I rather see a film than sit here all evening. \_\_\_\_\_  
B So I. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 A I speaking English to writing it. \_\_\_\_\_  
B do I. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 A I mind where we go on holiday. \_\_\_\_\_  
B do I. Anywhere hot! \_\_\_\_\_

### 6 Agree with the statements using so or neither and the correct verb and subject.

- ▶ I prefer working in a team. ~ So do I.
- 1 I'm mad about cooking. ~ \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 I've eaten a lot of spicy food. ~ \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 I can't stand people smoking next to me. ~ \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Orange or apple juice? I don't have a preference.  
~ \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 I'd rather have chicken than fish. ~ \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 I didn't like cabbage at school. ~ \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 I don't mind where we stay. ~ \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 I'd prefer to live in a city than a village. ~ \_\_\_\_\_

### 7 Complete the questions.

- ▶ Do you prefer getting up very early or very late?
- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ you prefer to be a champion horse rider or a champion footballer?
- 2 Would you \_\_\_\_\_ have a lot of friends or only a few close ones?
- 3 Would you \_\_\_\_\_ to live an extra ten years, or have \$1,000,000?
- 4 In general, I \_\_\_\_\_ mind what time I eat in the evening. What about you?
- 5 Pop or classical music. Do you have a \_\_\_\_\_?
- 6 Do you prefer Mondays \_\_\_\_\_ Fridays?

### ABOUT YOU

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

### 8 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 7, or ask another student.



## Next week in the life of pessimistic Poppy, aged 15



- Sunday: I'm going to a barbecue next Saturday. I'll **definitely** see Max (the boy I fancy).
- Monday: My best friend Sarah said she's going. She's prettier than me, so Max is more **likely** to fancy her.
- Tuesday: I've got nothing to wear - I **doubt** that he'll even notice me.
- Wednesday: If he does speak to me, I **expect** he'll think I'm silly.
- Thursday: I've heard there's another party on Saturday - Max **might** go there instead.
- Friday: There's a **good chance** it'll rain tomorrow. The barbecue will be a disaster.
- Saturday: Woke up with a **spot** on my face - I'm **definitely** not going. It's so **unfair**!

### GLOSSARY

<b>pessimistic</b>	always believing bad things will happen <b>OPP optimistic</b>
<b>(about sth)</b>	
<b>definitely</b>	certainly; for sure
<b>fancy sb inf</b>	be sexually attracted to sb
<b>likely (to do sth)</b>	If sth is <b>likely</b> , it will probably happen. <b>OPP unlikely (to do sth)</b>
<b>doubt (that)</b>	think that sth probably will not happen or is not true
<b>expect</b>	think or believe sth will happen
<b>silly</b>	not sensible or clever; stupid
<b>might</b>	used to say that sth is possible <b>SYN may</b>
<b>a chance</b>	a possibility a <b>good chance</b> a more than 50% possibility
<b>spot</b>	an unpleasant red or yellow mark on the skin. Many teenagers have them.
<b>unfair</b>	not right, or not having the same advantages as sb else <b>OPP fair</b>

### 1 Good news or bad? Write G or B.

- ▶ I'm optimistic about the weather. G
- 1 They fancy each other. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 She thinks he's silly. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 The exam results were very unfair. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 I've got a big spot on my nose. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 She's very unlikely to fail the test. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 There's a good chance we'll win. \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 I don't expect to get the job. \_\_\_\_\_

### 2 Complete the definitions.

- ▶ If you are **pessimistic** that something will happen, you believe it won't happen.
- 1 If something is **definitely** going to happen, it will \_\_\_\_\_ happen.
- 2 If something is **likely to** happen, it will \_\_\_\_\_ happen.
- 3 If something **might** happen, you can also say that it \_\_\_\_\_ happen.
- 4 If there's a **chance** that something will happen, it means it's \_\_\_\_\_ that it will happen.
- 5 If you **expect** something to happen, it means you \_\_\_\_\_ it will happen.
- 6 If you think that something is **unlikely**, it means it is \_\_\_\_\_ not going to happen.
- 7 If you **doubt that** something will happen, it means you \_\_\_\_\_ think it is going to happen.
- 8 If you are **optimistic**, you always believe that \_\_\_\_\_ things will happen.

### 3 Rewrite the sentences using the word in capital letters.

- ▶ I'm not sure if we'll go out or not. MIGHT We might go out.
- 1 It's probable we'll lose the match. LIKELY \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 I'm sure you'll get there on time. DEFINITELY \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 I'm not sure if Keira will come. MAY \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 It's 75/25 whether they'll win the election. CHANCE \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 I don't think we'll see the film at 10.00. DOUBT \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 I think prices will probably go up. EXPECT \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 I don't think the sales results will be good. PESSIMISTIC \_\_\_\_\_



### TEST YOURSELF

## Labradors

In looks, Boss and Sam are almost **identical**, **except** that Boss is a bit bigger. Jake and Boss are **similar**, **except for** their colour. The **similarity** between Sam and Jake is that they both have large ears, **unlike** Boss whose ears are quite small. In character, though, none of them are **alike**. **Compared with** Jake and Boss, Sam is very lazy. In fact, he's **completely different** from the other two, **apart from** the fact that he'll eat anything – all Labradors will. With the other two, **the main difference** is that Boss is rather quiet **in comparison with** Jake.



Boss



Sam



Jake

### GLOSSARY

<b>identical</b>	without a single difference SYN <b>exactly the same</b>
<b>except</b>	not including sb/sth ( <b>except that</b> + clause OR <b>except for</b> + noun)
<b>similar (to sb/sth)</b>	like sb/sth, but not the same <b>similarity (between X and Y) n</b>
<b>unlike</b>	used when saying how one person/thing is different from another
<b>alike</b>	very similar (Don't use <b>alike</b> before a noun.)
<b>completely different</b>	different in every way
<b>apart from sb/sth</b>	except for sb/sth
<b>the main difference</b>	the most important difference

### SPOTLIGHT *compare v and comparison n*

When you **compare** people or things, you say how they are different.

- If you **compare dogs and with cats**, dogs are usually noisier.
- **Compared with/to dogs**, cats are very clean.
- **In comparison with dogs**, cats are more independent.

### 1 Replace the underlined words with a different word or phrase with the same meaning.

- ▶ Barley is like my other dog.  
 1 She's very tall compared with Bruno.  
 2 I liked all of the dogs except for the little one.  
 3 The two cats aren't very similar.  
 4 The most important difference is colour.  
 5 A Labrador is very big in comparison with a dachshund.  
 6 My two cats look exactly the same.  
 7 The dogs are, in every way, different.  
 8 My dog is different from other dogs – he doesn't like walks.

similar to

.....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....

### 2 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ If you compare the two books, it's amazing how different they are.  
 1 Mitzy is very ..... to her brother Bo; they both love swimming in the local river.  
 2 ..... with Rocky, my new dog is quite active. Rocky never moves!  
 3 There is one major ..... between the two horses: they've both won important races.  
 4 This dog is like the one next door, ..... that this one's got a lot more hair.  
 5 ..... his very clean sister Gucci, Boris is a dirty, smelly dog.  
 6 Some people say my two cats are ....., but I think they're ..... different.  
 7 I didn't enjoy the film about the dogs, ..... from the ending which was great.  
 8 The main ..... between the two cats is that Petra is heavier.

### 3 ABOUT YOU AND YOUR COUNTRY Write sentences about the similarities and differences between two members of your family or two cities in your country.



TEST YOURSELF

A Simple pleasures

I'm very happy **indeed** when I find money I didn't know I had.

I really **appreciate** it when taxi drivers help me with my luggage.

Going on a skiing holiday and finding that the conditions are **ideal** - that's wonderful.

**Happiness** is that first cold drink when you've been for a long run.

It **gives me such pleasure** when I manage to get the last free space in a car park.

Holding hands with the person I love - that's **my idea of heaven**.

The **sight** of my dog running on the beach **lifts my spirits**.

I love the **familiar** smell of my mother's cooking. It's simple: nothing **fancy**.

Waking up and finding I have another hour to sleep - that's often the **highlight** of my day!

GLOSSARY

<b>indeed</b>	a word which makes sth positive that you say stronger	<b>pleasure</b>	the feeling of being happy or enjoying sth <b>give sb pleasure</b>
<b>happiness</b>	the feeling of being happy	<b>familiar</b>	If sth is <b>familiar</b> to you, you know it well.
<b>sight</b>	seeing sb/sth	<b>fancy</b>	not simple or ordinary
<b>spirits pl</b>	a person's feelings or state of mind <b>lift sb's spirits</b> make sb feel happier (Sb's <b>spirit</b> is their mind, feelings and character.)	<b>ideal</b>	the best or exactly right <b>SYN perfect</b>
<b>appreciate</b>	be thankful for sth that sb has done for you	<b>heaven</b>	the place where many people believe God is and where good people go when they die <b>my idea of heaven</b> <i>inf</i> a situation in which you are very happy
		<b>highlight</b>	the best, most interesting or most exciting part of sth

1 Underline the main stress in these words. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.

- ▶ spirits
- ▶ indeed
- ▶ highlight
- ▶ familiar
- ▶ heaven
- ▶ happiness
- ▶ ideal
- ▶ appreciate

2 Match 1-7 with a-h.

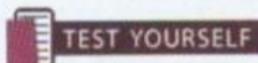
- ▶ the sight of
  - 1 The highlight
  - 2 Cycling gives me
  - 3 I appreciate
  - 4 The sun lifted
  - 5 Walking in a forest is my idea
  - 6 My ideal
  - 7 Happiness
- a a lot of pleasure.
  - b my spirits this morning.
  - c meal contains fresh fish.
  - d my children makes me happy ✓
  - e of my week is football on Monday evening.
  - f is loving someone and being loved.
  - g of heaven.
  - h your help.

3 One word is missing in each sentence. What is it, and where does it go?

- ▶ I was very surprised / when I won the prize. indeed
- 1 The man carried my case from the train, and I really it. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 The hotel is next to a beach, which is for people with young children. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Seeing the Taj Mahal was the of our trip to India. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 The of my son riding a bike for the first time was fantastic. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 I had a swim in the ocean today. It's my of heaven. \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 I don't like restaurants - I just like places with simple food. \_\_\_\_\_

4 ABOUT YOU Complete the sentences with one word and your own ending.

- ▶ The highlight of my day is seeing my wife's face first thing in the morning.
- 1 I love the f \_\_\_\_\_ smell of \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 It gives me great p \_\_\_\_\_ when \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 I'm very happy i \_\_\_\_\_ when \_\_\_\_\_.



## B Annoying habits

- A I'm so **fed up with** the guy in the flat next to me.  
 B Oh, dear. Is it the **usual** problem?  
 A Yes - his loud music really **annoys** me. **Even though** I've made **repeated** requests for him to turn it down, he just **can't be bothered** to do anything about it.  
 B Oh, that must really **get on your nerves**.  
 A And he's got another **annoying habit**: he leaves his rubbish in the hall near my front door. That really **upsets** me!  
 B Do you want me to **have a word with** him about that?  
 A No, **don't bother** - he won't listen to you.

### SPOTLIGHT different uses of bother

**He can't be bothered to** do it. = He is too lazy to do it or not interested in doing it.

**Don't bother.** = Don't trouble yourself - it's not necessary.

**I'm sorry to bother you** = I'm sorry to interrupt you / stop you doing sth.

### GLOSSARY

<b>fed up (with sth/sb)</b>	bored or unhappy (with sth)
<b>usual</b>	that happens most often
<b>annoy</b>	make sb a little angry
<b>annoying adj</b>	
<b>even though</b>	although; used for introducing a fact that makes the main statement in your sentence very surprising
<b>repeated</b>	done many times
<b>get on sb's nerves habit</b>	make sb feel annoyed sth you do often or regularly without even thinking about it
<b>upset pt/pp</b>	<b>upset</b> make sb unhappy or angry
<b>have a word with sb</b>	have a short conversation with sb, usually privately

### 5 Rewrite the sentences in the correct order.

- ▶ my / fed / job / with / I'm / up / present  
 1 music / even / I / folk / don't / went / though / like / I  
 2 later / word / I / you / could / a / with / have ?  
 3 work / can't / to / I / be / today / bothered  
 4 bother / Dan / I'm / you / sorry / to  
 5 on / complain / who / get / nerves / people / my  
 6 today / usual / up / she / the / got / at / time

I'm fed up with this homework.

### 6 Complete the dialogues.

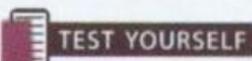
- ▶ Will you speak to Chika alone? ~ Yes, I'll **have** a word with her later.  
 1 Shall I shut the gate? ~ No, don't ..... Leave it open.  
 2 Taki talks with his mouth full. ~ I know, it's a very bad .....  
 3 You don't look happy. ~ No, I'm ..... up with my job at the moment.  
 4 Are you going to tidy the house? ~ Not now. I can't be .....  
 5 That woman's talking very loudly. ~ You're right. It's getting on my .....  
 6 I'm sorry to ..... you. ~ No problem. How can I help?  
 7 Why is Lara crying? ~ I think somebody has ..... her - probably Jimmy.  
 8 When did the cleaner arrive? ~ Oh, at the ..... time, 9.00.  
 9 Have the police been to see you yet? ~ No, and I've made ..... requests.  
 10 Alua never washes up after breakfast. ~ Yeah, I've noticed! It's a very ..... habit.

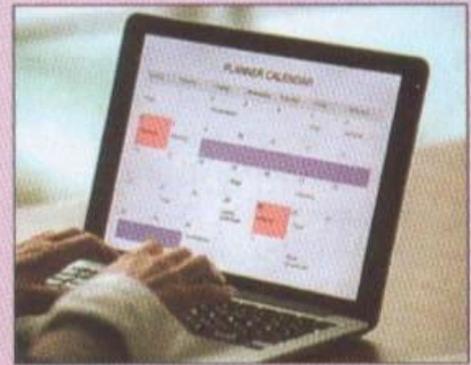
### 7 Complete the questions.

- ▶ Have you got any annoying **habits** .....? If so, what?  
 1 Is there anything you're ..... up with at the moment?  
 2 Is there anyone that ..... on your nerves?  
 3 Are there any jobs at home that you ..... be bothered to do?  
 4 Has anyone ..... you today and made you angry? If so, how?  
 5 Have you had a ..... with anyone today in private? If so, why?  
 6 Does it ..... you when people do something wrong and don't say sorry?  
 7 Is there anything you have to do even ..... you don't like doing it?

### ABOUT YOU

### 8 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 7, or ask another student.





- ALEX** Evan, we need to talk about the **presentation** in June. Can we **get together** next week at a time that's **convenient** for us both? I was thinking, **can you make it** on Monday morning?
- EVAN** Sorry, I'm not **available** then. **How about** Tuesday afternoon?
- ALEX** I **wish I could**, but I've got another meeting on Tuesday. Are you free on Wednesday morning?
- EVAN** I'm **supposed to** be seeing Jo Woods then, but I think I can **postpone** that. I'll **confirm it with you** later, but please **remind me** if I forget.

**GLOSSARY**

<b>presentation</b>	a formal talk at which sth is shown or explained to a group of people	<b>I wish I could</b>	= I want to, but it's impossible.
<b>get together</b>	meet	<b>be supposed to do sth/ be doing sth</b>	be expected to do sth or have to do sth SYN <b>be meant to do sth</b>
<b>convenient</b>	easy and not causing problems	<b>postpone</b>	decide that sth you had planned will happen at a later time SYN <b>put sth off</b>
<b>Can you make it?</b>	= Are you able to come?	<b>confirm sth (with sb)</b>	tell sb that a possible plan will definitely happen
<b>available</b>	free to see or talk to sb	<b>remind sb (of sth)</b>	help sb remember sth
<b>How about ...?</b>	= Can I suggest ...? SYN <b>What about ...?</b>		

**1 Is the meaning the same or different? Write S or D.**

- ▶ I'm *supposed / meant* to work tonight. S
- 1 We *put the meeting off / postponed the meeting*. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 I *wish I could / I'm going to* come. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 *What / How* about meeting on Friday lunchtime? \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Are you *available / convenient* next week? \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Did you *remind / remember* him? \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 I'm not *free / available* to see you then. \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 Did you go to the *presentation / meeting*? \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 We can *confirm / get together* next week. \_\_\_\_\_

**2 Complete the conversation.**

- A Jun, we must ▶ **get** \_\_\_\_\_ together next week to plan for the **(1)** p \_\_\_\_\_. Can you **(2)** m \_\_\_\_\_ it on Tuesday afternoon?
- B I **(3)** w \_\_\_\_\_ I could, but I'm busy all day. **(4)** H \_\_\_\_\_ about Wednesday?
- A No, I don't think I'm **(5)** a \_\_\_\_\_ then. I'm **(6)** s \_\_\_\_\_ to be seeing Callum about the business plan.
- B Oh, dear! Wednesday's the only day next week that works for me. Could you possibly **(7)** p \_\_\_\_\_ your computer meeting until the following week?
- A I'm not sure. I'll have to talk to Callum. Maybe I can get **(8)** t \_\_\_\_\_ with him the following week instead. OK, I'll **(9)** c \_\_\_\_\_ that with you tomorrow.

**3 Rewrite the sentences using the word in capitals in the correct form.**

- ▶ Can I suggest six o'clock? HOW How about six o'clock?
- 1 Can I meet you next week? TOGETHER \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 I'd love to, but I'm busy. WISH \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Could you arrange the meeting for another time? PUT \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Don't let me forget the appointment. REMIND \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 I'll tell you definitely tomorrow. CONFIRM \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 Are you able to come on Tuesday? MAKE \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 Is two o'clock a good time for you? CONVENIENT \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 I'm supposed to finish this by seven. MEAN \_\_\_\_\_
- 9 Will you be free to talk to me on Friday? AVAILABLE \_\_\_\_\_





GLOSSARY	
warning	a notice or statement that tells you to be careful <b>warn sb (of/about sth)</b>
safety	the state of not being dangerous: <b>safety glasses/helmet/boots</b>
require formal	1 officially demand or order sth: <i>Passports <b>are required</b> at the border.</i> 2 need: <i>Sick patients <b>require</b> kindness and understanding.</i>
chemical	a substance that is used or produced in a chemical process, e.g CO <sub>2</sub> , NaCl <b>chemical adj</b>
security	activities involved in protecting people, buildings and countries from danger: <b>a security guard</b>
guard	sb whose job is to protect a place or person <b>guard v</b>
caution	(used in notices) be careful
mind	used to tell sb to be careful of sth: <b>Mind your head.</b>
mine	a deep hole in the ground where people dig for coal, gold, etc.
official	sb who is in a position of authority, sometimes in government <b>official adj</b>

1 Circle the words that can be nouns.

careful security warning official mine guard be careful warn safety chemical require caution

2 Put the words in the correct order.

- ▶ mind / is / dish / your / that / hot / fingers / so That dish is hot, so mind your fingers.
- 1 mines / look / officials / after / the \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 the / safety / are / glasses / laboratory / required / in \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 mind / you / the / says / sign / warning / the / step / should \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 bottle / chemicals / are / that / there / dangerous / in \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 the / security / at / there / in / are / night / guards / building \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 watch / that / means / should / a / sign / caution / you / out \_\_\_\_\_

3 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ Be careful \_\_\_\_\_! There's a car coming!
- 1 There are security \_\_\_\_\_ outside all government offices to protect workers.
- 2 Why didn't you \_\_\_\_\_ me about the dog? It attacked me!
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_ the boxes in the hall when you leave the building.
- 4 Watch \_\_\_\_\_! There's a snake in the grass.
- 5 Anyone working on the new houses is \_\_\_\_\_ by law to wear a \_\_\_\_\_ helmet.
- 6 Those enormous dogs \_\_\_\_\_ the owner's property. No one would go near them.
- 7 There's a big yellow sign which says ' \_\_\_\_\_ - children playing in street'.
- 8 There's an \_\_\_\_\_ notice on the door about safety in the office.
- 9 The \_\_\_\_\_ industry, which produces plastics, soap and medicines, is a huge business worldwide.

TEST YOURSELF

## A Asking for and giving opinions

- A Apparently, the government's current **thinking** is to give university students free education. **What do you think about this?**
- B Personally, I **think** it's a good idea. It would be fairer for students who can't really afford higher education.
- B Yes, but can the country afford it? **Surely** that will just mean higher taxes for everyone? Anyway, **it seems to me** we need more skilled workers, such as builders.
- A I **see what you mean**, but we do need highly skilled and **qualified** workers as well.
- B True, but **the thing is**, we've already got too many graduates who can't get jobs.

### SPOTLIGHT giving opinions

**Personally, I think (that) ...** and **It seems to me ...**, are common ways of giving opinions. You may also hear: **In my opinion, ... formal** and **If you ask me, ...**

### GLOSSARY

<b>apparently</b>	based on what you have heard or read
<b>thinking (on sth)</b>	ideas and opinions about sth
<b>What do you think about ...?</b>	used to ask sb's opinion about a <b>general topic</b> (SYN <b>How do you feel about ...?</b> ): <i>What do you <b>think about</b> science fiction?</i> We usually use <b>think of</b> when asking about a <b>person or thing</b> : <i>What do you <b>think of</b> his new book?</i>
<b>surely</b>	used to say that you are almost certain of what you are saying, and you want sb to agree with you
<b>I see what you mean (but ...)</b>	used for telling sb that you understand what they are saying, but you may not agree
<b>qualified</b>	having passed the exams or completed the training necessary to do a particular job <b>qualify v</b>
<b>the thing is inf</b>	used to introduce an important fact, reason or explanation

### 1 Form correct sentences from the words.

- ▶ difficult / is / the / to / solve / thing / it's
- 1 think / this / you / idea / do / what / of ?
- 2 I / is / think / good / personally / a / idea / it
- 3 qualified / we / more / surely / need / workers ?
- 4 choice / to / it / no / seems / we / have / me
- 5 it / disaster / if / me / ask / a / you / was
- 6 an / will / soon / apparently / there / be / election

*The thing is, it's difficult to solve.*

### 2 Rewrite the opinions using the words on the right. The meaning must stay the same.

- ▶ I think the government is wrong. ASK
- 1 I think we should do something. SEEM
- 2 What do you think about that? FEEL
- 3 I think we should help them. OPINION
- 4 What does the army think about that? THINKING
- 5 I understand what you're saying, but ... SEE
- 6 If you ask me, that's stupid. PERSONALLY

*If you ask me, the government is wrong.*

### 3 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ Personally, I thought the film was awful.
- 1 \_\_\_\_\_, the government made a mistake with the figures, or so I've heard.
- 2 If you \_\_\_\_\_, the most important thing is to find a new manager.
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_ you don't think the Earth is flat? I can't believe it!
- 4 We both think it's important, but the \_\_\_\_\_ is, no one knows what to do about it.
- 5 Do you understand the government's \_\_\_\_\_ on drugs?
- 6 \_\_\_\_\_ do you think about the problems in prisons at the moment?
- 7 I \_\_\_\_\_ what you mean, but hospitals definitely need more money.
- 8 It \_\_\_\_\_ to me that we need to stop using petrol as soon as possible.



### TEST YOURSELF

## B Points of view

### Yes, no or sometimes?

- I have the same **point of view** on things as my parents.
- I enjoy **expressing my opinion** online.
- I'm **against** freedom of speech in **some cases**.
- I'm **prepared to** admit when I have **no idea** about a particular **topic**.
- There are some subjects I have **fixed** ideas about, and I'm not **willing to** discuss.
- I sometimes **change my mind** when I'm discussing things with people.
- I don't like to **judge** people only on their opinions.

### GLOSSARY

<b>point of view</b>	the particular opinion or attitude that sb has about sth
<b>express</b>	tell or show what you are thinking by words, looks or action: <b>express your opinions/feelings</b>
<b>be against sth</b>	If you <b>are against sth</b> , you do not agree with it. <b>OPP be in favour (of sth)</b>
<b>in some cases</b>	in some situations
<b>prepared to do sth</b>	happy to do sth <b>SYN willing to do sth</b>
<b>have no idea (about sth) inf</b>	used to emphasize that you do not know sth
<b>topic</b>	a subject that you talk, write or learn about
<b>fixed</b>	(of ideas) not changing
<b>change your mind (about sth)</b>	change your decision or opinion
<b>judge</b>	form an opinion on sth/sb, based on the information you have

4 Is the pronunciation of the underlined sounds the same or different? Write S or D. Use the **APP** to help you. Practise saying the words.

▶ change / case S

1 prepared / favour \_\_\_\_\_

3 willing / opinion \_\_\_\_\_

5 judge / against \_\_\_\_\_

2 idea / mind \_\_\_\_\_

4 favour / opinion \_\_\_\_\_

6 fixed / express \_\_\_\_\_

5 Circle the correct answer.

▶ Are you willing / against to accept the plans?

1 I think what they suggest is true in some case / cases.

2 Are you expressing / changing your mind about who you will vote for?

3 It's an interesting point / topic of view, but I don't agree with it.

4 I have not / no idea about the unemployment situation.

5 Is he in favour / against of the proposal?

6 I don't judge / express people based on the way they look.

6 Complete the dialogues.

▶ Is he in favour of it?

~ No, he's against it.

1 Are you prepared to do it?

~ Yes, I'm \_\_\_\_\_ to do it.

2 Is the information always true?

~ No, it's only true in some \_\_\_\_\_.

3 Do you still believe in life after death?

~ Yes, I haven't changed my \_\_\_\_\_ about that.

4 Will you speak at the meeting?

~ Yes, I plan to \_\_\_\_\_ my opinion.

5 Does everyone in the class agree?

~ No, there are several different \_\_\_\_\_ of view.

6 It's not an easy subject to discuss.

~ No, it's a difficult \_\_\_\_\_.

7 Do you know what Daniel thinks?

~ No, I have no \_\_\_\_\_.

8 Is Carol likely to change her opinion?

~ No, she has very \_\_\_\_\_ ideas about how to study.

7 **ABOUT YOU** Write your answers to the questionnaire, or ask another student.

▶ My parents and I have the same point of view on many things, but not on politics.



### TEST YOURSELF

## A Making plans

- A Ramiro says you're making plans for your grandmother's 90<sup>th</sup> birthday in July. **Are you thinking of** having a party or something else?
- B Oh, a party, and we're **expecting** about a hundred people, **actually**.
- A Wow! And where do you **intend to** have it?
- B On a river boat, and I'm **hoping to** get a jazz band too. In fact, I'm **about to** call them to **sort out** the arrangements with them. Oh, and don't say anything to grandma – it's all a big secret.
- A I **wonder** how she'll react.
- B She'll love it! And we're all really **looking forward to** it.

GLOSSARY	
<b>make plans (for sth)</b>	prepare for sth you want to do in the future <b>SYN plan sth</b>
<b>be thinking of/about doing sth</b>	have already thought about sth but not yet decided about it
<b>expect</b>	think or believe that sth/sb will come or that sth will happen
<b>intend to do sth / doing sth</b>	plan to do sth / doing sth
<b>hope to do sth</b>	<b>intention n</b> <b>OPP have no intention of doing sth</b> want to do sth and think that it is possible
<b>be about to do sth</b>	be going to do sth very soon
<b>sort sth out</b>	organize sth
<b>wonder</b>	ask yourself sth or want to know sth: <b>I wonder why/how/if, etc. ...</b>
<b>look forward to (doing) sth</b>	be happy and excited about sth that is going to happen

**SPOTLIGHT** *actually*

**Actually** is often used when adding new information or being more exact. **SYN in fact** Be careful: **actually** does **not** mean 'at the moment'.

▪ He's German, isn't he? ~ Yes, he's from Berlin, **actually**.

**1 Same or different? Write S or D.**

- ▶ Have you planned anything for tonight? / Have you made any plans for tonight? S
- 1 I wonder what time they'll arrive. / I'd like to know what time they'll arrive. .....
- 2 He's thinking of going to Ireland. / He intends to go to Ireland. .....
- 3 I live in Poland at the moment. / I live in Poland, actually. .....
- 4 I'm hoping to see Mark and Owen. / I'm looking forward to seeing Mark and Owen. .....
- 5 I don't intend to buy the car. / I've no intention of buying the car. .....
- 6 She's looking forward to seeing John. / She's expecting to see John. .....
- 7 I'm about to go out. / I'm hoping to go out. .....
- 8 We'll have to sort out the room for the meeting. / We'll have to organize the room for the meeting. .....

**2 Complete the email.**

We're ▶ thinking of taking six months off work this winter. At the moment, we're **(1)** plans to go travelling, and we're trying to decide exactly where to go. We **(2)** to spend most of the time travelling round Australia and New Zealand as we both have family there. I'm **(3)** to be able to get hotel work there, which will cover the cost of our accommodation. We're not **(4)** anything amazing, but at the same time, we've no **(5)** of sleeping in a tent for the whole time – in **(6)**, I'm **(7)** to look online at places to rent for the first place we go to. If everything goes OK, we'll be in Sydney on Christmas Day, which will be fabulous. I'm really looking **(8)** to it. I **(9)** what Christmas is like in a hot country? Send

**3 ABOUT YOU** Complete the sentences about yourself, or ask another student. Be careful with prepositions and verbs after the sentence beginnings.

- ▶ I am about to take my driving test, and I'm very nervous about it.
- 1 In the next few days, I'm planning .....
- 2 Tomorrow, I'm thinking of .....
- 3 Next weekend I'm looking forward .....
- 4 Tonight, I have no intention .....
- 5 Next week, I don't expect .....



## B Spoken responses

Are you going to move house?



Responses	Meaning
<p>✓ Definitely.</p> <p>✗ Definitely not.</p>	<p>= Yes, I'm sure it will happen.</p> <p>= No, I'm sure it won't happen.</p>
<p>✓ I think so.</p> <p>✗ I don't think so. / I doubt it.</p>	<p>= I think it will probably happen.</p> <p>= I think it probably won't happen.</p>
<p>✓ I hope so.</p> <p>✗ I hope not.</p>	<p>= I want it to happen, but I don't know if it will.</p> <p>= I don't want it to happen, and I don't know if it will.</p>
<p>✓ I'm afraid so.</p> <p>✗ I'm afraid not.</p>	<p>= I think it will happen and I'm unhappy about it.</p> <p>= I don't think it'll happen and I'm unhappy about it.</p>
<p>✓ I assume so.</p>	<p>= I think it will happen, but I cannot be sure.</p>
<p>✓ I expect so.</p> <p>✓ I imagine so.</p> <p>✓ I guess so.</p> <p>✓ I suppose so.</p>	<p>= I think it will happen.</p> <p>= I think it will happen, but I'm not completely happy about it.</p>

4 Is the pronunciation of the underlined sounds the same or different? Write S or D. Use the APP to help you. Practise saying the words.

- |  |                         |
|--|-------------------------|
| ▶ expect / think <u>D</u>                  | 4 hope / suppose _____  |
| 1 definitely / <u>a</u> fraid _____        | 5 imagine / guess _____ |
| 2 doubt / <u>b</u> t _____                 | 6 so / hope _____       |
| 3 ass <u>u</u> me / s <u>u</u> ppose _____ | 7 think / expect _____  |

5 Correct the mistakes.

- |                                      |                          |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| ▶ I'm assume so. <u>I assume so.</u> |                          |
| 1 I doubt so. _____                  | 5 I afraid so. _____     |
| 2 I'm afraid no. _____               | 6 I don't hope so. _____ |
| 3 I don't think. _____               | 7 Definitely no. _____   |
| 4 I guess it. _____                  | 8 I'm expect so. _____   |

6 Complete the dialogues, giving an explanation.

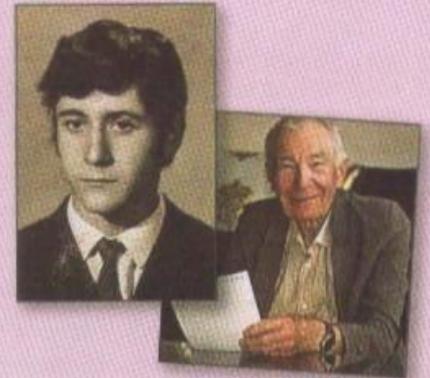
- ▶ Is everything going OK with your holiday plans? ~ Yes, I hope so, because we're leaving on Friday!
- 1 Are they making plans to have a party? ~ I don't know, but I i \_\_\_\_\_ because \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 Is Ravi going to cook for us tonight? ~ I don't t \_\_\_\_\_ because \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 Is Melissa planning to get married? ~ I h \_\_\_\_\_ because \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 Are you going on holiday this summer? ~ I'm a \_\_\_\_\_ because \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 Do you think Omar will get the job? ~ I a \_\_\_\_\_ because \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 Are you expecting the team to win? ~ I d \_\_\_\_\_ because \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7 Are you intending to buy that laptop? ~ D \_\_\_\_\_, because \_\_\_\_\_.
- 8 Are you going to take the exam? ~ Yes, I s \_\_\_\_\_, but \_\_\_\_\_.



### TEST YOURSELF

**SCHOOL RULES**

When I was at school in the 1950s, we **had to** wear a uniform, which we hated. We **weren't allowed to** talk to the girls at the school next to ours, but, of course, nobody **obeyed** that rule. Smoking was **banned** everywhere. The teachers **made us** work very hard, and we **were forced to** stay after school some evenings to do several hours' homework. The **punishments** were terrible. One day, I was **behaving** badly in class and the teacher got very angry. I knew I **ought to** apologize but I didn't, so I was **punished**: he hit me with a stick. I've had a problem with people in positions of **authority** since then. I think teachers have an **obligation** to protect children, not hit them.



**GLOSSARY**

<b>have to do sth</b>	used for saying that sb must do sth, or that sth must happen <b>ALSO have got to do sth</b> <b>Have got to do sth</b> is more informal. It doesn't have its own past tense forms. It uses the same form as <b>have to do sth</b> does, i.e. <b>had to</b> (NOT <b>had-got-to</b> ).	<b>make sb do sth</b>	tell sb that they must do sth which they do not want to do <b>SYN force sb to do sth</b>
<b>allow sb to do sth</b>	(often passive) tell sb that they can do sth	<b>punishment</b>	the act of making sb suffer for sth they have done wrong <b>punish v</b>
<b>obey</b>	do what you are told to do: <b>obey the rules</b> <b>OPP disobey</b>	<b>behave</b>	do things in a certain way <b>behaviour n</b>
<b>ban</b>	(often passive) say officially that sth is not allowed	<b>ought to do sth</b>	used for saying what is the right thing to do <b>SYN should do sth</b>
		<b>authority</b>	the power to give orders to other people
		<b>obligation</b>	sth you must do because you have promised, or because of a law or rule

**1 Cross out one word.**

- ▶ Will the government ~~ban~~ fast food?
- 1 Did she ~~force~~ to you to eat it?
- 2 They ~~made us~~ to sit there for an hour.
- 3 I ~~wasn't be~~ allowed to eat anything.
- 4 Did he always ~~obey~~ with the rules?
- 5 She ~~punished~~ to me because I was late.
- 6 They've ~~have got to~~ go out later.
- 7 You ~~should~~ ought to write and thank him.
- 8 He didn't ~~have got to~~ do the exercise.

**2 Rewrite the sentences using the words in capitals. The meaning must remain the same.**

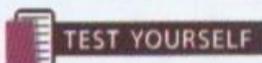
- ▶ You must go this evening. **HAVE GOT TO** You've got to go this evening.
- 1 He behaved badly. **BEHAVIOUR** \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 They made us do it. **FORCE** \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 You can't smoke in here. **ALLOW** \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 You should see a doctor. **OUGHT** \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 He does what the teacher tells him to do. **OBEY** \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 How did they punish you? **PUNISHMENT** \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 You can't take bottles inside the stadium. **BAN** \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 You have to protect all students. **OBLIGATION** \_\_\_\_\_

**3 Complete the questions with a suitable word.**

- When you were at school at the age of 14,
- ▶ did you have \_\_\_\_\_ to buy your own books? \_\_\_\_\_
  - 1 were girls \_\_\_\_\_ to wear make-up? \_\_\_\_\_
  - 2 did the teachers \_\_\_\_\_ you do lots of homework? \_\_\_\_\_
  - 3 what happened if you \_\_\_\_\_ the rules? \_\_\_\_\_
  - 4 did you always respect the \_\_\_\_\_ of your teachers? \_\_\_\_\_
  - 5 what did teachers \_\_\_\_\_ you to do that you didn't like? \_\_\_\_\_
  - 6 did children \_\_\_\_\_ better or worse than nowadays? \_\_\_\_\_

**ABOUT YOU**

**4 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 3, or ask another student.**



Asking for permission	Giving (✓) and refusing (X) permission	Notes
Is it OK if I leave now?	✓ Yes, that's fine. / ✓ Yes, of course.	
Is it a problem if I leave now?	✓ No, go ahead.	
Is it all right if I <u>leave</u> early? Would it be all right if I <u>left</u> early?*	✓ Yes, of course. X I'm afraid not. I need you here. **	Notice that after <i>would</i> , the <i>if</i> -clause is in the past tense.
Can/Could I possibly leave my coat here? May I leave my coat here?	✓ Yes, feel free. / ✓ Yes, of course. X I'm afraid not. I have to lock the door. **	Could and might are more polite/formal than can. Feel free is an informal response.
Do you mind if I <u>sit</u> here? Would you mind if I <u>sat</u> here?*	✓ No, go ahead. ✓ No, that's fine.	Do/Would you mind if ...? means 'do you have a problem if ...?' Notice that after <i>would</i> , the <i>if</i> -clause is in the past tense.
I wonder if I could use your mobile. I was wondering if I could use your mobile.*	✓ Help yourself. X I'm sorry, but I'm expecting a call. **	I wonder is a very polite request for permission, or for asking sb to do sth: I wonder if you could help me.

The expressions for permission at the top of the table are less formal than the ones at the bottom.

\* These requests for permission are a little more formal than the other request in the pair.

\*\* With a negative response, we usually give a reason.

### 1 Rewrite the requests for permission in the correct order.

- ▶ a / the / open / window / may / I / bit ? May I open the window a bit?
- 1 car / the / I / here / is / if / OK / it / park ? \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 took / if / all / be / would / it / car / right / I / the ? \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 wait / if / do / mind / you / I / here ? \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 I / ask / wonder / something / I / if / could / you \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 later / call / possibly / you / could / I / tonight ? \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 your / it / borrow / pencil / all / is / I / right / if ? \_\_\_\_\_

### 2 Complete the dialogues.

- ▶ I wonder if I could use your tablet for a minute. ~ Yes, of course.
- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ you mind if I borrowed this? ~ No, \_\_\_\_\_ fine.
- 2 Is it a \_\_\_\_\_ if I charge my phone here? ~ No, help \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 Would it be all \_\_\_\_\_ if I gave my homework in late? ~ I'm \_\_\_\_\_, but I need it today.
- 4 Do you \_\_\_\_\_ if I turn the TV on? ~ No, \_\_\_\_\_ free!
- 5 I was \_\_\_\_\_ if I could borrow the car tonight. ~ I'm \_\_\_\_\_ not - I need it.
- 6 Could I \_\_\_\_\_ speak to Mrs Levington? ~ Yes, of \_\_\_\_\_. She's free now.

### 3 Write requests for permission and responses using the words given.

- ▶ You want to leave class early today. Use MIND in the question and FINE in the response.  
(MIND) Do you mind if I leave class early today ? ~ (FINE) Yes, that's fine
- 1 You want to borrow a friend's shopping bag.  
(ALL RIGHT) \_\_\_\_\_ ? ~ (FREE) \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 You want to switch the light on.  
(OK) \_\_\_\_\_ ? ~ (AHEAD) \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 You want to take a day off work on Friday.  
(WONDER) \_\_\_\_\_ . ~ (AFRAID) \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 You want to look at someone's newspaper.  
(WOULD) \_\_\_\_\_ ? ~ (YOURSELF) \_\_\_\_\_



#### TEST YOURSELF

## A Formal English

Most words and expressions are **neutral**, which means they are **neither** formal **nor** informal, and can be used in most situations. We use formal language in:

## SPOKEN ANNOUNCEMENTS:

The play will **commence** in three minutes.  
Passengers should **proceed to** Gate 7.

## SPOKEN OR WRITTEN OFFICIAL STATEMENTS:

The robbery **occurred** in the early hours of the morning.

## NOTICES:

Only food **purchased** here may be **consumed** on the **premises**.

## OFFICIAL LETTERS OR EMAILS:

Please keep your receipt as proof of **purchase**.  
If you **require** further **assistance**, ...  
Tickets can be **obtained** at the box office.  
The decision was based **upon** advice given by doctors.

## GLOSSARY

<b>neutral</b>	not having any strong qualities (so in this context, neither formal nor informal)
<b>neither ... nor ...</b>	not ... and not
<b>commence formal</b>	begin/start
<b>proceed (to/with sth) formal</b>	move or travel in a particular direction
<b>occur formal</b>	happen
<b>purchase formal</b>	buy <b>purchase n</b>
<b>consume formal</b>	eat
<b>premises</b>	the buildings and land that a business owns or uses
<b>require formal</b>	need
<b>assistance formal</b>	help <b>assist v formal</b>
<b>obtain formal</b>	get
<b>upon formal</b>	on

## 1 Find six more pairs of neutral and formal words in the box.

get ✓	purchase	help	happen	eat	commence	consume
need	obtain ✓	buy	assistance	require	occur	start

▶ get / obtain \_\_\_\_\_

## 2 Replace the underlined words with a more formal word.

- ▶ Call us if you need more help. assistance
- After check-in, please go to passport control. \_\_\_\_\_
  - The film will begin in five minutes. \_\_\_\_\_
  - You can buy tickets on the internet. \_\_\_\_\_
  - There was a castle on the hill. \_\_\_\_\_
  - We can get any size you need. \_\_\_\_\_
  - At what time exactly did this happen? \_\_\_\_\_

## 3 Complete the sentences.

- ▶ When does the performance commence \_\_\_\_\_?
- Please contact us if you \_\_\_\_\_ further \_\_\_\_\_.
  - It's hard to describe the colour: it was \_\_\_\_\_ blue nor green.
  - The club is moving to larger \_\_\_\_\_ on the edge of town.
  - Most of the rooms in my flat are \_\_\_\_\_ in colour. I don't like strong colours.
  - Which European country \_\_\_\_\_ the most cheese?
  - If you experience any difficulties, we can \_\_\_\_\_ the tickets for you.
  - Wait for a green light, then \_\_\_\_\_ if the road is clear.
  - The illness can \_\_\_\_\_ at any time – often without warning.
  - Nurses are available to \_\_\_\_\_ you with the shower and getting dressed.



## TEST YOURSELF

## B Informal conversation

Informal language is used widely in spoken English and in texts or emails to friends.

Where are the kids?

I haven't a clue.

What do you fancy doing tonight?

I'm not bothered, really.

Could you give me a hand?

Yeah, sure.

Cheers.

Hang on. I'll be with you in a minute.

It's OK, we've got loads of time.

What's up with Carrie?

She's got a bit of a problem, and I think she's pretty fed up.

### SPOTLIGHT *cheers*

We use **cheers** in informal situations to mean either *thank you* or *goodbye*. It is also used to express good wishes when we have an alcoholic drink.

### GLOSSARY

<b>kid</b> <i>inf</i>	child	<b>hang on</b> <i>inf</i>	wait a moment SYN <b>hold on</b>
<b>I haven't a clue</b> <i>inf</i>	= I don't know.	<b>loads (of sth)</b> <i>inf</i>	lots (of sth)
<b>fancy (doing)sth</b> <i>inf</i>	want sth or want to do sth	<b>What's up (with sb)?</b> <i>inf</i>	= What's the matter (with sb)?
<b>I'm not bothered</b>	= I don't mind what we do / where we go.	<b>a bit of a/an</b> <i>inf</i>	used when talking about unpleasant things to mean 'rather a': <i>It's a bit of a long walk to the station.</i>
<b>give sb a hand</b> <i>inf</i>	help sb SYN <b>lend sb a hand</b>	<b>fed up</b> <i>inf</i>	bored or unhappy with a situation
<b>yeah</b> <i>inf</i>	yes		

#### 4 Same or different? Write S or D.

- |                                      |          |                                     |       |
|--------------------------------------|----------|-------------------------------------|-------|
| ▶ yeah / yes                         | <u>S</u> | 4 I don't know. / I haven't a clue. | _____ |
| 1 I'm not bothered. / I'm not happy. | _____    | 5 kid / teenager                    | _____ |
| 2 cheers / goodbye                   | _____    | 6 hang on / wait a minute           | _____ |
| 3 fed up / hungry                    | _____    | 7 What's the matter? / What's up?   | _____ |

#### 5 Replace the underlined words with more informal words. The meaning must stay the same.

- |                                   |             |                                    |       |
|-----------------------------------|-------------|------------------------------------|-------|
| ▶ Yes, I'll wait.                 | <u>Yeah</u> | 3 We've got a <u>lot</u> of time.  | _____ |
| 1 Could you <u>help</u> me?       | _____       | 4 Could you <u>wait</u> a minute?  | _____ |
| 2 Where are the <u>children</u> ? | _____       | 5 She's <u>bored and unhappy</u> . | _____ |

#### 6 Make sentences from the words.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| ▶ not / about / holiday / a / I'm / bothered         | <u>I'm not bothered about a holiday.</u> |
| 1 of / got / she / we've / time / says / loads       | _____                                    |
| 2 you / hand / today / me / could / lend / a ?       | _____                                    |
| 3 up / morning / with / what's / this / Matt ?       | _____                                    |
| 4 afraid / clue / I / a / I'm / haven't              | _____                                    |
| 5 this / do / fancy / what / doing / evening / you ? | _____                                    |

#### 7 Complete the dialogues.

- ▶ What's up \_\_\_\_\_ ? ~ Nothing. Why?
- 1 I'm writing a text. Could you \_\_\_\_\_ on a minute? ~ \_\_\_\_\_, sure.
- 2 See you tomorrow. ~ OK. \_\_\_\_\_ !
- 3 Could you \_\_\_\_\_ me a hand? ~ Sorry, I've got a \_\_\_\_\_ problem today.
- 4 What do you want to do? ~ Oh, I'm not \_\_\_\_\_, actually. You decide.
- 5 What's \_\_\_\_\_ with Zoe this morning? ~ I haven't a \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 Do you \_\_\_\_\_ going out? ~ Yes. What would you like to do?



### TEST YOURSELF

Notes	Beginnings	Endings
If you are writing to a <b>stranger</b> or you don't know the person's name, use the phrases on the right.	Dear Sir Dear Madam Dear Sir or Madam OR Dear Sir/Madam	Yours faithfully (followed by your full name)
If you know the person's name, use <i>Mr, Mrs, Miss, Ms, Dr</i> , etc. and their surname (not the first name). Use <i>Mrs</i> before a married woman's name, <i>Miss</i> before a single woman's name. Some women prefer <i>Ms</i> because it does not show whether they are married or not.	Dear Mr Wu Dear Miss Gilberto	Yours sincerely Less formal: Best regards Best wishes (followed by your full name)
If you know them quite well, you can use their first name.	Dear Rosa Dear Conrad	Best wishes Best regards With kind regards Regards All the best (followed by your first name)
For an informal letter or email to a friend or family member, use their first name. <b>Love (from)</b> is less common from a man writing to another man.	Hi Pavel Hi Mum Dear Cassie	Love (from) Lots of love (from) Take care (followed by your first name)

45 Muswell Rd  
London NW4  
15 April, 2020

Sunshine Holiday Cottages  
Fore St  
Truro

Dear Mr Ellison

Thank you for your email **confirming** our holiday **booking** at Bay Tree Cottage for 22-29 June. **As requested**, I have **transferred** £320 into your **account**, and will pay the **balance** by 20 May.

As we plan to do a lot of walking during our stay, I **would be grateful if you could** send me any **further** information you have about local places of interest, and **in particular**, it would be useful to know of any restaurants you might be able to recommend.

Please **let me know** if you need any further information.

**I look forward to hearing from you.**

Yours sincerely

Louise Robertson

Notice that we don't usually use contractions, e.g. *I'll*, *haven't*, *I'd*, in formal letters and emails.

#### GLOSSARY

<b>stranger</b>	a person that you do not know
<b>confirm</b>	say that sth is true or that sth will happen
<b>booking</b>	the arrangement you make in advance to have a hotel room, a seat on a plane, etc.
<b>as requested formal</b>	You use <b>as requested</b> to say that you are doing sth that sb has asked you to do.
<b>transfer</b>	move sth/sb to a different place <b>transfer n</b>
<b>account</b>	an arrangement with a bank that lets you keep your money there
<b>balance</b>	money that still has to be paid
<b>I would be grateful if you could ...</b>	used when you request sth politely <b>SYN I would appreciate it if you could ...</b>
<b>in particular</b>	<b>SYN especially</b>
<b>let me know</b>	tell me
<b>I look forward to hearing from you.</b>	used to say politely that you want the reader to reply to you

#### SPOTLIGHT *further*

- comparative of *far*: The station is **further** than the bank.  
**SYN farther**
  - (usually before a noun) more: Have you any **further** questions?
- Further to ... formal** is used in letters to mention a previous letter or conversation about the same subject.
- Further to my letter of July 5<sup>th</sup>**, I am happy to pick up the keys by 10 a.m.

**1 Read the letter again, then cover it and answer the questions. If the answer is no, explain why.**

- ▶ Is Louise Robertson booking a holiday cottage? Yes, she is.
- 1 Is this the first time she has been in contact with Mr Ellison? .....
- 2 Why did Mr Ellison write? .....
- 3 What has Louise just done? .....
- 4 What happens on 20 May? .....
- 5 Are there any other things she wants to know? If so, what? .....
- 6 What is the first line of her address? .....
- 7 What's the first line of Mr Ellison's address? .....
- 8 When did she write the letter? .....
- 9 Which beginning did she use? .....
- 10 Which ending did she use? .....

**2 True or false? Write T or F. If false, explain why.**

- ▶ If you're writing to a family member, you end it with *Yours sincerely*. F - You probably end it with 'Love' or 'Lots of love'.
- 1 If you begin 'Dear Maria', you can end it with *Regards*. .....
- 2 If you begin your letter *Dear Sir*, you can end it with *Best wishes*. .....
- 3 If you don't know the name of the person you are writing to, your beginning should be *Dear Sir or Madam*. .....
- 4 If you write *All the best* at the end, you could also write *Regards*. .....
- 5 If you begin 'Dear Miss Periskic', you should end *Yours faithfully*. .....
- 6 If you are writing to your teacher, you should end *Love from* and then your full name. .....
- 7 *Take care* is an alternative ending to *Best wishes*. .....

**3 Which words are missing where the slashes (/) are? Write them at the end.**

- ▶ For / details of the accommodation, please look at the website. further
- 1 As / I am sending you one month's deposit on the flat. ....
- 2 I would be / if you / phone me when you have the details. ....
- 3 Further / your letter / April 7<sup>th</sup>, I wish to confirm my booking. ....
- 4 I would / it if you could help me with this matter. ....
- 5 ... and / particular, I would like to know about parking in the area. ....
- 6 Please let / know if you need any more information. ....
- 7 I look forward / hearing / you. ....
- 8 With / regards .....

**4 Complete the two emails.**

▶ Dear ..... Ms Stephens  
 Thank you for your email of January 12. I am (1) ..... £900 (£600 for rent and £300 for the agent's fee) for Flat 7, Walsingham Buildings. I would be (2) ..... if you could email me as soon as the money has reached your (3) ..... Many thanks.  
 Yours (4) .....

Send

(5) ..... Mr Buerk  
 I am just writing to (6) ..... that I have received your bank (7) ..... of £250 for Sunnybank Villa, Southwold, for the week of July 1<sup>st</sup> for two weeks.  
 I (8) ..... be grateful if you could (9) ..... me know a few days before your visit if you will be using all three bedrooms so that I can inform the cleaners. I would also (10) ..... it if you could send me the (11) ..... of £625 at least four weeks before your arrival.  
 Best (12) .....

Send



## A Abbreviations

asap inf	= <i>as soon as possible</i>	IQ	= <i>intelligence quotient</i> : a way of measuring how intelligent sb is <b>intelligence</b> the ability to understand, learn and think
ATM	= <i>Automatic Teller Machine</i> : a cash machine	ISP	= <i>internet service provider</i> : e.g. AT&T, Comcast
CV	= <i>curriculum vitae</i> : (from Latin) a formal list of your education or work experience that you need when you apply for a job	IT	= <i>information technology</i> : the study or use of computers and electronic equipment
DIY	= <i>do-it-yourself</i> : making, painting or repairing things in your house yourself	PC	= <i>personal computer</i>
EU	= <i>the European Union</i> : A <b>union</b> is a group of people or countries that have joined together.	PE	= <i>physical education</i> : sport and exercise done at school as a subject
FAQ	= <i>frequently asked questions</i> (used in writing)	PIN	= <i>Personal Identification Number</i> : You use this with a bank or credit card, for example.
ID inf	= <i>identity</i> : a document that shows who you are; <b>ID card</b>	VIP	= <i>very important person</i> : sb who is famous or important

**PIN** is pronounced as the word *pin*, but most abbreviations are pronounced as individual letters, e.g. **BBC** is pronounced 'b-b-c'. It **stands for** the British Broadcasting Corporation.

## 1 Complete the abbreviations.

- ▶ I didn't like PE..... when I was at school.
- If you use an AT....., you'll need your .....IN.
  - If you apply for a job, send in a C......
  - I've got all the data for the project on my P......
  - We're expecting a visit from a VI......
  - My brother is clever and has a very high I......
  - He's good with computers: he works in I......
  - Are you any good at DI.....?
  - You may have to show your I..... to the police.
  - How many countries are there in the .....U?
  - I need the information asa......
  - An IS..... provides customers with access to the internet.
  - 'How do I fix my mobile?' is a common FA..... on the internet.

## 2 What do these abbreviations stand for?

- ▶ EU The European Union      4 IQ .....
- 1 ID .....
- 2 VIP .....
- 3 DIY .....
- 5 asap .....
- 6 ISP .....
- 7 PIN .....
- 8 IT .....
- 9 FAQ .....

## 3 Answer the questions using the correct abbreviation.

- ▶ What's Comcast? It's an ISP.
- Do you need this stuff quickly? Yes, .....
  - How can you prove who you are? .....
  - Where can I get cash? .....
  - What do I send if I apply for a job? .....
  - What are Germany, France and Italy all members of? .....
  - What do you sometimes need when you use your debit card in a shop? .....
  - What subject at school involves sport? .....
  - Did you paint this room yourself? ~ No, I'm not good at .....



## TEST YOURSELF

## B Short forms

These short forms are used in spoken and informal written English. They are more common than the longer forms, which are more formal, e.g. **flu** is more common and less formal than **influenza**.

Short form	Full form / Meaning	Short form	Full form / Meaning
ad, advert	advertisement	lab inf	laboratory (a special room where scientists work)
bike	bicycle	maths	mathematics
blog	weblog a personal record sb puts on their website saying what they do or what they think about sth	photo	photograph
deli	delicatessen a shop or part of a supermarket that sells cooked meat and cheese, and special or unusual food that comes from other countries	plane	aeroplane
exam	examination	pop (music)	popular music
(the) flu	influenza formal an illness like a cold but more serious	pub	public house formal a place where you can buy and drink alcohol and meet friends
fridge	refrigerator	TV telly inf	television
gym	gymnasium a room or building with equipment for physical exercise	uni	university
info	information	vet	veterinary surgeon a doctor for animals

### 4 Cover the table, then give short forms for these words.

- |                      |            |                |                  |
|----------------------|------------|----------------|------------------|
| ▶ gymnasium          | <u>gym</u> | 5 photograph   | 10 delicatessen  |
| 1 veterinary surgeon | .....      | 6 university   | 11 laboratory    |
| 2 popular music      | .....      | 7 information  | 12 weblog        |
| 3 influenza          | .....      | 8 public house | 13 advertisement |
| 4 aeroplane          | .....      | 9 mathematics  | 14 examination   |

### 5 Complete the dialogues with shortened words from the table.

- ▶ Did you have your camera with you in the mountains? ~ Yes, I took some photos.
- 1 Do you still want to get a job? ~ Yes, I'm just looking at some ..... now.
- 2 Do you fancy a drink at the ..... tonight? ~ Well, I was planning to watch the .....
- 3 How are you? ~ I feel awful. I think I've got .....
- 4 Has Juno finished school now? ~ Yes, she's going to ..... next year to study Maths.
- 5 Is Stef still working on his fitness? ~ Yes, he goes to the ..... almost every day.
- 6 You don't like algebra, do you? ~ No, and I've got a ..... exam tomorrow.
- 7 Did you drive into town? ~ No, I went on my .....
- 8 Did you take your cat to the .....? ~ Yes, we're waiting for test results from the .....
- 9 Could you buy some Parma ham from the .....? ~ I got some earlier - it's in the .....
- 10 Did you fly? ~ Yes, and it was a very small .....
- 11 What do you need for the trip? ~ I need some more ..... about the transport system.
- 12 Do you often read this stuff? ~ Yes, there are some great ..... on the internet.

### 6 Do you know or can you guess the short forms of these words?

- |                    |              |                 |       |
|--------------------|--------------|-----------------|-------|
| ▶ newspaper        | <u>paper</u> | 4 kilograms     | ..... |
| 1 telephone number | .....        | 5 celebrity     | ..... |
| 2 mobile phone     | .....        | 6 microchip     | ..... |
| 3 whiteboard       | .....        | 7 decaffeinated | ..... |





American English	candy [U]	French fries	cell phone	cookies
British English	sweets	chips	mobile phone	biscuits



American English	elevator	faucet	truck	purse	pants
British English	lift	tap	lorry	handbag	trousers

American English	Meaning	British English
appointment book / datebook	a book where you write what you are going to do. On a phone, PC, etc, <b>calendar</b> is the word in both American and British English.	diary
lawyer; (more formal) attorney	a lawyer	In British English, a <b>lawyer</b> who represents sb in court is a <b>barrister</b> , and a <b>solicitor</b> is a lawyer who prepares legal documents.
drugstore	a shop that sells medicines and other types of goods	chemist's/pharmacy
garbage/trash [U] garbage/trash can	waste food, paper, etc. that you throw away a container outside your home where you put the waste	rubbish [U] dustbin
gasoline/gas [U]	fuel used in a car	petrol [U]
high school	a school for children aged 14 to 18	secondary school (for children aged 11 to 16 or 18)
highway	a large important road in a town or between towns	main road; motorway
movie theater	a place where you see a <b>movie</b> (usually <b>film</b> in British English)	cinema
parking lot	a place where you can leave your car	car park
restroom	a room with toilets in a public place, e.g. in a restaurant. In American English, a <b>bathroom</b> is either a room with only a toilet in it in a home, or a room with a bath and/or a shower in it, and sometimes a toilet as well. A <b>bathroom</b> in British English is always a room with a bath and/or a shower (with or without a toilet).	toilet
round trip OPP one-way trip	a journey to a place and back	return (journey) OPP single (journey)
sidewalk	the part of the road where people walk	pavement
store	a shop, large or small	shop; department store
subway	an underground train system. In British English, a <b>subway</b> is a path that goes under a busy road so that people can cross safely.	underground
vacation	a period of time away from work or school, often spent travelling for pleasure	holiday
yard	In British English, a <b>yard</b> is an area outside a building, usually with a hard surface: a school/prison yard	garden

1 Circle the American words.

lift faucet sweets French fries one-way trip restroom theater garbage barrister  
elevator motorway attorney rubbish gasoline candy highway

2 Combine the parts to form six more American English words.

high ✓	side	cell	sub	appointment	drug	trash
phone	way ✓	walk	store	can	book	way

▶ highway \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

3 Correct the spelling mistakes.

- |            |              |             |                     |
|------------|--------------|-------------|---------------------|
| ▶ moovie   | <u>movie</u> | 4 subwei    | 8 gasolin           |
| 1 garbbage | _____        | 5 pantes    | 9 perse             |
| 2 faucit   | _____        | 6 candie    | 10 appointment book |
| 3 haighway | _____        | 7 attourney | 11 vaication        |

4 Complete the sentences using American English words.

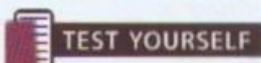
- ▶ What age do you start high school in America?
- Do you know what's playing at the movie \_\_\_\_\_?
  - It took us ages to find the parking \_\_\_\_\_.
  - Do you want French \_\_\_\_\_ with your steak?
  - My journey to go and visit with my brother is a ninety-mile round \_\_\_\_\_.
  - Excuse me, where's the rest \_\_\_\_\_?
  - Is your son doing well in high \_\_\_\_\_?
  - Have a \_\_\_\_\_ . ~ No, thanks, I don't like sweet things.
  - Let's not walk downstairs - we can take the \_\_\_\_\_.
  - Someone stole Lara's keys and cell phone from her \_\_\_\_\_.
  - Are you planning to come back? ~ No, I just bought a \_\_\_\_\_ ticket.

5 Replace the British English words with American English words.

- ▶ When does the ~~shop~~ open? store
- Where are you going for your holiday? \_\_\_\_\_
  - What should I do with this rubbish? \_\_\_\_\_
  - We had to go to court, so I needed a good barrister. \_\_\_\_\_
  - I wrote the meeting with Jo in my diary. \_\_\_\_\_
  - He drives a big lorry. \_\_\_\_\_
  - Would you like another biscuit? \_\_\_\_\_
  - Could you turn on the tap? \_\_\_\_\_
  - I took the underground to the museum. \_\_\_\_\_
  - We can't use the pavement here. \_\_\_\_\_
  - The children are playing in the garden. \_\_\_\_\_

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers, or ask another student.

- What's your cell phone number? \_\_\_\_\_
- How often do you use the subway? \_\_\_\_\_
- When did you finish high school? \_\_\_\_\_
- How far is your nearest movie theater? \_\_\_\_\_
- What was the last movie you saw? \_\_\_\_\_
- How often do you eat French fries? \_\_\_\_\_
- Where did you go for your last vacation? \_\_\_\_\_
- Do you use an appointment book? \_\_\_\_\_
- Do you eat a lot of cookies or candy? \_\_\_\_\_
- Have you ever needed to use an attorney? \_\_\_\_\_



The words in **bold** are all in the units in the Intermediate level.

The words in blue are people.



**TEST YOURSELF**

– cover one column and say the word or words in the other column.

VERB	NOUN
act	act, acting, <b>actor</b>
achieve	achievement
add	addition
advertise	advertising, advert, advertisement
advise	advice
agree	agreement
analyse	analysis
announce	announcement
appoint	appointment
apply	application
argue	argument
assist	assistance
attach	attachment
attract	attraction
behave	behaviour
believe	belief
bleed	bleeding
breathe	breath, breathing
camp	camping
celebrate	celebration
cheat	cheating
choose	choice
collect	collection, <b>collector</b>
combine	combination
communicate	communication
compare	comparison
complain	complaint
conclude	conclusion
confirm	confirmation
confuse	confusion
connect	connection
consume	<b>consumer</b>
contain	container
dance	dance, dancing, <b>dancer</b>
define	definition
develop	development
direct	<b>director</b>
discover	discovery
discuss	discussion
divide	division
donate	donation
draw	drawing
elect	election
emphasize	emphasis

VERB	NOUN
employ	<b>employment</b> , employer, employee
encourage	encouragement
entertain	<b>entertainment</b>
evaluate	evaluation
examine	<b>examination</b>
exhibit	<b>exhibition</b>
explain	<b>explanation</b>
explode	<b>explosion</b>
explore	<b>exploration</b>
export	<b>export</b> , <b>exporter</b>
fight	<b>fight</b> , <b>fighter</b>
fluctuate	<b>fluctuation</b>
govern	<b>government</b>
improve	<b>improvement</b>
injure	<b>injury</b>
interrupt	interruption
intend	<b>intention</b>
invent	<b>invention</b>
investigate	<b>investigation</b> , <b>investigator</b>
involve	involvement
kill	<b>killing</b> , <b>killer</b>
know	<b>knowledge</b>
land	<b>landing</b>
laugh	laughter
locate	<b>location</b>
lose	<b>loss</b>
manage	<b>management</b> , <b>manager</b>
market	<b>market</b> , marketing
marry	<b>marriage</b>
mix	<b>mixture</b> , mix
motivate	<b>motivation</b>
murder	<b>murder</b> , <b>murderer</b>
operate	<b>operation</b>
paint	<b>painting</b> , <b>painter</b>
pay	<b>payment</b>
pollute	<b>pollution</b>
practise	<b>practice</b>
pray	<b>prayer</b>
predict	<b>prediction</b>
prefer	<b>preference</b>
produce	<b>production</b> , <b>producer</b>
promote	<b>promotion</b>
pronounce	<b>pronunciation</b>
protect	<b>protection</b>

VERB	NOUN
prove	proof
pray	prayer
promote	promotion
protect	protection
publish	publishing, publisher
punish	punishment
qualify	qualification
quote	quotation
recycle	recycling
reduce	reduction
recognize	recognition
recommend	recommendation
recycle	recycling
reduce	reduction
refer	reference, referee
reject	rejection
remind	reminder
remove	removal
repeat	repetition

VERB	NOUN
require	requirement
research	research, researcher
respond	response
retire	retirement
revise	revision
rob	robbery, robber
select	selection
serve	service, servant
shoot	shooting, shot
speed	speeding
summarize	summary
sunbathe	sunbathing
supply	supply, supplier
survive	survival
trade	trade, trader
translate	translation, translator
treat	treatment
warn	warning
weigh	weight

ADJECTIVE	NOUN
accidental	accident
allergic	allergy
alphabetical	alphabet
ambitious	ambition
anxious	anxiety
artistic	artist
basic	basis
bright	brightness
central	centre
cold	cold
convenient	convenience
cruel	cruelty
deep	depth
determined	determination
exciting	excitement
expert	expert
fashionable	fashion
historic	history, historian
industrial	industry
important	importance
individual	individual
industrial	industry
intelligent	intelligence
long	length
magic	magic, magician
mysterious	mystery
national	nation
native	native

ADJECTIVE	NOUN
painful/painless	pain
passionate	passion
patient	patience, patient
peaceful	peace
political	politics, politician
popular	popularity
powerful, powerless	power
prefer	preference
professional	profession, professional
proud	pride
rectangular	rectangle
religious	religion
responsible	responsibility
safe	safety
scientific	science, scientist
sexual	sex
similar	similarity
solid	solid
square	square
stable	stability
standard	standard
suitable	suitability
triangular	triangle
thick	thickness
valuable	value
violence	violent
voluntary	volunteer
wide	width

NOUN	VERB	ADJECTIVE
circle	circle	circular
competition, competitor	compete	competitive
development	develop	developing
disappointment	disappoint	disappointed, disappointing
embarrassment	embarrass	embarrassing, embarrassed
entertainment, entertainer	entertain	entertaining
equality	equal	equal
excitement	excite	exciting
frustration	frustrate	frustrating
imagination	imagine	imaginary
impression	impress	impressive
lead, leader	lead	leading
motivation	motivate	motivated
organization, organizer	organize	organized
poison	poison	poisonous
prediction	predict	predictable
preparation	prepare	prepared
relation, relative	relate	related
risk	risk	risky
separation	separate	separate
shine	shine	shiny
success	succeed	successful
variety	vary	various
worry	worry	worrying, worried

ADJECTIVE	VERB
annoyed, annoying	annoy
amazing, amazed	amaze
calm	calm (down)
cool	cool (sth) (down)
delighted	delight
embarrassing, embarrassed	embarrass
educated, educational	educate
frightened, frightening	frighten
harmful	harm
organized	organize
qualified	qualify
relaxing, relaxed	relax
repeated	repeat

NOUNS AND VERBS WITH THE SAME FORM

access	host	request
attack	hurry	respect
attempt	impact	rise
bend	import	sail
benefit	increase	shake
bite	influence	share
bomb	judge	shout
burn	kick	signal
campaign	kiss	slice
challenge	label	smell
charge	lack	sound
cheat	light	sting
claim	like	stress
coach	look	target
contact	measure	taste
damage	mention	tear
deal	move	tip
delay	need	touch
divorce	network	tour
doubt	order	trade
drop	plant	transfer*
exchange	protest*	travel
export	pull	trick
fall	push	update*
fine	purchase	volunteer
flood	queue	vote
flow	record*	waste
focus	refund*	wave
guard	release	win
guess	rent	
hate	repair	

\*Listen to the different pronunciation for the noun and verb on the .

The verbs in bold are key vocabulary in the units of this book.

be	was/were	been
beat	beat	beaten
become	became	become
begin	began	begun
<b>bend</b>	<b>bent</b>	<b>bent</b>
<b>bite</b>	<b>bit</b>	<b>bitten</b>
<b>bleed</b>	<b>bled</b>	<b>bled</b>
<b>blow</b>	<b>blew</b>	<b>blown</b>
<b>break</b>	<b>broke</b>	<b>broken</b>
<b>bring</b>	<b>brought</b>	<b>brought</b>
<b>build</b>	<b>built</b>	<b>built</b>
<b>burn</b>	<b>burnt/burned</b>	<b>burnt/burned</b>
<b>burst</b>	<b>burst</b>	<b>burst</b>
buy	bought	bought
<b>catch</b>	<b>caught</b>	<b>caught</b>
<b>choose</b>	<b>chose</b>	<b>chosen</b>
<b>come</b>	<b>came</b>	<b>come</b>
cost	cost	cost
<b>cut</b>	<b>cut</b>	<b>cut</b>
<b>deal</b>	<b>dealt</b>	<b>dealt</b>
do	did	done
draw	drew	drawn
<b>dream</b>	<b>dreamt/dreamed</b>	<b>dreamt/dreamed</b>
drink	drank	drunk
drive	drove	driven
eat	ate	eaten
<b>fall</b>	<b>fell</b>	<b>fallen</b>
<b>feel</b>	<b>felt</b>	<b>felt</b>
<b>fight</b>	<b>fought</b>	<b>fought</b>
<b>find</b>	<b>found</b>	<b>found</b>
fly	flew	flown
<b>forget</b>	<b>forgot</b>	<b>forgotten</b>
<b>freeze</b>	<b>froze</b>	<b>frozen</b>
<b>get</b>	<b>got</b>	<b>got</b>
<b>give</b>	<b>gave</b>	<b>given</b>

go	went	*gone (ALSO been)
grow	grew	grown
hang	hung	hung
have	had	had
hear	heard	heard
hide	hid	hid
hit	hit	hit
hold	held	held
hurt	hurt	hurt
keep	kept	kept
know	knew	known
lay	laid	laid
lead	led	led
learn	learnt/learned	learnt/learned
leave	left	left
lend	lent	lent
let	let	let
lie	lay	lain
light	lit	lit
lose	lost	lost
make	made	made
mean	meant	meant
meet	met	met
oversleep	overslept	overslept
pay	paid	paid
put	put	put
quit	quit	quit
read	read	read
rid	rid	rid
ride	rode	ridden
ring	rang	rung
rise	rose	risen
run	ran	run
say	said	said
see	saw	seen

\* **Gone or been?**

We use the past participle **gone** to say that someone went somewhere and is still there – they haven't returned yet:  
*Where's Hannah? ~ She's (= she has) **gone to the cinema**. (= Hannah is at the cinema now, or on her way to it.)*

We use **been** to say that someone went somewhere but isn't there now – they have returned:

*I've **been to the cinema this afternoon**. I saw the new German film. (= I went to the cinema and have now returned from there.)*

sell	sold	sold
<b>send</b>	<b>sent</b>	<b>sent</b>
<b>set</b>	<b>set</b>	<b>set</b>
<b>sew</b>	<b>sewed</b>	<b>sewn/sewed</b>
<b>shake</b>	<b>shook</b>	<b>shaken</b>
<b>shine</b>	<b>shone</b>	<b>shone</b>
<b>shoot</b>	<b>shot</b>	<b>shot</b>
<b>show</b>	<b>showed</b>	<b>shown</b>
shut	shut	shut
<b>sink</b>	<b>sank</b>	<b>sunk</b>
sing	sang	sung
<b>sit</b>	<b>sat</b>	<b>sat</b>
<b>sleep</b>	<b>slept</b>	<b>slept</b>
<b>smell</b>	<b>smelt/smelled</b>	<b>smelt/smelled</b>
<b>speak</b>	<b>spoke</b>	<b>spoken</b>
<b>speed</b>	<b>sped/speeded</b>	<b>sped/speeded</b>
spell	spelt/spelled	spelt/spelled
spend	spent	spent
<b>spill</b>	<b>spilt/spilled</b>	<b>spilt/spilled</b>
<b>spread</b>	<b>spread</b>	<b>spread</b>
<b>spring</b>	<b>sprang</b>	<b>sprung</b>
<b>stand</b>	<b>stood</b>	<b>stood</b>
<b>steal</b>	<b>stole</b>	<b>stolen</b>
<b>stick</b>	<b>stuck</b>	<b>stuck</b>
<b>sting</b>	<b>stung</b>	<b>stung</b>
<b>sweep</b>	<b>swept</b>	<b>swept</b>
swim	swam	swum
<b>take</b>	<b>took</b>	<b>taken</b>
<b>teach</b>	<b>taught</b>	<b>taught</b>
<b>tear</b>	<b>tore</b>	<b>torn</b>
<b>tell</b>	<b>told</b>	<b>told</b>
<b>think</b>	<b>thought</b>	<b>thought</b>
<b>throw</b>	<b>threw</b>	<b>thrown</b>
understand	understood	understood
<b>undo</b>	<b>undid</b>	<b>undone</b>
<b>upset</b>	<b>upset</b>	<b>upset</b>
<b>wake (up)</b>	<b>woke (up)</b>	<b>woken (up)</b>
wear	wore	worn
win	won	won
<b>write</b>	<b>wrote</b>	<b>written</b>

**Unit 1**

- |   |  |                            |
|---|--|----------------------------|
| 1 | 1 identify   | 4 context                  |
|   | 2 formal   | 5 translate                |
|   | 3 foreign  | 6 guessed                  |
| 2 | 1 went through   | 4 foreigners               |
|   | 2 basic  | 5 informal                 |
|   | 3 recognize/know   | 6 guess                    |
| 3 | 1 context  | 4 informal                 |
|   | 2 record   | 5 recognize                |
|   | 3 translation  |                            |
| 4 | <i>possible answers, from China:</i>   |                            |
|   | 1 Yes, I do, but I sometimes use a dictionary.   |                            |
|   | 2 Yes, I do it sometimes.  |                            |
|   | 3 I usually write down the meaning in Chinese, and I sometimes write a translation, too. |                            |
|   | 4 Yes, I do. I often make a note of pronunciation.                                       |                            |
|   | 5 No, I don't think so. I can only identify the words that are new for me.               |                            |
| 5 | 1 <u>repeat</u> , <u>repetition</u>  |                            |
|   | 2 <u>pronounce</u> , <u>pronunciation</u>  |                            |
|   | 3 <u>explain</u> , <u>explanation</u>  |                            |
|   | 4 <u>revise</u> , <u>revision</u>  |                            |
|   | 5 <u>argue</u> , <u>argument</u>   |                            |
| 6 | 1 study it again   | 6 a way of doing something |
|   | 2 successful   | 7 understand               |
|   | 3 try to do something  | 8 wrong                    |
|   | 4 make   | 9 function                 |
|   | 5 discussion   |                            |
| 7 | 1 pronounce  | 5 chance                   |
|   | 2 opportunity  | 6 experiment               |
|   | 3 revision   | 7 repetition/revision      |
|   | 4 works/worked   | 8 arguments                |

**Unit 2**

- 1 1 S 2 D 3 S 4 S 5 S 6 D
- |   |   |                               |
|---|---|-------------------------------|
| 2 | 1 encouraging   | 4 effectively                 |
|   | 2 improving   | 5 motivation                  |
|   | 3 obviously   | 6 clearly                     |
| 3 | 1 while   | 6 difficult                   |
|   | 2 slowing down  | 7 keen/motivated              |
|   | 3 aware   | 8 encouraging; getting better |
|   | 4 express   |                               |
|   | 5 effective   |                               |
| 4 | <i>possible answers, from Argentina:</i>  |                               |
|   | 1 In my case, I still worry about my mistakes.  |                               |
|   | 2 I don't think I'm slowing down – on the contrary, I think I'm making good progress.                     |                               |
|   | 3 I'm aware of my mistakes when I speak, and that sometimes makes me feel embarrassed.                    |                               |
|   | 4 I think I can express myself better, and I can also understand what people say.                         |                               |
|   | 5 I fully agree! Listening to songs in English is effective and fun.                                      |                               |
|   | 6 I don't find it difficult to concentrate. I like learning English so it's easy for me to pay attention. |                               |

- 7 I'm very keen on reading. Reading in English helps me remember new words and phrases.
- 8 In my case, I need encouragement to go on learning. When my teacher praises my work, I feel encouraged.

- |   |              |                   |
|---|--------------|-------------------|
| 5 | 1 fluently   | 6 suitable        |
|   | 2 includes   | 7 aim             |
|   | 3 to do with | 8 expanded        |
|   | 4 complex    | 9 (wide) range of |
|   | 5 in detail  |                   |

- |   |              |            |
|---|--------------|------------|
| 6 | 1 goal/aim   | 6 includes |
|   | 2 unsuitable | 7 range    |
|   | 3 native     | 8 achieved |
|   | 4 contained  | 9 do       |
|   | 5 expanding  | 10 fluent  |

7 *possible answers, from Argentina:*

**VOCABULARY**

I want to learn new words and phrases to be able to express ideas more efficiently. In particular, I'd like to learn more vocabulary related to my job (sales and finance).

**SPEAKING**

I want to speak more fluently and I'd like to improve my pronunciation, so that I can communicate more effectively.

**READING**

I'd like to be able to read complex texts without having to look up many words in the dictionary.

**Unit 3**

- |   |  |                     |                |
|---|--|---------------------|----------------|
| 1 | 1 symbol   | 4 emphasize         | 7 emphasis     |
|   | 2 style  | 5 idiom             | 8 for instance |
|   | 3 slang  | 6 syllable          | 9 definition   |
| 2 | 1 S  | 3 S                 | 5 D            |
|   | 2 D  | 4 S                 | 6 D            |
|   |  |                     | 7 S            |
|   |  |                     | 8 S            |
| 3 | 1 instance   | 5 symbols; syllable |                |
|   | 2 definitions  | 6 idiom; entry      |                |
|   | 3 build; provide; related  | 7 define            |                |
|   | 4 avoid  | 8 stress            |                |
| 4 | 1 error; do sth wrong; fault   |                     |                |
|   | 2 two  |                     |                |
|   | 3 informal   |                     |                |
|   | 4 No, it's informal.   |                     |                |
|   | 5 /gaɪ/  |                     |                |
|   | 6 used when speaking to a group of people of either sex                |                     |                |
| 5 | 1 a No: it should be 'by mistake'.                                     |                     |                |
|   | b Yes  |                     |                |
|   | 2 a Yes  |                     |                |
|   | b No: it should be 'My dad <b>earns</b> a lot of money in his job.'    |                     |                |
|   | 3 a Yes  |                     |                |
|   | b No: a single woman can't be a guy, only a group of men and/or women. |                     |                |

**Unit 4**

- |   |   |                        |
|---|---|------------------------|
| 1 | 1 full stop   | 5 semi-colon           |
|   | 2 colon   | 6 exclamation mark     |
|   | 3 hyphen  | 7 apostrophe           |
|   | 4 brackets  |                        |
| 2 | 1 comma   | 6 brackets             |
|   | 2 question mark   | 7 hyphen; dash         |
|   | 3 exclamation mark  | 8 quotation marks;     |
|   | 4 apostrophe  | apostrophe; comma      |
|   | 5 semi-colon  |                        |
| 3 | 1 <u>details</u>  | 7 <u>connect</u>       |
|   | 2 <u>instead</u>  | 8 <u>shopping list</u> |
|   | 3 <u>apostrophe</u>   | 9 <u>question mark</u> |
|   | 4 <u>omit</u>   | 10 <u>abbreviation</u> |
|   | 5 <u>interrupt</u>  | 11 <u>exclamation</u>  |
|   | 6 <u>separate</u>   |                        |
| 4 | 1 talking   | 4 example              |
|   | 2 information   | 5 stop                 |
|   | 3 formal  | 6 together             |
| 5 | 1 list  | 6 such                 |
|   | 2 instead   | 7 leave                |
|   | 3 connect/join  | 8 separate             |
|   | 4 details   | 9 interrupt            |
|   | 5 abbreviation  | 10 shopping            |
| 6 | 1 <i>She</i> needs a capital letter (not a small letter).               |                        |
|   | 2 A comma is missing after <i>tall</i> .                                |                        |
|   | 3 A slash is missing between <i>in</i> and <i>on</i> .                  |                        |
|   | 4 A colon is missing after <i>choices</i> .                             |                        |
|   | 5 An apostrophe is missing after <i>boyfriend</i> and before <i>s</i> . |                        |
|   | 6 Commas are missing before and after <i>fortunately</i> .              |                        |

**Unit 5**

- |   |                |  |
|---|----------------|--|
| 1 | 1 D            | 5 S  |
|   | 2 S            | 6 D ( <i>W</i> isn't pronounced in <i>wrist</i> .) |
|   | 3 S            | 7 S  |
|   | 4 D            |  |
| 2 | 1 knee         | 5 fingernail                                       |
|   | 2 lips         | 6 eyebrow  |
|   | 3 tongue       | 7 shoulder   |
|   | 4 hips         |  |
| 3 | 1 (finger)nail | 7 ankle  |
|   | 2 toes         | 8 heel   |
|   | 3 thumb        | 9 chin   |
|   | 4 wrist        | 10 elbows  |
|   | 5 tongue       | 11 throat  |
|   | 6 neck         | 12 stomach   |
| 4 | 1 hands        | 5 hands  |
|   | 2 mouth        | 6 mouth  |
|   | 3 hands        | 7 hands  |
|   | 4 hands        | 8 hands  |
| 5 | 1 g            | 2 a  |
|   | 3 f            | 4 b  |
|   | 5 d            | 6 c  |
| 6 | 1 fold         | 6 clapped  |
|   | 2 poured       | 7 breathe  |
|   | 3 bend         | 8 sweep  |
|   | 4 balance      | 9 bit  |
|   | 5 roll         | 10 kicking   |

**Unit 6**

- |   |   |     |                   |     |      |
|---|---|-----|-------------------|-----|------|
| 1 | 1 D   | 3 S | 5 D               | 7 S | 9 S  |
|   | 2 S   | 4 D | 6 D               | 8 S | 10 D |
| 2 | 1 fair hair   |     | 5 broad           |     |      |
|   | 2 tattoo  |     | 6 bald; bald      |     |      |
|   | 3 beard; moustache  |     | 7 build           |     |      |
|   | 4 shape   |     |                   |     |      |
| 3 | 1 curly   |     | 4 shape/condition |     |      |
|   | 2 fair  |     | 5 tan/suntan      |     |      |
|   | 3 shoulders   |     | 6 appearance      |     |      |
| 4 | <i>possible answers, to questions in Exercise 2:</i>  |     |                   |     |      |
|   | 1 My brother and sister both have / have both got fair hair.  |     |                   |     |      |
|   | 2 Nobody has (got) a tattoo.  |     |                   |     |      |
|   | 3 My brother has (got) a small beard and moustache.   |     |                   |     |      |
|   | 4 My sister is in very good shape, but my brother is a bit fat.   |     |                   |     |      |
|   | 5 My dad has (got) broad shoulders.   |     |                   |     |      |
|   | 6 My dad is nearly bald now.  |     |                   |     |      |
|   | 7 My brother is medium build.   |     |                   |     |      |
|   | <i>to questions in Exercise 3:</i>  |     |                   |     |      |
|   | 1 I've got wavy hair.   |     |                   |     |      |
|   | 2 I've got pale skin.   |     |                   |     |      |
|   | 3 I haven't got broad shoulders.  |     |                   |     |      |
|   | 4 I think I'm in quite good shape.  |     |                   |     |      |
|   | 5 I don't like sitting in the sun, so I haven't usually got / don't usually have a tan.                       |     |                   |     |      |
|   | 6 No. My nose is too big, and I'm a bit short, but I don't think I'm ugly.                                    |     |                   |     |      |
| 5 | 1 F   | 3 F | 5 T               | 7 T |      |
|   | 2 T   | 4 F | 6 F               | 8 F |      |
| 6 | 1 height; neat  |     | 5 figure          |     |      |
|   | 2 tell; expecting   |     | 6 tell            |     |      |
|   | 3 tallish   |     | 7 hairstyle       |     |      |
|   | 4 smooth; rough   |     | 8 pregnant; time  |     |      |
| 7 | <i>possible answers:</i>  |     |                   |     |      |
|   | 1 My daughter is pregnant at the moment. It's her first baby.   |     |                   |     |      |
|   | 2 Most women in my family are of medium height, though one cousin is very tall and her sister is quite short. |     |                   |     |      |
|   | 3 I change my hairstyle a lot.  |     |                   |     |      |
|   | 4 My cousin Chelo is quite short.   |     |                   |     |      |
|   | 5 My two children's faces are roundish.   |     |                   |     |      |
|   | 6 I do, and my husband does too.  |     |                   |     |      |

**Unit 7**

- |   |                      |                       |
|---|----------------------|-----------------------|
| 1 | 1 P                  | 5 N                   |
|   | 2 N                  | 6 P                   |
|   | 3 P, but sometimes B | 7 B                   |
|   | 4 P                  | 8 P                   |
| 2 | 1 energetic          | 5 <u>confident</u>    |
|   | 2 <u>responsible</u> | 6 <u>disorganized</u> |
|   | 3 <u>generous</u>    | 7 <u>personality</u>  |
|   | 4 <u>easy-going</u>  |                       |
| 3 | 1 f                  | 3 g                   |
|   | 2 h                  | 4 a                   |
|   | 5 d                  | 6 b                   |
|   | 7 i                  | 8 e                   |
| 4 | irresponsible        | stupid/crazy/         |
|   | hard-working         | irresponsible         |
|   | mean                 | disorganized          |
|   | insecure             | impractical           |

- 5 1 crazy 6 hard-working  
2 easy-going 7 responsible  
3 practical/patient;  
organized 8 energy  
4 generous 9 sensible; stupid  
5 confident 10 character; shy;  
ambitious

6 possible answers:

- I'm quite ambitious. I work hard in my job and want to get better at it.
- I'm definitely hard-working. I don't like working with lazy people.
- I'm quite outgoing.
- I'm impatient when people don't care enough about what they do.
- I'm very organized. I plan my day carefully, answer emails immediately, and keep good records.
- Yes, I'm quite cheerful at work and more so at home! I have an outgoing personality.
- I'm practical, organized and sensible.
- For me, generosity and patience are the most important qualities.

Unit 8

- 1 1 N 4 N 7 P 10 P  
2 N 5 N 8 N 11 N  
3 P 6 P 9 N

- 2 1 anxious 5 lonely  
2 miserable 6 relaxed  
3 frightened/afraid 7 furious  
4 alone

- 3 1 delighted/pleased/glad  
2 miserable / fed up / anxious/furious/disappointed  
3 upset  
4 frightened/scared/afraid  
5 miserable / fed up  
6 relaxed/pleased/glad  
7 pleased/glad  
8 frightened/scared/anxious/afraid  
9 disappointed/furious/miserable/upset / fed up

- 4 1 F 3 F 5 F 7 F  
2 T 4 T 6 T 8 T

- 5 1 guilty 5 mood  
2 stressed 6 feelings  
3 upset; annoyed 7 jealous  
4 occasion 8 emotional

6 from the questionnaire:

- Yes, I am.
- No, I often get stressed.
- Yes, always.
- Yes, I do.
- No, because I get things wrong myself.
- Yes, very nervous.
- No, my mood changes all the time.

from Exercise 5:

- Yes, I do too because I need to be careful about my weight.
- No, I'm not feeling stressed at all.
- No, I don't. They don't mind what I do.
- Yes, it was.
- Yes, I'm often in a very bad mood if I haven't slept well.
- That's true: I don't show my feelings to most people, but I do to my best friend.
- No, I don't get jealous about that.
- Yes, sometimes.

Unit 9

- 1 1 need 6 money  
2 loving 7 moment  
3 well/amazing/  
incredible, etc. 8 ability  
4 best (at sth) 9 extremely/very  
5 dangerous/difficult 10 nice

- 2 1 talented 4 incredibly 7 currently  
2 champion 5 qualities 8 brave  
3 charity 6 raise 9 proud

3 possible answers:

- At school I won the 100 metres and long jump.
- Yes, I've raised money for a cancer charity.
- I'm proud of my children, who are so loving and clever.
- No, not particularly.
- I think I'm quite brave: I climbed Kilimanjaro last year.

- 4 1 pretend 5 expect  
2 excuse 6 cruel  
3 difficult 7 pleasant  
4 standard 8 unpleasant

- 5 1 No 3 Yes 5 Yes 7 Yes 9 No  
2 No 4 Yes 6 No 8 No 10 No

- 6 1 excuse; pretends  
2 make up / invent  
3 standards; annoying; mean  
4 expects; unpleasant; difficult

Unit 10

- 1 keep in touch, get on with someone, tell the truth, have something in common, sense of humour, make friends

- 2 1 reliable 6 common  
2 trust 7 touch  
3 support 8 dishonest  
4 attitude 9 dislikes  
5 get on 10 friendship

- 3 1 He makes friends easily.  
2 We don't keep in touch. / We aren't in touch.  
3 I don't get on with my father.  
4 Kate has a (good) sense of humour.  
5 Jo and Ellen have a lot in common.  
6 You can rely on Phoebe. / Phoebe is reliable.

- 4 1 Hannah is in a serious relationship.  
2 Lian broke up with Chen last week.  
3 Paula and I met one another at university.  
4 How did you get to know Anya?  
5 We used to meet but not any longer.  
6 She went out with him for two years.

- 5 1 other 5 broke  
2 fancied 6 go  
3 relationship 7 one  
4 wrong 8 realized  
6 1 another 5 going out  
2 together 6 get; know  
3 longer  
4 relationship

7 possible answers:

- 0 I got to know her when I started work.
- 1 We've known each other for about ten years.
- 2 We get together a lot – once a week at least – and we text each other most days.
- 3 We used to go to clubs, but we don't any longer.
- 4 Yes, she's in a very serious relationship.
- 5 Her boyfriend Rudy is a good friend of my brother's.
- 6 They got together through me! I introduced them to each other.

Unit 11

- 1 1 F – Her other nickname was The Blonde Bombshell.  
2 T  
3 F – She grew up with foster parents and sometimes with her mother, a single parent.  
4 F – A couple wanted to adopt her, but they couldn't.  
5 F – She had an unhappy childhood.  
6 F – She got divorced three times.  
7 T  
8 T

2 get married, according to somebody, adopt a child, get divorced, only child, single parent

- 3 1 divorced / a divorce      6 nickname  
2 only                              7 divorced / a divorce  
3 childhood                      8 source  
4 according                      9 romantic  
5 adopted                        10 complicated

- 4 1 No                              3 Yes                              5 No                              7 Yes  
2 Yes                              4 No                              6 Yes                              8 No

- 5 1 generations  
2 relatives/relations  
3 date  
4 father-in-law/brother-in-law  
5 birth  
6 coincidence

- 6 1 siblings                              4 originally  
2 generations                              5 previous  
3 related                              6 twins; identical

7 possible answers:

- 1 Yes, I've got a sister.
- 2 No, they don't.
- 3 Yes, I've got an aunt who lives in Canada.
- 4 Originally, my family came from Ireland.
- 5 They lived in Dublin.
- 6 Yes, I do. I know two women called Mara and Chloe who are identical twins.

Unit 12

- 1 1 the couple meet                      4 the reception  
2 get engaged                              5 the honeymoon  
3 the wedding                              6 the anniversary
- 2 1 wedding                              4 after  
2 groom                                      5 reception  
3 religious                                  6 husband and wife
- 3 1 civil; registry                              5 custom  
2 bride                                        6 honeymoon  
3 reception                                  7 celebrate; anniversary  
4 make                                        8 marriages

4 possible answers, from India:

- 0 Yes, couples do get engaged before marrying, but in most cases it's not really a private engagement. It's mostly a ceremony in which family and friends are invited and rings are exchanged.
- 1 In India, couples have both a religious ceremony as well as a civil ceremony in a registry office.
- 2 India is a diverse country with multiple religions, traditions and rituals. The wedding dress of a particular bride depends on the region and the customs of the community she belongs to. Most of the brides usually wear bright shades of red and maroon. However, there are brides who wear shades of white, gold and green as well.
- 3 Usually, there is a reception after the wedding ceremony.
- 4 Given the diverse cultures that you find in India, the wedding rituals differ from culture to culture, region to region. While in some weddings you may find the best man and the bridesmaid making a speech, in some others, you may find the older members of the family making a speech.
- 5 Yes, most of the communities in India follow the custom where the wife wears a wedding ring on her left hand – though there are exceptions.
- 6 Couples often go on a honeymoon after the wedding rituals are completed.
- 7 Couples usually celebrate their anniversary every year in their own way. It may or may not be a public event.
- 8 Yes, most marriages last forever in India.

- 5 1 D 2 D 3 S 4 S 5 S 6 D 7 S

- 6 1 No                              3 Yes                              5 No  
2 No                              4 Yes                              6 No

- 7 1 apart                                      5 separated / split up  
2 statistics                                  6 equal  
3 pressure                                  7 separate  
4 lack; constant                              8 vary

8 from the text:

- money problems
- lack of communication
- constant arguments
- lack of equality
- an affair

possible answers:

- Some couples are not prepared for marriage.
- Some couples think everything will be wonderful and then they are disappointed.
- Couples stop loving each other.
- One person is physically violent towards the other.
- Couples are more interested in their careers than their marriage.

Unit 13

- 1 1 No                              3 No                              5 Yes                              7 No  
2 Yes                              4 Yes                              6 No                              8 Yes
- 2 1 northern                                      5 eastern  
2 flows                                        6 mainly/mostly  
3 divides                                        7 features  
4 western

- 3 1 Brazil, in South America / Latin America  
2 Africa  
3 Europe  
4 Canada; the US  
5 (northern) Africa  
6 Argentina in South America / Latin America  
7 Czech; Slovakia  
8 Russia

4 possible answers, from Kenya:

One of the most important geographical features in Kenya is Mount Kenya, which is an extinct volcano. It is located in the central region of Kenya, just north of the equator. It is the highest mountain in Kenya at 5,199 metres and the second highest mountain in Africa. Mount Kenya has three peaks - Batian is the tallest, followed by Nelion and then Lenana.

5 rock, sandy, sailing, bay, horizon, protect, port, shore, beach, wave, rough, harbour, sand, cliff

- |             |                |
|-------------|----------------|
| 6 1 horizon | 5 harbour      |
| 2 rock      | 6 beach        |
| 3 shore     | 7 cave         |
| 4 cliff     | 8 sailing boat |
| 7 1 rough   | 5 cliff/rocks  |
| 2 wave      | 6 horizon      |
| 3 protects  | 7 shore/beach  |
| 4 port      | 8 sandy        |

8 possible answers, from Poland:

I go to the Polish coast quite frequently - once a year or once every two years during summer. My family have a favourite beach near Kolobrzeg, which is over 550 km from Warsaw. We usually go there by car. The Baltic Sea is very cold but the beaches are lovely - wide, bright and clean. You can lie on the golden sand and watch the waves (which are not usually very high) or fishing boats or ships passing by on the horizon. I also enjoy walks along the coast with my feet in the water.

Behind the beach there is a forest. The Baltic Sea Cycling Route runs through the forest - it's so much fun to cycle there. When the weather is really hot, some people prefer having a walk in the cooler forest to lying on the beach.

Unit 14

- |                                    |                    |
|------------------------------------|--------------------|
| 1 1 space system                   | 5 star planet      |
| 2 moon sun                         | 6 planes rockets   |
| 3 planet star                      | 7 big great/good   |
| 4 sun moon                         | 8 world universe   |
| 2 1 space                          | 6 revolves/circles |
| 2 planets                          | 7 rockets          |
| 3 earth                            | 8 satellite        |
| 4 incredible                       | 9 solar            |
| 5 approximately/<br>roughly; reach | 10 deal            |
|                                    | 11 words           |
| 3 the earth                        | other stars        |
| the sun                            | other planets      |
| the moon                           | a rocket           |
| 4 1 exist                          | 4 carried out      |
| 2 explore                          | 5 discovered       |
| 3 invention                        | 6 analyse          |

- |                 |               |
|-----------------|---------------|
| 5 1 scientists  | 4 analyse     |
| 2 discovery     | 5 exploration |
| 3 confirmation  | 6 existence   |
| 6 1 exists      | 6 confirmed   |
| 2 explore       | 7 analysis    |
| 3 satellites    | 8 scientific  |
| 4 carry out     | 9 previously  |
| 5 solid; so far | 10 spacecraft |

Unit 15

- 1 pouring; shower
- 2 1 f 2 e 3 a 4 d 5 g 6 b
- 3 1 thunder and lightning; pouring with rain  
2 sunshine  
3 dreadful; foggy; showers; freezing
- 4 possible answers for the UK:  
1 In the winter and early spring.  
2 If we're lucky, we get a lot of sunshine in the summer, but spring and autumn can be sunny too.  
3 Spring is generally mild, though we sometimes have sudden cold periods.  
4 We get quite a lot of fog, especially in the early morning or by the sea.  
5 No, not often - only in January or February where I live. I don't like the cold at all.
- 5 1 D 4 S 7 D  
2 S 5 D 8 S  
3 S 6 S 9 S
- 6 1 f 2 e 3 a 4 b 5 c
- 7 1 floods/destruction; damaged; branches; destroyed  
2 drought; crops; starving; disasters  
3 occurred/happened; damage; destroyed  
4 extreme; violent/sudden; hurricanes; regularly

Unit 16

- |   |                      |
|---|----------------------|
| 1 1 predictable                                 | 6 environment        |
| 2 disappear                                     | 7 pollution          |
| 3 famine  | 8 harmful            |
| 4 atmosphere                                    | 9 liquid             |
| 5 disease                                       | 10 gradual           |
| 2 1 B 3 B 5 G 7 B 9 B                           |                      |
| 2 G 4 B 6 B 8 B 10 G                            |                      |
| 3 1 solid                                       | 6 melting            |
| 2 affect  | 7 slowly             |
| 3 unpredictable                                 | 8 liquid             |
| 4 the environment                               | 9 disappearing       |
| 5 human   | 10 atmosphere        |
| 4 1 heatwave; climate                           | 6 spread             |
| 2 liquid; solid                                 | 7 pollution; harmful |
| 3 polluted; affects/<br>affected                | 8 grain; famine      |
| 4 predict; rise                                 | 9 effects; warming   |
| 5 global; disappearing                          | 10 disease; spread   |
| 5 possible answers:                             |                      |
| 1 I'm extremely worried for future generations. |                      |
| 2 No, we don't.                                 |                      |

- 3 Yes, the winters have become wetter, and the summers are warmer and drier. The spring arrives earlier than it used to.  
 4 Destruction of the rainforests, pollution from factories, cars and planes, the growth of cities.  
 5 Air and water pollution from factories and forms of transport.

- 6 1 survival  
 2 expectancy  
 3 weight  
 7 1 survive  
 2 average  
 3 hunt  
 4 sting

- 4 poisonous  
 5 harmful; harmless  
 6 sting  
 5 up  
 6 vary  
 7 Poison  
 8 weigh

### Unit 17

- 1 country  
 2 1 F - A campaign is a plan to do a number of things to get a special result.  
 2 F - If you convince somebody, you make them believe something.  
 3 T  
 4 T  
 5 F - Wind, sun and water are examples of renewable energy. Coal and gas are not renewable forms of energy.  
 6 T  
 7 F - A developed country is rich with lots of modern industry.  
 8 F - Carbon dioxide is a gas.  
 3 1 targets 5 seriously  
 2 reduce 6 campaign(s)  
 3 developing 7 energy  
 4 convince 8 source  
 4 1 e 2 f 3 a 4 b 5 d  
 5 1 save; instead 5 whenever; wherever  
 2 energy 6 impact  
 3 recycle; throw 7 recycling; rubbish  
 4 impacts; individual

### Unit 18

- 1 bear, leopard, eagle, butterfly, bee, mosquito  
 2 1 Yes 5 Yes 9 Yes  
 2 No 6 No 10 No  
 3 Yes 7 Yes 11 Yes  
 4 Yes 8 Yes  
 3 1 camels 5 insect  
 2 creatures 6 wings  
 3 wild 7 stripes  
 4 zoo 8 fur  
 4 possible answers:  
 People kill bulls in sport in some countries or possibly to eat them.  
 People kill tigers and leopards if they are hunters.  
 People kill mosquitos because they bite them and cause disease.  
 People kill wolves because they are a danger to some farm animals.  
 People kill crocodiles because they are dangerous.  
 5 1 F - Many are harmless.  
 2 T  
 3 F - The sun heats their bodies, but they can survive for a long time without food.  
 4 T  
 5 F - They don't have any bones.  
 6 F - They bite, but bees sting.

### Unit 19

- 1 1 small/tiny 5 bad/dreadful  
 2 tired/exhausted 6 important/vital  
 3 interesting/fascinating 7 big/enormous  
 4 good/brilliant 8 frightened/terrified  
 2 1 terrified  
 2 tired  
 3 Both answers are correct.  
 4 furious  
 5 Both answers are correct.  
 6 essential  
 7 Both answers are correct.  
 8 good  
 3 1 fascinating 5 terrified  
 2 huge/enormous 6 dreadful/awful  
 3 brilliant 7 tiny  
 4 exhausted 8 amazed  
 4 1 relaxed 5 fascinating  
 2 confused 6 embarrassed  
 3 disappointing 7 worried  
 4 astonished 8 frightening  
 5 1 confused 5 amazing  
 2 embarrassed 6 frightening  
 3 disappointing 7 relaxing  
 4 worrying 8 disappointed  
 6 possible answers:  
 My exam results were disappointing.  
 It was embarrassing when I forgot his name.  
 The painter's use of colour was fascinating.  
 The film was frightening.  
 The holiday was very relaxing.  
 I was terrified by the film.  
 It was worrying when Kiko didn't arrive.

### Unit 20

- 1 1 g 2 c 3 a 4 b 5 d 6 e  
 2 1 modern 5 pleased  
 2 inconvenient 6 ineffective  
 3 public 7 unexpected  
 4 artificial 8 permanent  
 3 1 mixed 6 convenient  
 2 effective 7 modern  
 3 pleased/happy 8 negative  
 4 -fashioned 9 permanent  
 5 unexpected 10 expected  
 4 1 S 2 D 3 D 4 D 5 S 6 S 7 D  
 5 1 B 2 G 3 G 4 B 5 G 6 B 7 G  
 6 1 baggy 5 imaginary  
 2 rare 6 careful  
 3 an indirect 7 a guilty  
 4 powerless

- 7 1 careless 4 rare  
2 tight 5 direct  
3 innocent / not guilty 6 guilty

8 possible answers:

I think I look better in baggy jeans, to be honest. It's cold in my country, so indoor pools are more useful.

I have a rare coin which belonged to my grandfather.

Usually I do, but if I find a route which has an interesting place to stop and explore, I might choose that.

Yes, I agree with it.

It's always good to be a careful driver, but not good to drive too slowly. That can cause problems for other drivers.

Do your best work. My mother always told me that.

Unit 21

- 1 1 seriously ill  
2 absolutely love  
3 completely/absolutely mad  
4 feel strongly  
5 highly likely  
6 terribly sad  
7 completely/absolutely/totally unnecessary  
8 risen sharply

- 2 1 agree 6 sure/certain  
2 damage 7 unlikely  
3 sorry; forgot 8 disappeared  
4 travelled 9 fallen  
5 feel

- 3 1 vitally 4 completely/totally  
2 highly 5 completely/totally  
3 seriously 6 terribly

- 4 1 D 2 S 3 D 4 S 5 D 6 S

- 5 1 On the whole 6 frequently  
2 mainly 7 fairly/pretty/rather  
3 approximately 8 Generally; fairly/  
4 fairly/pretty/rather pretty/rather  
5 rarely

7 possible answers:

- 1 I generally walk to work.  
2 I rarely go on the underground now because I don't live in London any more.  
3 I go to the gym regularly - most weeks.  
4 I saw a film called *Widows*, which was pretty good.  
5 I read a fairly boring book recently about the life of Paul McCartney.  
6 I find it slightly annoying when people tell me I'm putting on weight.

Unit 22

- 1 1 S 3 S 5 D 7 S  
2 D 4 S 6 D 8 D

- 2 1 eventually 5 actually / in (actual)  
2 necessarily fact  
3 especially/ 6 specifically  
particularly 7 perfectly  
4 naturally / of course 8 hardly

- 3 1 we were hungry.  
2 didn't. / bought it last year.  
3 athletics/swimming / ice hockey, etc.  
4 it took much longer than that.  
5 see.  
6 they got here / arrived.  
7 put your money in there / press that button.

- 4 1 No 3 Yes 5 No 7 No  
2 No 4 Yes 6 Yes 8 Yes

- 5 1 heavily 6 angrily  
2 suddenly 7 secretly/in secret  
3 clearly 8 properly  
4 effectively/ 9 carefully  
successfully 10 badly  
5 calmly/effectively

Unit 23

1 usually green on the outside: green beans, lettuce, broccoli, watermelon, cucumber, cabbage, mint, mango (Sometimes it's yellow or red.)

- 2 1 D 4 D 5 D 9 S  
2 D 6 S 10 D  
3 S 7 D 11 S  
8 D

- 3 1 d) A pear is a kind of fruit, and the others are vegetables.  
2 a) Garlic is a vegetable and the others are fruit.  
3 c) Parsley is a herb and the others are vegetables.  
4 b) Herbs are a group of plants, e.g. mint and parsley, and the others are vegetables.  
5 c) Bunch is a quantity of bananas, cherries or grapes, and the other three items are types of fruit.

- 4 1 melon 9 mango  
2 cabbage 10 courgette  
3 watermelon 11 sweetcorn  
4 grapes 12 cherries  
5 broccoli 13 pears  
6 pineapple 14 garlic  
7 lettuce 15 red pepper  
8 green beans 16 cucumber

5 FRUIT: melon, watermelon, grapes, pineapple, mango, cherries, pears

VEGETABLES: cabbage, broccoli, lettuce, green beans, courgette, sweetcorn, garlic, red pepper, cucumber

6 grapes, cherries, pears; sometimes sweetcorn, sometimes mango

7 possible answers, from Kenya:

grapes: Yes, I like red grapes in particular.

mint: No, mint is not common where I live.

mixed vegetables: Yes, I like mixed vegetables, especially with rice.

courgettes: No, I don't like courgettes at all.

watermelon: Yes, I like watermelon and find it refreshing on a hot day.

garlic: Yes, I like garlic in my food.

parsley: No, I don't like parsley in my food.

cherries: Yes, I like cherries, although they are not common where I live.

fruit salad: Yes, I like fruit salad very much.

pears: Yes, I like pears and eat them a lot when they are in season.

sweetcorn: Yes, I like sweetcorn, but it is rather expensive.

mango: Yes, I like mangoes very much.

frozen green beans: No, I don't like frozen green beans.

### Unit 24

- 1 1 No 3 No 5 Yes 7 Yes 9 Yes  
2 Yes 4 No 6 Yes 8 Yes 10 No

- 2 1 T  
2 T  
3 F - A fizzy drink contains bubbles.  
4 F - Peanuts are a type of food.  
5 F - You put apples in a basket. / You put flowers in a vase.  
6 T  
7 F - You wash your clothes with soap powder.

- 3 CAN: cola, fizzy drink, beer  
TIN: tuna, tomatoes  
CARTON: milk, fruit juice  
JAR: coffee, jam, chilli powder  
TUBE: toothpaste, glue  
PACKET: crisps, chilli powder, peanuts  
VASE: flowers

- 4 a carton of milk, two tins of tuna, a packet of cocoa powder, a tube of toothpaste, a jar of raspberry jam, a large packet of crisps, a can of fizzy drink, a can of cola, a packet of peanuts, a tube of glue

- 5 several, amount, weigh, length, approximate, loaf, exactly, a couple of, more or less

- 6 1 D 2 S 3 S 4 D 5 D 6 S

- 7 1 The room **measures/measured** approximately 4 metres by 3 metres.  
2 I only take one **spoonful** of sugar in my coffee, thanks.  
3 Sergio Aguero is 1.7m tall, **more** or less.  
4 There are a **couple** of men standing outside. Oh, it's Yusuf and Omer!  
5 He had a sandwich with two **slices** of ham in it and a tomato.  
6 Could you buy a small **loaf** of bread at the supermarket? Thanks.  
7 We only need a small **amount/quantity** of butter to make this cake.  
8 The height of Burj Khalifa in Dubai is **exactly** 828m - no more and no less.  
9 I think there were **approximately/more or less** 30 people at the meeting, but I didn't count them.  
10 What is the **length** of an Olympic swimming pool? - I think it's 50m.

### Unit 25

- 1 1 G 3 B 5 G 7 G  
2 G 4 G 6 B 8 G

- 2 1 lose weight 5 proper  
2 a recipe 6 skills  
3 invest in 7 go on a diet  
4 have a 8 flavour  
responsibility to

- 3 1 skills 5 diet  
2 properly 6 plenty  
3 ingredients 7 flavour  
4 recipe

#### 4 possible answers:

- 3 No. Now I try to use fewer ingredients and make life simpler.  
4 Yes. I use a recipe when I cook something for the first time.  
5 Generally, yes, but probably a bit too much chocolate.  
6 Yes. I drink quite a lot of water, but probably not enough.  
7 Yes, I love food with plenty of flavour.

- 5 1 chop 4 boil 7 stock  
2 add 5 bake 8 pan/saucepan  
3 mash 6 roast 9 method

- 6 1 chopped 6 added 11 saucepan  
2 fried 7 boil 12 fry  
3 with 8 frying 13 stock  
4 together 9 method  
5 pan 10 minced

#### 7 possible answers, from the Czech Republic:

- 1 **minced**: meat, pork, beef, meat loaf (= a dish made with minced meat)  
2 **fried**: cheese, carp, chicken, pork, cauliflower, veal, meat, fish  
3 **roast**: pork, chicken, beef, potatoes, vegetables  
4 **boiled**: potatoes, vegetables, eggs (e.g. hard-boiled), water  
5 **baked**: bread, cakes, biscuits, buns, pastries, pies  
6 **mashed**: potatoes

### Unit 26

- 1 1 What **is/was** the watch worth?  
2 They reduced **down** the price.  
3 We placed **an** order for a new car.  
4 Did she charge **to** you for the coffee?  
5 I bought a second **of** hand car.  
6 I ordered **to** some new glasses.  
7 We asked **for** a discount.  
8 Is the market worth **to** seeing?  
9 There was no **charge** for drinks: they were free.
- 2 1 Did you ask him to reduce (the price of) the coat?  
2 Is the furniture very valuable?  
3 Were the goods (that you bought) expensive?  
4 Is it a used car?  
5 Did you place an order for the new printer this morning?  
6 What's Julio's flat worth?  
7 Did they charge you for the repairs?  
8 Did the shop assistant give you a discount?

3 possible answers:

- 1 I love to buy goods that are reduced! It sometimes means I make bad choices, though.
- 2 Yes, I might. It really depends what's wrong with it.
- 3 I don't think so.
- 4 Yes, I sometimes buy second-hand books online.
- 5 Yes, I once bought an antique chair online. It was quite expensive.
- 6 Often!

- |               |                    |
|---------------|--------------------|
| 4 1 work      | 5 delivered        |
| 2 package     | 6 set              |
| 3 take        | 7 complained about |
| 4 complain    | 8 gadget           |
| 5 1 delivered | 5 complaint        |
| 2 set         | 6 sent it back     |
| 3 gadget      | 7 refund           |
| 4 working     | 8 exchanged        |

6 possible answers:

- 1 F - I complained in a shoe shop last summer about some sandals I'd bought. They gave me a refund.
- 2 T
- 3 F - I haven't got many gadgets apart from a smartphone.
- 4 F - I don't have a problem with this.
- 5 T
- 6 It depends, but most online goods are delivered quickly - sometimes the next day - but some take ages to arrive.

Unit 27

- 1 1 D 2 S 3 S 4 D 5 D 6 S 7 D

- |               |            |
|---------------|------------|
| 2 1 underwear | 6 wool     |
| 2 tights      | 7 vest     |
| 3 denim       | 8 raincoat |
| 4 blouse      | 9 plain    |
| 5 pattern     | 10 baggy   |

- 3 1 F - Gabby's got a cap on.  
2 T  
3 T  
4 F - She's got a plain woollen jacket on.  
5 F - She's wearing a denim skirt.  
6 T  
7 F - She's dressed in baggy trousers.  
8 T  
9 T  
10 F - She's carrying her jacket.

- |               |                             |
|---------------|-----------------------------|
| 4 1 raincoat  | 6 plain; striped; patterned |
| 2 baggy       | 7 've got / have            |
| 3 coloured    | 8 dressed                   |
| 4 undo        | 9 bra; knickers; vest       |
| 5 get dressed | 10 underpants/pants; vest   |

- |             |                      |
|-------------|----------------------|
| 5 1 woollen | 6 fur                |
| 2 dressed   | 7 necklace; earrings |
| 3 tight     | 8 raincoat           |
| 4 denim     | 9 plain              |
| 5 underwear | 10 undressed         |

6 possible answers:

- 1 I usually wear cotton jumpers in spring, but if it's unusually cold, I put on a woollen jumper.
- 2 I put my underwear on first: underpants and then a vest.
- 3 I prefer baggy jeans - they're more comfortable.
- 4 I've got three pairs and I wear them all the time.
- 5 I buy them in a department store or sometimes in the market.
- 6 No, I haven't. I don't like the idea of wearing fur.
- 7 No, I'm not.
- 8 Yes, it rains a lot so I often have to put a raincoat on.
- 9 Plain socks. They match everything.
- 10 I take off my shoes and socks first.

Unit 28

- |                                  |                                  |            |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|------------|
| 1 1 matches                      | 4 fashion                        |            |
| 2 fashionable                    | 5 suits                          |            |
| 3 outfit                         | 6 essential                      |            |
| 2 1 matched/matches              | 5 brand                          |            |
| 2 stylish/smart                  | 6 out of fashion / unfashionable |            |
| 3 latest                         | 7 elements                       |            |
| 4 occasion                       | 4 fashionable / in fashion       |            |
| 3 1 essential                    | 5 stylish                        |            |
| 2 matches                        | 6 outfit                         |            |
| 3 out of fashion / unfashionable |                                  |            |
| 4 1 casual                       | 3 attract                        | 5 label    |
| 2 designer                       | 4 quality                        | 6 consumer |

- |             |           |
|-------------|-----------|
| 5 1 high    | 5 profit  |
| 2 designers | 6 attract |
| 3 quality   | 7 labels  |
| 4 casual    |           |

- |             |           |
|-------------|-----------|
| 6 1 casual  | 4 quality |
| 2 consumers | 5 trade   |
| 3 aim       | 6 money   |

7 possible answers:

- 1 I wear casual clothes a lot, but that's because I work at home.
- 2 In my country, I think that's true. People have less money these days.
- 3 I know I should, but I don't always do it.
- 4 I agree. They're often very badly made.
- 5 I definitely agree. It employs a lot of people and is an important part of the economy.
- 6 I don't agree - it's worth spending money on good quality trainers.

Unit 29

- 1 1 D 2 S 3 D 4 S 5 S 6 D 7 S 8 D

- |            |            |
|------------|------------|
| 2 1 pale   | 5 upset    |
| 2 lack     | 6 cough    |
| 3 confused | 7 symptoms |
| 4 times    |            |

- |            |               |            |
|------------|---------------|------------|
| 3 1 lack   | 4 upset       | 7 cough    |
| 2 symptoms | 5 sore        | 8 confused |
| 3 painful  | 6 temperature | 9 check-up |



- 4 1 speeding  
2 driving licence  
3 Both **do up** and **fasten** are correct.  
4 insurance  
5 signalled  
6 ended up

- 5 1 **took** the driving test  
2 red light  
3 **failed** the test  
4 **passed** and got licence. I bought  
5 **insurance** to protect

- 7 Both **luckily** and **fortunately** are correct.  
8 damaged  
9 a fine  
10 luck

- 7 **fasten / do up** the seat belt  
8 **signal** to turn  
9 **damage** to the passenger door  
10 **ended up**  
11 **fix** some of the faults.

- 3 1 checked in  
2 throughout  
3 airfare  
4 departure lounge  
5 took off  
6 on schedule  
7 arrivals  
8 queued  
9 departure  
10 schedule

4 possible answers:

- 1 Yes, I do.  
2 It depends. The queues are very long in the holidays.  
3 I have a coffee, check my messages or listen to music.  
4 I don't like either very much.  
5 I prefer to sit near the wing, but I don't know why.  
6 No, I like to get up sometimes.  
7 No, fortunately not.  
8 No, we were delayed for about four hours because of bad weather.  
9 No, I haven't, and it's not something I'm very keen to do.

Unit 33

- 1 1 office  
2 traffic  
3 express  
4 station  
5 machine  
6 in  
7 trip  
8 stopping  
9 travel  
10 pass  
11 travel

- 2 1 ticket machine  
2 main stations  
3 service  
4 journey  
5 travel  
6 bus pass  
7 catch; miss  
8 traffic jam

- 3 1 rail  
2 journey  
3 change  
4 ticket/booking  
5 time  
6 missed  
7 destination  
8 travelling

- 4 1 B 3 B 5 B 7 B 9 G  
2 G 4 G 6 G 8 B 10 B

- 5 1 due  
2 connection  
3 held up / delayed  
4 cancelled  
5 commute  
6 get  
7 pick; up  
8 warning  
9 delay / hold-up  
10 broke down

6 possible answers:

- 1 F - I live in Switzerland, and they are very rarely cancelled.  
2 F - No, I don't often get held up.  
3 T - Yes, I've missed connections once or twice.  
4 That's true.  
5 That's true.  
6 That's true. I was delayed for a whole day once when travelling by train in India. There was a problem with the train.

Unit 34

- 1 1 S  
2 S  
3 D  
4 D in British English, but the same in American English  
5 S  
6 S

- 2 **IN THE AIRPORT BUILDING:** check-in, queue, departure lounge, arrivals  
**IN OR ON THE PLANE:** be airsick, wing, take-off, cabin, landing

- 5 1 access  
2 private  
3 advantage  
4 pleasure  
5 standard  
6 economy  
7 business  
8 entertainment  
9 luxury  
10 disadvantage

- 6 1 private  
2 entertainment  
3 experienced  
4 afford  
5 access  
6 luxury/experience  
7 1 experiences  
2 standard  
3 access  
4 pleasure  
5 board  
6 luxury/experience

8 possible answers:

- 1 I haven't had many interesting experiences, but I once sat next to Ryan Gosling on a flight.  
2 No, not really. The service is often slow.  
3 That's true.  
4 That's not true. I love flying and think it's very exciting.  
5 That's true.  
6 That's not true. My uncle once took me on a flight to Switzerland, and we went first class. I normally fly economy class.

Unit 35

- 1 1 indoors  
2 backpack  
3 campsite  
4 level  
5 outdoor  
6 camping  
7 countryside  
8 facilities  
9 indoor  
10 outdoors

- 2 1 sure  
2 level  
3 facilities  
4 camping  
5 case  
6 indoors  
7 outdoor  
8 hiked

- 3 1 countryside  
2 campsite  
3 facilities  
4 put  
5 tent  
6 unless  
7 hike  
8 backpack

- 4 1 S 2 D 3 S 4 D 5 D 6 S

- 5 1 T  
 2 F - A break is a short holiday.  
 3 F - A police station is not usually one of the sights in places people go to on holiday. One of the sights might be a castle, a beautiful view from a hill, etc.  
 4 T  
 5 F - If a place is remote, there aren't many people there at all.  
 6 T  
 7 T  
 8 F - If you head home, you are going towards home.
- 6 1 **sunbathing** at the seaside  
 2 more **remote** location  
 3 **make** a reservation  
 4 the **sights** in a new city  
 5 **seaside** holiday  
 6 a weekend **break**  
 7 look **forward** to  
 8 **turn out**
- 7 *possible answers:*  
 1 Not really. I go very red and burn.  
 2 I prefer a town where I can see the sights, go to restaurants, etc.  
 3 Yes, I generally make a reservation to be safe.  
 4 Yes, I love museums, galleries, architecture, etc.  
 5 I like being at the seaside, but I prefer to sit in cafés and in the shade.  
 6 Yes, I do. I prefer to do that often, rather than have a long holiday.  
 7 I don't enjoy travelling very much - it makes me nervous.  
 8 Yes, they do. I don't like unpleasant surprises!

### Unit 36

- 1 1 participate 7 compare  
 2 apologize 8 prevent  
 3 concentrate 9 complain  
 4 succeed 10 apply  
 5 benefit 11 rely  
 6 disagree
- 2 1 with 4 in 7 about  
 2 on 5 on 8 in  
 3 about 6 of 9 of
- 3 1 with 4 to 7 to 10 from  
 2 about 5 for 8 in 11 on  
 3 from 6 about 9 of 12 in
- 4 1 apply for 6 agree with  
 2 rely/depend on 7 care about  
 3 apologize for 8 tastes/tasted of  
 4 vote for 9 complained to  
 5 prevented us from
- 5 *possible answers:*  
 1 on my best friend quite a lot because he organizes most of my social life for me.  
 2 about food in restaurants, and also service in shops.  
 3 for anyone who thinks that climate change isn't happening.  
 4 about people I knew at school years ago.  
 5 about what TV programme they want to watch.

- 6 for forgetting things, like other people's birthdays.  
 7 about the future and whether I'll be happy.  
 8 with my friends when we discuss football.  
 9 on my parents - I want to be independent.

### Unit 37

- 1 alternative  
advantage  
experience  
connection  
poverty  
disadvantage (In the phrase 'advantages and disadvantages', *dis-* is often stressed: disadvantage.)
- 2 1 for 4 of 7 to  
 2 of 5 between 8 in  
 3 for 6 about
- 3 1 rise in 5 experience of  
 2 disadvantage of 6 cause of  
 3 doubts about 7 alternative to  
 4 respect for 8 connection between
- 4 *possible answers:*  
 1 I like the idea of people who commit minor crimes being asked to do work for the community as an alternative to prison.  
 2 I think teenagers need to have some limited experience of working. It's good for them to see life in the adult world.  
 3 I think it's a good thing. Women should be equal to men in the top jobs.  
 4 The advantages are the services (hospitals, schools, transport, etc.), which are generally better.  
 5 I think they should have a lot of respect for older people, who have a lot to offer.  
 6 We need the roads to be better, not more of them.  
 7 The connection is very strong in my country. Drug users need money for their drugs, and they sometimes steal to get it. Organized crime is a big problem in society.  
 8 The main causes of poverty in my country are inequality and a lack of education.  
 9 Yes, I'm worried that some food is not grown organically (naturally), and we don't know what that will do to our health in the future.

### Unit 38

- 1 in time, in the meantime, at times, for ages, for a while, at last, in a hurry
- 2 1 time 4 last  
 2 long 5 hurry  
 3 while; meantime 6 ages
- 3 1 in time 8 by the time  
 2 on time 9 in the meantime /  
 3 for ages meanwhile  
 4 for long  
 5 At the time  
 6 at last  
 7 for a while

Unit 39

1 1 D 2 S 3 D 4 S 5 S 6 S 7 S

2 with: something wrong, angry, fed up, pleased  
to: similar, rude, grateful, polite  
of: tired, aware, scared, jealous, proud

- 3 1 Is he aware of the problem?  
2 I'm fed up with writing essays.  
3 Sophia is jealous of her younger sister.  
4 He's not involved in marketing now.  
5 Egypt is famous for the pyramids.  
6 I wasn't prepared for the exam.

4 1 about 5 in 9 about  
2 in 6 of 10 for  
3 of 7 on  
4 in 8 of

5 1 proud 5 wrong  
2 similar 6 grateful  
3 frightened/scared 7 jealous  
4 fed up 8 pleased

6 possible answers:

I'm very grateful to my parents for everything they've done for me.

I get fed up with all the rubbish on the streets.

I'm proud of my older brother. He's just passed his driving test at the fifth attempt.

I'm bored with my maths homework.

I'm usually polite to everyone.

At the moment I'm worried about my English exam next week.

Unit 40

1 1 S 3 D 5 D 7 D  
2 S 4 S 6 D 8 S

2 1 for 4 at; from 7 in  
2 On 5 in 8 on  
3 over 6 in 9 for

- 3 1 In general / On the whole  
2 for life  
3 for free  
4 at risk / in danger  
5 on the street(s)  
6 in public  
7 In general / On the whole  
8 In recent years / In general / On the whole

4 possible answers:

I hate people arguing in public and I never do it myself.

I think if they are happy, they should.

I go for a run nearly every morning and I do breathing exercises every day.

We should put pressure on the government to help them with education, social housing and mental health support.

Yes, I do that anyway.

No, I think things have got a lot worse, both economically and politically.

Yes, I think so. Everyone knows about the danger of plastic today.

Yes, I think they can be.

Yes, I do!

5 by chance, on earth, by mistake, at least, in detail, on average, in particular, in that case

6 1 at least 5 in the way  
2 in particular 6 On average  
3 by chance 7 on the/my way  
4 At the end

- 7 1 A taxi will be very expensive. ~ OK, in that case, let's take the bus.  
2 I picked up Ben's scarf **by mistake** because it looked very similar to mine.  
3 We met Maxine **by chance** when we were on holiday in Rome. It was a strange coincidence.  
4 What **on earth** is that man doing with a box over his head?  
5 We spent ages waiting for the box office to open, and **in the end** we went home.  
6 My parents want to know about the party **in detail**. I hope you can remember what happened!

Unit 41

1 1 pot 5 cotton  
2 coal 6 comb  
3 remote control 7 shawl  
4 owl 8 shampoo  
2 1 creature 5 object/thing  
2 material 6 stuff  
3 device 7 container  
4 substance

3 wrong answers:

1 children 5 towel  
2 bee 6 bag  
3 tree 7 melon  
4 spoon

- 4 1 Soap is a substance you use to wash (yourself) with / Soap is stuff you ...  
2 A snake is a long, thin creature with no legs.  
3 A tin is a metal container for food and drinks.  
4 A hairdryer is an electrical device for drying your hair.  
5 A fork is an object / a thing you use to pick up and eat food.  
6 Denim is a material which is used to make jeans.

5 1 D (in British English) 5 D  
2 D 6 D  
3 S 7 S  
4 S 8 D

6 1 boot 6 silver  
2 stone 7 statue  
3 metal 8 fork  
4 woollen 9 gold  
5 pipe 10 wooden

- 7 1 leather  
2 stone; brick; wood  
3 wood; metal  
4 rubber  
5 iron; steel; stone; bricks  
6 gold; silver  
7 cardboard; wood

8 possible answers:

My phone is made of metal and plastic, the carpet is made of wool, my pen is made of plastic and metal, the house wall is made of stone, my ring is made of gold, my shoes and handbag are made of leather, the bottom of my shoes are made of rubber, and my jumper is woollen.

Unit 42

- 1 1 needle 4 scissors 7 hole  
2 string 5 drill 8 cotton  
3 hammer 6 rope 9 glue

- 2 1 needle 5 a drill  
2 scissors 6 tape  
3 rope 7 cotton  
4 a hammer 8 bang

- 3 1 tools 5 hole  
2 scissors; pins; 6 bang; nail  
sew; cotton 7 together; string  
3 stick; glue 8 hang  
4 rope

4 possible answers:

I like sewing, so I've got needles, pins, scissors and cotton. I use tape and glue when I'm working in the study or if I break anything, like a bowl or cup. I haven't got a drill, but I have got a hammer and some nails. I've always got string to tie things together, but not rope.

- 5 wipe, dust, dirt, mess, fix, cloth, mend, properly, mud, repair

- 6 1 come and fix/repair/mend it  
2 there's mud/dirt all over  
3 get rid of it  
4 what is wrong with  
5 to wipe the cupboards  
6 isn't working properly  
7 to repair/mend the hole  
8 tidy up, please

- 7 1 mess 7 wrong  
2 tidy 8 repaired/fixed/  
3 dust/dirt mended  
4 dirt/dust 9 properly  
5 rid 10 fix/mend/repair  
6 decorate

Unit 43

- 1 1 property / entrance; property / entrance  
2 balcony / garage  
3 cottage / jam  
4 cottage / impressive  
5 ceiling / lead; ceiling / lead  
6 face / historic

- 2 1 leads 5 moving  
2 cottage 6 onto  
3 garage 7 faces  
4 entrance 8 historic

- 3 1 property 4 face  
2 historic 5 impressive  
3 ceilings 6 setting

4 possible answers:

- 1 I live in a house which was built in 1960. There are no other houses nearby.  
2 No, it's not old. I used to live in a historic building, but it needed a lot of work.  
3 Yes, it does, and it's very light.  
4 It faces a valley and one or two farm buildings.  
5 It has a lovely garden, and the kitchen is very big and bright.  
6 Yes, the countryside is very near me, and the setting is beautiful.

- 5 block of flats, waste ground, leisure centre, shopping mall, office block, power plant, retail store

- 6 1 locate 6 block  
2 commercial 7 retail store  
3 mall / shopping mall 8 town hall  
4 addition 9 heating

- 5 residents

- 7 1 leisure centre, waste ground, shopping mall, town hall, retail stores

- 2 apartment  
3 residents

8 possible answers:

- 1 We don't have a power plant near the town. There's an area of waste ground near the river where the council wants to build some new houses. There's a big leisure centre and a small shopping mall. The town hall is in the centre of town, and there are hundreds of retail stores.  
2 No, I don't live in an apartment block now, but I used to live in one about twenty years ago.  
3 There were only about ten residents in my block.

Unit 44

- 1 1 Put the plant in the ~~boil~~ soil  
2 She's planted a ~~bow~~ row  
3 You can support the plants with little ~~stocks~~ sticks  
4 Could you ~~paek~~ pick  
5 We walked along the ~~bath~~ path  
6 Did you ~~plane~~ plant  
7 She put a ~~lager~~ layer  
8 I need a couple of ~~pets~~ pots

- 2 1 No, plants are bigger than seeds. / Seeds are smaller than plants.  
2 No, sticks can support your plants.  
3 No, leaves grow above the ground.  
4 No, you plant seeds in layers of soil.  
5 No, you pick flowers, fruit and vegetables when they've grown.  
6 No, the edge of a table is on the outside.  
7 No, a path in a garden is where you walk.

Unit 45

- 1 1 point 7 pointed  
2 square 8 chart  
3 curve 9 triangle  
4 diamond-shaped 10 diagram  
5 round 11 shell-shaped  
6 rectangle

- 2 1 round  
2 rectangular  
3 circle  
4 curved/round  
5 square
- 3 1 a straight path  
2 a triangular road sign  
3 a curved needle  
4 shell-shaped pasta / pasta in the shape of shells  
5 a pointed toe (of a shoe) / a pointed shoe  
6 a rectangular box / a box in the shape of a rectangle

- 6 point  
7 diagram; chart  
8 angles  
9 shapes  
10 triangular

- 3 1 looks dirty  
2 sounded tired  
3 tastes (very/too) sweet  
4 felt wet/damp OR It smelled horrible, etc.  
5 look clean  
6 felt cold  
7 smells wonderful/great/lovely, etc.  
8 sounded easy

- 4 possible answers:  
1 like an accident. OR as if/though somebody has dropped something.  
2 as if/though she has fallen over.  
3 as if/though they're having an argument. OR like an argument.  
4 as if/though they're going to lose.  
5 like a good idea. OR as if/though it's going to be fun.  
6 as if/though he might jump. OR as if/though he's repairing/painting it.

#### Unit 46

- 1 1 ignore  
2 scene  
3 relaxing  
4 impression
- 2 1 Five.  
2 In the background/ distance.  
3 On the bank of the river. / On the river.
- 3 1 work  
2 feeling  
3 don't  
4 picture  
5 light
- 4 1 industrial  
2 background  
3 heat  
4 peace
- 5 1 peace  
2 foreground  
3 background  
4 distance  
5 just
- 6 possible answers:  
1 Vassily Kandinsky.  
2 Yes, in 1911.  
3 It's an abstract painting and has lots of amazing shapes, patterns and colours.  
4 I like the many different ways I can interpret it, depending on my mood. I also like the colours.

- 5 sense  
6 shocking  
7 industrial
- 4 Yes, they are.  
5 Bright.  
6 Peaceful.  
7 Ordinary.  
8 No, there aren't any.
- 6 factories  
7 artist, photographer, etc.  
8 nobody

- 5 possible answers:  
1 I look like my father, but not my mother.  
2 Yes, my sister and I look very similar / look like each other.  
3 Yes, I do.  
4 No, not usually.  
5 I feel nervous before going on a long journey.  
6 Yes, I love the taste of garlic.  
7 Yes, I do. I love that smell.  
8 Yes, generally I feel quite positive about the future.

#### Unit 48

- 1 steal, send, commit
- 2 1 S 2 S 3 D 4 D 5 S 6 D 7 S
- 3 1 committed 7 act  
2 criminal 8 serious; prison/jail  
3 legal 9 minor; against  
4 stole 10 broken  
5 property 11 killings  
6 prisoners 12 fine
- 4 The following are wrong:  
1 murder  
2 parking  
3 break in  
4 burglary and theft  
5 robbery
- 5 1 T  
2 F - You stab someone with a knife.  
3 T  
4 T  
5 F - You rob a bank.  
6 T  
7 F - You shoot someone with a gun.
- 6 1 broke; stole; stabbed  
2 criminal; theft  
3 robbed/attacked; shoot (also possible: murder/kill)  
4 murdering (also possible: killing); shot  
5 burglar  
6 robbed  
7 Theft; assaults  
8 robbery/theft

#### Unit 47

- 1 1 listen to  
2 smell  
3 hear  
4 sound like  
5 touch
- 2 1 press  
2 can; sounds  
3 looking  
4 touch  
5 looked  
6 tasted

- 6 press  
7 see  
8 feel  
9 watch  
10 feel
- 7 listen  
8 smell  
9 looks  
10 feels

**Unit 49**

- 1 1 The police  
2 The person that the police believe is responsible for the crime.  
3 The police  
4 The victim  
5 The witness or witnesses  
6 The victim  
7 The person the police believe is responsible for the crime.  
8 The person that the police believe is responsible for the crime.
- 2 1 report 5 arrest  
2 Victims 6 evidence  
3 investigate 7 charge  
4 took place 8 court
- 3 1 reported 5 investigation  
2 prove 6 witnesses  
3 charged 7 victims; taken  
4 caught; arrested 8 court
- 4 1 T  
2 T  
3 F - The jury determines whether the person is guilty or not.  
4 T  
5 F - If the person is innocent, they will go free. / If the person is guilty, they may go to prison.  
6 F - The judge decides the punishment.
- 5 2 h 4 e 6 d 8 a  
3 g 5 b 7 f 9 i
- 6 1 court; tried 6 jury; determine; guilty  
2 punishment 7 purpose  
3 examined 8 trial; judge  
4 witness  
5 whether

**Unit 50**

- 1 breathing difficulty, mental illness, suffer from asthma, allergic to certain types of food, various illnesses, treat a sick patient
- 2 1 allergy 3 1 breathing  
2 breathing 2 difficulty  
3 various 3 treated  
4 disease 4 disease  
5 young 5 suffered  
6 issue/difficulty 6 mental  
7 treat; variety 7 various  
8 allergic 8 treatment  
9 illness
- 4 save money, as soon as possible, care for the elderly, limit what we spend, an ageing population, old age
- 5 1 carer  
2 economic  
3 strength  
4 Fitness  
5 equally  
6 working  
7 possibly

- 6 1 ageing 5 age  
2 possible 6 fit; long  
3 elderly 7 tax, limit  
4 care

7 possible answers:

- 1 Yes, we also have a problem with an ageing population in my country.  
2 No, I'd like to stop work when I'm sixty if possible.  
3 Yes, sadly I think that's true.  
4 That's sometimes true, but often they don't live near their parents, so they have to pay for care.  
5 That's not true. You have time to do what you want, and you have a lot to give to younger generations. You also get pleasure from different things in life, especially nature.  
6 I try to do that.  
7 Yes, I agree with that. I'll be old one day.

**Unit 51**

- 1 1 T  
2 T  
3 F - Only one person can be elected in each area.  
4 F - Parliament and the government are not the same thing. Some members of parliament are in the government, but some are not.  
5 T  
6 F - The party with the majority of elected MPs usually forms the government.
- 2 1 hold  
2 elected  
3 power  
4 vote  
5 MPs / Members of Parliament / politicians  
6 votes; majority  
7 political parties  
8 represent  
9 system
- 3 1 In South Korea, elections are held every four years for the National Assembly and every five years to elect the president.  
2 At the moment, Moon Jae-in is the President, and the largest party in the National Assembly is the Democratic Party of Korea.  
3 Moon Jae-in, of the Democratic Party, has been in power since 2017; and Chung Sye-kyun, also of the Democratic Party, has been the Prime Minister since January, 2020.  
4 Lee Hae-chan is the Leader of the Democratic Party of Korea.  
5 There are 300 members of the National Assembly.
- 4 1 public 5 live in  
2 do it 6 suggest  
3 keep them safe 7 want  
4 give it your attention 8 a plan agreed by a group
- 5 1 announcement 4 objective  
2 focus 5 infinitive  
3 on 6 for
- 6 1 policy; announce 5 aim  
2 immigrants 6 due  
3 persuade 7 focus; need  
4 measures 8 protection

**Unit 52**

- 1 1 d 2 e 3 f 4 a 5 g 6 c
- 2 1 enemy/enemies 4 soldier  
2 leader 5 weapons  
3 bomb 6 explode
- 3 1 firing 5 leader; escape  
2 army 6 control; enemy  
3 bomb; explosion 7 weapons  
4 battle/fight; injured 8 fought; fighters
- 4 1 less 5 the fighting has not ended  
2 don't want 6 sure  
3 part 7 long  
4 try 8 made a decision with them
- 5 1 reached 6 attempt  
2 lasting 7 determined  
3 involved 8 agreement  
4 fighting 9 rejects  
5 talks 10 war
- 6 possible answers:  
1 agreement  
2 attempt  
3 ten minutes / an hour / a week, etc.  
4 talks  
5 offer/help/idea, etc.  
6 win / pass the exam / stop smoking / find a solution (almost any positive decision)

**Unit 53**

- 1 1 decade OR decade  
2 princess OR princess (*Princess* is usually stressed on the first syllable when followed by a name, e.g. Princess Michiko.)  
3 republic  
4 develop  
5 president  
6 monarchy  
7 available  
8 discovery  
9 development  
10 independence  
11 nuclear
- 2 king/queen; invention/discovery; monarchy/republic; decade/century; nuclear/power
- 3 1 independent 6 theory  
2 princess 7 expedition  
3 republic 8 decade  
4 royal 9 challenge  
5 president 10 power station
- 4 1 invented; available 6 independence; independent  
2 discovered; challenged 7 released  
3 royal 8 development  
4 president 9 led; expedition  
5 Prince; king; ruled 10 nuclear
- 5 1 theory 6 republic  
2 Queen 7 Leader  
3 president 8 claimed; challenged; claim  
4 decade 9 developed  
5 Princess

**6 answers at the time of writing (2019):**

- 1 Charles Darwin  
2 Jordan  
3 Barack Obama  
4 2010s (2012)  
5 She was the wife of Charles, Prince of Wales, the eldest son of Queen Elizabeth II.  
6 Russia  
7 Kim Jong-un  
8 Edmund Hilary  
9 Sigmund Freud

**Unit 54**

- 1 1 B 2 G 3 B 4 B 5 G 6 B 7 B
- 2 1 T  
2 Don't know.  
3 T  
4 F - Victims are more willing to report crimes.  
5 F - Young people get drunk less.  
6 F - Young people drink less for a combination of factors.
- 3 1 trend 6 consume; drunk  
2 violence 7 fear  
3 account 8 records  
4 combination 9 enquiry  
5 expert
- 4 1 compete 6 passionate  
2 consequence 7 voluntary  
3 homeless 8 society  
4 donation 9 retired  
5 volunteer
- 5 1 helps 5 paid  
2 feeling 6 result  
3 instead 7 working  
4 nowhere
- 6 1 voluntary 5 donations  
2 passion; volunteering 6 donate/give  
3 raise 7 society  
4 compete 8 force

**7 possible answers, from the Czech Republic:**

There are plenty of charities in the Czech Republic. The most famous cancer charities are Dobrý anděl (Good Angel) and Liga proti rakovině (League against Cancer). They raise money on special occasions. For example, on Flower Day every May, volunteers sell bright yellow flowers to support the League. DMS, i.e. donation text messages, have probably become the most popular way of contributing. Of course, you can always send donations to the charities' accounts.

These big charities compete for donations, but they work on a different basis. The League always have a 'topic' of the year - this year it was lung cancer - while Dobrý anděl tell people about concrete cases of people/families who need help because of the illness.

These charities have 'transparent' accounts, which means we can see where the money from our donations goes. And this may be a good solution to the problem described in the text.

### Unit 55

- 1 run, overslept, burst, dealt, set, frozen, grown
- 2 1 burst 6 sprang out of  
2 overslept 7 ran away  
3 frozen 8 grew  
4 sank 9 lay  
5 dealt with 10 alarm
- 3 sprung; set off; deal with; burst; set
- 4 possible answers:  
I never spring out of bed: I get up really slowly.  
I've never set off a burglar alarm or fire alarm by mistake, but the fire alarm went off at school once when there was a fire in the kitchen.  
I've had to deal with two difficult bosses, one very strange colleague but no difficult students.  
Yes, I've burst balloons, but only by accident.  
I once set an alarm clock for 6.00 in the evening instead of 6.00 in the morning and missed my plane!
- 5 1 hidden 6 shone  
2 thrown 7 bent  
3 shaken 8 lit  
4 blown 9 shot  
5 spilt 10 laid
- 6 1 horse 5 boxes  
2 cup 6 fire  
3 pencil 7 wall  
4 water 8 gloves
- 7 1 led 6 shone  
2 spilt 7 tore  
3 lit 8 hung; up  
4 bent 9 blown  
5 hid 10 laid

### Unit 56

- 1 + infinitive: agree, offer, manage,  
+ -ing form: give up, imagine, avoid, keep  
infinitive or -ing form: prefer, like, begin, continue
- 2 1 pretended 4 need  
2 admitted 5 risk  
3 consider 6 expected
- 3 1 intend 5 refused  
2 mind 6 suggested  
3 attempted 7 expect  
4 kept 8 risk
- 4 1 living 4 going  
2 to be/become 5 to help  
3 doing 6 to be
- 5 1 afford 4 tend  
2 fancy 5 imagine  
3 pretend 6 planning
- 6 possible answers:  
1 I managed to pass a Greek exam.  
2 I intended to throw away some old stuff in the garage, but I still haven't.  
3 I agreed to help a friend with his painting.  
4 I refused to cook dinner for my brother two days ago - he's so lazy.

- 5 I forgot to send a birthday card to Rachel on time, so it arrived two days late.  
6 I took up singing recently. I joined a choir and really enjoy it.

### Unit 57

- 1 1 herself 5 myself  
2 themselves 6 ourselves  
3 himself 7 yourselves  
4 yourself
- 2 1 care 4 hurt  
2 cut 5 control  
3 pay / buy one 6 behave
- 3 1 teaching myself / learning by myself  
2 pay for myself  
3 calm myself  
4 looking at myself  
5 killing themselves  
6 behave themselves
- 4 possible answers:  
0 No, I always enjoy myself at parties.  
1 That's true.  
2 It depends - sometimes I pay for myself, and sometimes I pay for the other person or they pay for me.  
3 That's true: I breathe deeply, and I try to do something different, like listening to music or going for a walk.  
4 I don't think that's true, except when I'm brushing my hair or getting dressed.  
5 Yes, sadly, I think that's true.  
6 In my country that's certainly true.

### Unit 58

- 1 1 take 6 takes  
2 bring 7 Both answers are correct.  
3 take 8 take  
4 Both answers are correct. 9 take  
5 take
- 2 possible answers:  
1 took the bus / took a taxi.  
2 took his advice.  
3 take milk or sugar?  
4 takes (me) fifteen minutes.  
5 take them to the staffroom/library/room next door, etc.?  
6 took it with him.  
7 take two tablets twice a day with food.  
8 take size 42, and these are too small.
- 3 possible answers:  
1 It takes me 45 minutes.  
2 I take milk, but no sugar.  
3 I take size 44.  
4 I took/did an accountancy exam for my job.  
5 I take lots of pictures of interesting trees and my family.  
6 I usually take their advice, but they don't give me advice very often.

### Unit 59

- 1 1 collection 7 portrait  
 2 abstract 8 exhibit  
 3 artist 9 collector  
 4 period 10 sculpture  
 5 paintbrush 11 technique  
 6 landscape 12 exhibition
- 2 1 portrait 6 collector  
 2 landscape 7 work of art  
 3 still life 8 paintbrush  
 4 frame 9 abstract  
 5 exhibition 10 technique
- 3 1 sculptures 7 abstract  
 2 range 8 techniques  
 3 period 9 work  
 4 portrait 10 effect  
 5 landscapes 11 exhibited  
 6 still 12 collection
- 4 1 d 2 e 3 h 4 a 5 b 6 c 7 g
- 5 1 moved 5 remember  
 2 original 6 happiness  
 3 image 7 reacted  
 4 optimistic 8 destruction

#### 6 possible answers:

- 1 Picasso's painting called *Guernica* makes me very sad, but art doesn't usually move me to tears.  
 2 It depends. Some abstract art makes me really think and it moves me, but very dark abstract paintings can be depressing.  
 3 *The Wedding Dance* by Pieter Bruegel makes me laugh.  
 4 I have a few original paintings which I bought from a friend of mine. They are of beautiful interiors of buildings with a few people sitting quietly in them. I also have a couple of paintings I did myself. They're not very good, though.

### Unit 60

- 1 1 D 2 S 3 S 4 D 5 S

#### 2 people: critic, screenwriter, producer

- 3 1 genre 6 content  
 2 fame 7 combination  
 3 critics 8 cinema  
 4 influenced 9 combines  
 5 award

#### 4 possible answer:

A film I really enjoyed was *Boyhood*, which was made over the 12 years of a young boy's life as he was growing up; the genre is a 'coming of age' movie. The director and screenwriter is Richard Linklater. The script developed during the filming. It won a Golden Globe Award and a British Film Academy Award for Best Film, and the critics loved it.

### Unit 61

- 1 1 local 5 wear  
 2 role 6 part in a play  
 3 professional  
 4 stage

- 2 1 They put their plays on in a small local theatre.  
 2 It's an amateur group.  
 3 It's a drama group.  
 4 Sam writes some of the plays.  
 5 I don't do much acting.  
 6 I once played a servant in a comedy.  
 7 I help with costume and stage design.  
 8 I take a small role in some of the plays.

- 3 1 play 5 leading  
 2 role 6 curtain  
 3 stage 7 drama  
 4 costumes

### Unit 62

- 1 1 S 3 S 5 D 7 S  
 2 D 4 D 6 S

- 2 1 organ; organist  
 2 trumpet; trumpeter  
 3 cello; cellist  
 4 drums; drummer  
 5 saxophone; saxophonist  
 6 bass guitar; bass guitarist  
 7 keyboard; keyboard player

- 3 1 lead; Queen 6 trumpet  
 2 guitarist; Rolling Stones 7 cellist  
 3 conductor 8 bass; Rolling Stones  
 4 drums; Beatles 9 keyboard  
 5 saxophone 10 trumpeters; record

- 4 1 Yes  
 2 Yes  
 3 No, you see it.  
 4 Yes  
 5 Yes  
 6 No, they like you very much.  
 7 Yes  
 8 No, it isn't.  
 9 Yes  
 10 Yes

- 5 1 release 9 live  
 2 well 10 touring  
 3 impact 11 impact  
 4 recording 12 visual  
 5 fans 13 influence  
 6 admired 14 alive  
 7 fan 15 sadly  
 8 songwriter

### Unit 63

- 1 channel, talk show, documentary, host, guest, soap opera, series, episode, chat show
- 2 1 d 2 f 3 e 4 a 5 b
- 3 1 episode 6 hosts  
 2 game 7 drama  
 3 chat/talk; guests 8 documentary  
 4 channel  
 5 soaps / soap operas

4 possible answers:

I don't really like soap operas and almost never watch them.

I enjoy documentaries but it depends on the topic: some are not very interesting for me.

I always watch the news at some point in the day, largely from habit.

I don't like game shows at all and never watch them.

I occasionally watch chat shows if I'm interested in the guests.

I really like drama series, and I think there are some excellent ones on TV at the moment.

5 1 of 2 sets 3 in 4 far 5 top

- 6 1 That programme is a repeat.  
2 On top of that, I was too tired to finish watching it.  
3 Young people typically prefer online viewing.  
4 That programme had five million viewers.  
5 I watched a lot of TV in my youth.  
6 A lot of people were critical of the programme.

- 7 1 critical 4 indicate  
2 shift 5 aged  
3 lifestyle 6 far

Unit 64

1 international, daily, forever, currently, cultural

2 1 S 3 D 5 D 7 S  
2 D 4 S 6 D 8 D

- 3 1 cultural 5 editor  
2 journalist 6 daily; version  
3 published 7 current affairs  
4 headline 8 journals

4 possible answers:

- 1 Yes, I read a paper.  
2 I mostly read it online.  
3 I read a paper every day, but spend more time reading the paper version at weekends.  
4 Mostly national news and sport.  
5 I hope not, but I think they might.
- 5 1 If you raise something, it goes higher/up.  
2 If somebody commits suicide, they die.  
3 If you protest against something, you are unhappy about it.  
4 If you claim something, you say it is true (but it may not be).  
5 If you retire, you stop working for the rest of your life.  
6 If you quit, you leave your job.

6 1 c 3 i 5 a 7 d  
2 h 4 f 6 e 8 g

- 7 1 rate 5 banned  
2 retirement 6 suicide; among  
3 duty 7 spending  
4 quit

8 possible answers, from Poland:

- 1 The birth rate in Poland kept falling until 2004, then it went up for a couple of years, and in the last few years it has been quite stable.

- 2 Currently, the retirement age is 65 for men and 60 for women. The current government lowered it a year ago, but I think the next government may need to raise it again.
- 3 The fuel duty keeps going up steadily nowadays.
- 4 Donald Tusk quit as prime minister of Poland in 2014. He then became the President of the European Union.
- 5 Restaurants banned smoking a few years ago, and cinemas ask people to turn their mobile phones off.
- 6 Yes, it's true that suicide is more common in Poland now. Psychologists say it's because of stress, anxiety and bullying, e.g. on social media of young people's peers.
- 7 Many people agree public spending on the health service in Poland is not sufficient. There aren't enough medical staff as they don't earn satisfactory salaries and so they emigrate to richer countries where the pay is better. There are also long queues for patients waiting to be diagnosed with specialist equipment and waiting to be operated on.

Unit 65

1 1 Fiction: sci-fi, ghost stories, historical novel (sometimes based on real people and events but not true stories), crime stories  
Non-fiction: reference book, biography, autobiography

- 2 1 ghost/crime 6 alphabet  
2 poetry/poems 7 biography  
3 reference/non-fiction 8 poets  
4 pleasure 9 alphabetical  
5 mystery 10 published

3 possible answers, from Hungary:

- 1 I read both but I prefer fiction. Stories are good to escape from your everyday life.
- 2 I have to read a lot for work, but when I have some free time I love reading for pleasure.
- 3 Poetry reminds me of school so I prefer the other two. If I had to choose, I would read sci-fi as murder mysteries are sometimes too obvious and too easy to solve.
- 4 Not very often. I have always liked history so when I read, I prefer reading historical novels, e.g. war novels like *Catch-22* or *Birdsong*.
- 5 I love reading about my favourite artists or sportspeople. I have read the autobiography of Katinka Hosszú, whose nickname is The Iron Lady.
- 6 No, I don't, but the files on my laptop are in alphabetical order.

4 attract, attention, chapter, original, narrative, summary, summarize, recommendation

- 5 1 attention 5 chapters  
2 title 6 well  
3 original 7 cover  
4 theme

- 6 1 narrative  
2 theme  
3 plot  
4 chapter
- 5 cover  
6 known  
7 recommendation  
8 survey

7 possible answers:

- 1 That's true - I often read fast-moving books.  
2 No, I never read anything where the main theme is war.  
3 That's sometimes true, but I'm also very interested in the characters and their relationships.  
4 If I don't like a book, I usually read about 100 pages before I give up.  
5 That's definitely true.  
6 That's not true because I often read books by authors who aren't well known but have been recommended to me by a friend.  
7 I think that's true, but it depends on the friend!  
8 That's generally true.

Unit 66

- 1 1 weightlifting  
2 cycling  
3 gymnastics
- 4 fencing  
5 athletics
- 2 1 figures  
2 record  
3 race/medal  
4 Professionals
- 5 take part / participate  
6 takes place  
7 holds/broke  
8 competitor
- 3 1 figures  
2 compete  
3 record  
4 competitors;  
professionals  
5 race
- 6 medal; competition  
7 broke; coached  
8 competitive  
9 amateurs  
10 competed / took part / participated
- 4 host, qualification, championship, nation
- 5 1 The first **host** nation was Uruguay.  
2 The first **tournament** was held in 1930.  
3 Thirteen different **nations** took part in the first tournament.  
4 Every country has to qualify, **except for** the host nation.  
5 Thirty-two teams have competed in **recent** championships.  
6 Brazil has won the **final** five times, and therefore the championship.  
7 The **champions** in 2018 were France.  
8 The winners receive a large **cup**.
- 6 1 Cup; held; nations/teams  
2 champions; final  
3 tournaments/championships (*also possible*: competitions)  
4 Currently; qualified  
5 host; tournament/championship (*also possible*: competitions)

Unit 67

- 1 1 tennis player  
2 golfer  
3 athlete  
4 boxer
- 5 (motor) racing driver  
6 rugby player  
7 skier  
8 gymnast

- 2 1 a referee  
2 a goalkeeper  
3 a racing driver  
4 a linesman
- 5 a hockey player  
6 supporters/fans  
7 a tennis player  
8 rugby players

- 3 1 helmet  
2 whistle  
3 stick  
4 waving; flag
- 5 shouting  
6 net  
7 racket  
8 bat

- 4 1 length  
2 width  
3 maximum
- 4 depth  
5 worldwide  
6 so

- 5 1 pool; long; wide; minimum depth  
2 stadium; spectators  
3 worldwide; court  
4 stadium; therefore; covered

- 6 1 football; Madrid (Spain)  
2 Wimbledon (England); tennis  
3 football; London (England)  
4 Italy; Germany; motor racing  
5 football; Turin (Italy)

Unit 68

- 1 **beauty**: bury, contest  
**occasion**: religion  
**approach**: parade  
**celebration**: entertainment  
**festival**: neighbourhood, celebrate
- 2 1 Yes 3 No 5 Yes 7 No  
2 No 4 No 6 No 8 Yes
- 3 1 c 3 g 5 h 7 b  
2 f 4 d 6 a
- 4 1 buried 6 neighbourhood/  
community  
2 celebration 7 entertainment  
3 dress up 8 community  
4 ceremony  
5 approach
- 5 1 site 5 a lot  
2 occasion 6 God  
3 costume 7 celebrate  
4 folk(s) 8 buried
- 6 1 neighbourhood 4 occasions; fireworks  
2 dressed up 5 mean  
3 dancers
- 7 possible answers, from Argentina:  
1 There are many festivals in my city, but there's one in my neighbourhood that I really like. It's the Annual Tango Festival, and it usually takes place in August every year. People from all over the world come to see dance contests and concerts.  
2 I've never dressed up for a festival, but I've always liked traditional costumes!  
3 In the Annual Tango Festival there are performances by professional dancers and musicians.  
4 There are no fireworks at the Tango Festival! Sometimes there are fireworks on Independence Day and New Year's Eve.  
5 Personally, the Tango Festival means a lot to me because it's a celebration of part of my cultural heritage.

**Unit 69**

- 1 1 login 5 app  
2 hardware 6 freeze  
3 username 7 stored  
4 data
- 2 1 log in 5 log off  
2 data 6 app  
3 engine 7 images  
4 network
- 3 1 software; images  
2 search  
3 username  
4 FAQ  
5 log out (also possible: log off)  
6 apps/applications
- 4 possible answers:  
1 Yes, I do. I like playing around with images.  
2 I tend to use Google a lot.  
3 No, I've got a lot of different usernames and I can never remember them!  
4 Yes, I do, especially for health websites.  
5 Yes, I do - it's very important for security, I think.  
6 I use the weather app, the BBC app, WhatsApp and Facebook.
- 5 1 S 3 D 5 S 7 S  
2 S 4 D 6 D
- 6 1 mouse 4 delete/remove  
2 charge it / plug it in 5 download  
3 power/energy
- 7 1 low; charge; plug; 5 download  
charger 6 deleted  
2 connected; supply 7 is running;  
3 Wi-Fi update  
4 batteries, wireless 8 start

**Unit 70**

- 1 1 S 4 S  
2 S 5 S  
3 D 6 D in British English
- 2 1 inbox 5 forward  
2 attachment 6 junk; delete  
3 link 7 replied  
4 all 8 folders
- 3 possible answers:  
1 I often send documents to do with work to my customers. I send photos to my friends and family quite often.  
2 No, I don't delete messages very often - only junk mail.  
3 It isn't completely full, but I always forget to empty it.  
4 About 10.  
5 Yes, often. I'm in a group of friends, and we often forward messages, especially if there are photos or interesting news items.
- 4 1 S 4 S 7 S  
2 D 5 S  
3 S 6 D

- 5 1 social 7 instantly/  
2 contact immediately  
3 networking 8 share  
4 selfie 9 blog  
5 profile 10 tweet  
6 post 11 promote
- 6 I use social media all the time - several times a day, in fact. This is mainly to keep in touch with my friends. I've never written a blog.  
I quite often share photos online for my friends to see - not of myself, but of places I've been to, or interesting meals in restaurants.  
Yes, I connect with my sister and cousins all the time on social media, mainly through WhatsApp. I've never taken a selfie.  
I've written a very short profile; I don't want to give too much information about myself online.  
I don't have a business to promote.

**Unit 71**

- 1 unreliable
- 2 1 unnecessary 4 unfair  
2 unlocked 5 unlucky  
3 unreliable 6 unsuitable
- 3 1 unreliable 6 unsuitable  
2 unable 7 unnecessary  
3 unfair 8 unplug  
4 unfit 9 unlock  
5 unlikely
- 4 un-: unkind, unfriendly, unexpected, unusual, unpopular; BUT impolite, impractical and impatient (Adjectives beginning with p- quite often form opposites with the prefix im-.)
- 5 1 R 5 W; illegal  
2 W; dishonest 6 R  
3 R 7 W; illegible  
4 R
- 6 1 disagree 5 illegible  
2 retake 6 disorganized  
3 reappear 7 irregular  
4 dishonest 8 illegal
- 7 1 irregular 4 illegal  
2 dishonest 5 disagree  
3 rearrange 6 retake
- 8 possible answers:  
1 Yes, there are a lot of irregular verbs in Spanish.  
2 Yes, I think so.  
3 Yes, I do it sometimes if I've decorated the room, or when I feel like a change.  
4 Yes, it's illegal, but quite a lot of people do it.  
5 No, not really. I have similar views to most of my friends.  
6 Yes, it is.
- questions at the top:  
It's illegal to ride a motorbike without a crash helmet.  
Yes, I think it is.  
Yes, it does. It's very important for lawyers to be well organized.

Sometimes. It depends how strongly I feel about the subject – and how much I like the person!

Yes, you can.

Yes, but only in unusual circumstances. If someone is being very aggressive and rude to me, I might be impolite to them, but that hardly ever happens.

I'm not sure. Doctors use computers so much these days. Maybe their handwriting is less important than it was in the past.

Yes, it's just a question of sitting down and learning them.

I often reuse plastic water bottles, and I recycle them if they're very old.

### Unit 72

- 1 1 D 2 D 3 D 4 S 5 D
- 2 1 knowledge 5 confusion  
2 improvement 6 prayer  
3 conclusion 7 quotation/quote  
4 attraction 8 encouragement
- 3 1 quoting 5 reached;  
2 feel improvements  
3 confused 6 breathe  
4 prayer 7 knowledge
- 4 1 G 4 G 7 B  
2 G 5 B 8 B  
3 G 6 G 9 G
- 5 1 powerful; powerless 5 various  
2 creamy 6 central  
3 fashionable 7 shiny  
4 practical
- 6 1 industrial 5 humorous  
2 economical (also 6 powerless  
possible: practical) 7 various  
3 fashionable 8 valuable (also  
4 creamy possible: practical)
- 7 -al: natural, emotional, musical;  
-able: drinkable, reliable; BUT healthy

### Unit 73

- 1 1 as a result 5 as well  
2 Since 6 As  
3 due to 7 but also  
4 so 8 In addition
- 2 ADDITION: as well; but also  
REASON: due to; since; as  
RESULT: as a result; so
- 3 1 close (early) / stay closed  
2 she couldn't / wasn't able to  
3 was horrible/disgusting/terrible  
4 didn't have  
5 get in / open the door  
6 they're not (very)  
7 the room was / I was  
8 won't be able to / can't  
9 clauses
- 4 1 e 4 c 7 a  
2 i 5 d 8 h  
3 b 6 f

- 5 1 despite 5 In; still  
2 However 6 even  
3 spite 7 that  
4 although/though /  
even though

### 6 possible answers:

- 1 he still loved/liked her.  
2 she is careful with it / doesn't spend much.  
3 the other, it wasn't very good/clean; it was noisy/dirty, etc.  
4 I don't think I'll get it / I haven't got enough experience for it.  
5 she's still quite cheerful / there's a good chance she'll get better.  
6 the delays on the roads / the bad weather / the fog.  
7 had a bad accident / doesn't like driving at night.

### Unit 74

- 1 1 F – If you are required to do something, you **have** to do it.  
2 T  
3 F – Secondary school continues up to at least **16** for everyone.  
4 T  
5 F – There are usually **three** terms in a school year.  
6 F – A lunch break is **sometimes** an hour (45 minutes to an hour).  
7 T  
8 F – The teacher sets homework for the students. / The students do the homework that the teacher sets.  
9 F – Schools in Britain can be state or private schools.
- 2 1 attend  
2 primary  
3 secondary; state; private  
4 last  
5 staff  
6 set (also possible: give)  
7 head  
8 deputy  
9 carry on / continue
- 3 possible answers, from Iran:  
0 In Iran, we had three terms a year in primary school, and two terms a year in middle school and high school.  
1 You are required to attend school in Iran from the age of seven.  
2 I was five when I started primary education.  
3 When I was twelve years old, I started secondary school. You didn't have to pay: it was a state school, not a private school.  
4 Most lessons last about one and a half hours.  
5 There were about 50 members of staff at my school.  
6 In secondary school, the teachers used to set us lots of homework.  
7 We never saw the head teacher very much, because he was always very busy.



- 4 deal with requests, be in charge of the keys, be responsible for the bookings, greet somebody
- 5 1 complained 5 involve  
2 dealt 6 responsible  
3 duties 7 emergency  
4 charge 8 hired
- 6 1 involves 4 responsible  
2 duty 5 sure  
3 deal 6 complaints

### Unit 78

- 1 1 benefits 5 Elementary  
2 cake 6 A university degree  
3 computer systems 7 navy  
4 Teaching 8 field
- 2 1 career/job 6 advanced  
2 air force 7 technical  
3 structure 8 skills  
4 serve 9 qualifications  
5 benefits

#### 3 possible answers:

- 1 Personally, I wouldn't like a career in the armed forces.  
2 If I were in the forces, I think I'd prefer to be in the navy because I like being at sea.  
3 I have a university degree.  
4 I'd like to have a law degree, then I could have a different career.  
5 Yes, I'd like to be able to play a musical instrument, and I'd like to speak more languages.  
6 It's not easy, but I'd prefer to work in different fields if possible. That seems more interesting to me.

- 4 1 D 3 S 5 D 7 S  
2 S 4 S 6 S

- 5 1 G  
2 B  
3 not sure  
4 B  
5 It's probably bad news if they were forced to retire.  
6 G  
7 It's probably bad news as it is a less senior job.  
8 G

- 6 1 appointed 7 diploma  
2 managed 8 retired  
3 occupation 9 unemployment  
4 unemployed 10 CV / Curriculum Vitae  
5 remain  
6 assistant

### Unit 79

- 1 1 application, selection, confirmation, request, contact
- 2 1 They say they will contact to me.  
2 Have you got a work permit?  
3 I got the job on the basis of my qualifications.  
4 He gave me some good advice.  
5 I have to confirm it in writing.  
6 They said I must choose the best one.  
7 He gave me some good advice.

- 3 1 requested 4 require  
2 position 5 receive  
3 attended
- 4 1 advised 6 discriminate; race  
2 confirmation 7 apply; application  
3 satisfactory 8 process  
4 automatic 9 candidates  
5 select/choose 10 sex/gender
- 5 1 apply 4 references  
2 attended / went for 5 candidates  
3 contact 6 permit

#### 6 possible answers:

- 1 I've applied for several different jobs: in teaching, as a social worker and as a bank worker.  
2 I've had quite a few - probably over twenty in all.  
3 Twice. I got a job in a bank, and then more recently as a teacher.  
4 My college lecturer was my referee for the teaching job, and a school teacher was my referee for the bank job.  
5 Yes. I worked in Australia one summer when I finished college, and I had to have a working holiday visa for that.

### Unit 80

- 1 1 B 2 G 3 G 4 B 5 G 6 B 7 G

- 2 1 annual 4 interest  
2 before 5 inflation  
3 capital/finance 6 production

- 3 1 rate 4 tax; loss  
2 profit 5 turnover  
3 financial; invest 6 producers

- 4 1 \$2 OR 20%  
2 has risen significantly  
3 fell slightly  
4 stable (also possible: the same)  
5 risen steadily  
6 peak  
7 growth/increase/rise

- 5 1 rose/increased / 5 gone  
went up 6 by  
2 significantly 7 fall/drop  
3 rise/increase / 8 fluctuated  
go up 9 stable / the same  
4 peak

- 6 1 rose slightly  
2 significant rise  
3 remained stable / stayed the same  
4 dropped / fell / went down slightly  
5 dropped / fell / went down significantly/sharply

### Unit 81

- 1 1 B 2 G 3 B 4 B 5 G 6 B 7 B

- 2 1 up the business / the business up  
2 of business  
3 supplier(s)  
4 underpaid the workers  
5 overcharged us  
6 percentage

- 3 1 research  
2 goods  
3 competitors

- 4 1 customers  
2 in  
3 effort  
4 share

- 5 1 takeover  
2 reputation  
3 effort

- 6 1 share  
2 survive  
3 brand

- 4 suppliers  
5 optimistic; ambitious  
6 run the company

- 5 clients  
6 be taken over  
7 over  
8 reputation

- 4 market  
5 survival  
6 in more business

- 4 growth; market  
5 taken  
6 effort

- 4 1 of 3 up 5 off 7 up  
2 up 4 into 6 out 8 out

- 5 1 put out 5 broken down  
2 filled in 6 stayed up  
3 gone off 7 run into  
4 threw; away

- 6 1 threw them away 5 get into  
2 put that cigarette 6 fill in  
out 7 broke down  
3 switched the light 8 pulled up  
on 9 check out  
4 bumped into/ 10 turn it up  
ran into

7 possible answers:

- I wake up very early, about 6 o'clock.
- Not personally, but I once saw a fire in a house and rang the fire brigade.
- I filled in a form for a magazine subscription last week.
- Yes, I've gone off tea recently. I drink coffee almost all the time now.
- I threw a T-shirt away a few days ago: it had a hole in it.
- Yes, I've had to stop and change a tyre a couple of times.
- Yes, I stayed up all night during the last election to see the results.
- I ran into Christophe in town last week.

Unit 82

- 1 1 G 2 G 3 B 4 G 5 B 6 G 7 G

- 2 1 section 5 skills  
2 demand 6 resources  
3 strengths 7 opportunity  
4 threat 8 analyse

- 3 1 skills 6 analysis;  
2 advertise weaknesses  
3 strengths 7 skilled  
4 market 8 Advertising  
5 reduce

- 4 1 f 2 e 3 a 4 c 5 b

- 5 1 ignored 4 data  
2 strategy 5 highlight  
3 aim/goal 6 predictions/forecasts

- 6 1 ignored 5 gathered  
2 forecasts/ 6 realistic  
predictions 7 market  
3 assume 8 evaluate  
4 target

7 possible answers:

I agree that all the advice is important. I don't think one piece of advice is more important than another, but some companies make the mistake of assuming what people want, and they also fail to evaluate their strategies to find out if they are actually working.

Unit 83

- 1 1 No 4 No  
2 Yes (switch sth on) 5 Yes (fill sth in)  
3 No 6 Yes (put sth on)

- 2 1 -  
2 get into sth / swimming, etc.  
3 -  
4 takes up sth / a lot of space, etc.  
5 -  
6 -  
7 ran into sb / Nina, etc.  
8 -

- 3 1 W - I've gone off tea.  
2 R  
3 R  
4 W - Why did they stay up so late?  
5 W - I ran into Tina today in town.  
6 W - She can't switch it off.  
7 R  
8 W - Did you fill it in?

Unit 84

- 1 1 sat down  
2 woke up  
3 saving up  
4 lie down  
5 hurry up  
6 hang up my jacket / hang my jacket up

- 2 1 down 5 in  
2 up 6 turn  
3 Both are correct. 7 picked  
4 took 8 Both are correct.

- 3 1 set off / set out 5 turned up  
2 hurry up 6 takes after  
3 took it off 7 picked it up  
4 taken off / taking off 8 turn it down

- 4 1 I'm afraid we've run out of bread.  
2 Put the chairs back before you go.  
3 Could you hand them out?  
4 I must get on with my work.  
5 If it's difficult, leave it out. (OR Leave it out if it's difficult.)  
6 I tried but I couldn't work it out.

- 5 1 leave out  
2 get through  
3 work out  
4 go over / go through  
5 getting on  
6 go on to / move on to

- 6 1 hand out / give out 6 run out  
2 get through 7 work out  
3 put; back 8 picking; up  
4 get on  
5 tidy up



8 possible answers, from Kenya:

- 1 I'd prefer to be a champion footballer. I want to be successful and make my family proud.
- 2 I'd rather have a lot of friends because I enjoy talking to other people.
- 3 I'd prefer to have \$1,000,000 so that I could live in an expensive house and drive an expensive car.
- 4 I prefer to eat before 8.00 p.m. on school nights.
- 5 Actually, I don't like either of them.
- 6 I prefer Fridays because I don't go to school on Saturday.

Unit 88

- 1 1 G 2 B 3 B 4 B 5 G 6 G 7 B
- 2 1 certainly 5 think/believe  
2 probably 6 probably  
3 may 7 don't  
4 possible 8 good
- 3 1 We're likely to lose the match. / It's likely that we'll lose the match.  
2 You'll definitely get there on time.  
3 Keira may come.  
4 There's a good chance they'll win the election.  
5 I doubt (that) we'll see the film at 10.00.  
6 I expect (that) prices will go up. / I expect prices to go up.  
7 I'm pessimistic about the sales results.

Unit 89

- 1 1 in comparison 5 compared  
2 apart from 6 identical  
3 alike 7 completely  
4 main 8 unlike
- 2 1 similar 6 alike/similar;  
2 Compared completely  
3 similarity 7 apart  
4 except 8 difference  
5 Unlike
- 3 answers from a British person:

Oxford and Cambridge are alike in many ways. They both have famous universities and many beautiful old buildings. Another similarity is that it takes just under an hour from both cities to get to London on the train. However, apart from the universities, there is one main difference. Compared with Cambridge, Oxford is bigger and livelier, or so some people say.

Unit 90

- 1 1 heaven 5 ideal  
2 indeed 6 familiar  
3 happiness 7 appreciate  
4 highlight
- 2 1 e 2 a 3 h 4 b 5 g 6 c 7 f
- 3 1 I really appreciated it.  
2 which is ideal/perfect  
3 the highlight of our trip  
4 The sight of my son  
5 It's my idea of heaven.  
6 fancy restaurants.

- 4 1 I love the familiar smell of my mother's perfume.  
2 It gives me great pleasure when my children run in from school in the afternoon.  
3 I'm very happy indeed when the day is over and I can sit and read.
- 5 1 I went even though I don't like folk music.  
2 Could I have a word with you later?  
3 I can't be bothered to work today.  
4 Dan, I'm sorry to bother you. OR I'm sorry to bother you, Dan.  
5 People who complain get on my nerves.  
6 She got up at the usual time today. OR Today she got up at the usual time.

- 6 1 bother 6 bother  
2 habit 7 upset  
3 fed 8 usual  
4 bothered 9 repeated  
5 nerves 10 annoying
- 7 1 fed 5 word  
2 gets 6 upset/annoy  
3 can't 7 though  
4 upset/annoyed

8 possible answers:

- 1 Yes, I'm fed up with the weather. It rains all the time, and I want to get out for a walk.
- 2 Not really.
- 3 Yes. I can't be bothered to tidy up the living room. Everybody makes a mess and leaves it all for me to sort out!
- 4 Yes! A dog has made a hole in my fence and come into my garden. I'm very annoyed about it.
- 5 Yes. A friend rang to tell me about her sister, who is very ill. It was a private conversation.
- 6 Yes, it upsets me a lot.
- 7 I have a lot of things to do that I don't like doing, for example, cleaning my car, emptying the bins, washing the floor.

Unit 91

- 1 1 S 3 S 5 D 7 D  
2 D 4 D 6 S 8 D
- 2 1 presentation 6 supposed  
2 make 7 postpone / put off  
3 wish 8 together  
4 How 9 confirm  
5 available
- 3 1 Can we get together next week?  
2 I wish I could, but I'm busy.  
3 Could you put the meeting off until another time?  
4 (Please) remind me about the appointment. / Can you remind me about the appointment?  
5 I'll confirm it/that with you tomorrow.  
6 Can you make it on Tuesday?  
7 Is two o'clock convenient for you?  
8 I'm meant to finish this by seven.  
9 Will you be available to talk to me on Friday?

Unit 92

- 1 warning, official, mine, guard, safety, chemical, caution
- 2 1 Officials look after the mines.  
2 Safety glasses are required in the laboratory.  
3 The warning sign says you should mind the step.  
4 There are dangerous chemicals in that bottle.  
5 There are security guards in the building at night.  
6 A caution sign means that you should watch out.
- 3 1 guards 4 out 7 caution  
2 warn 5 required; safety 8 official  
3 Mind 6 guard 9 chemical

Unit 93

- 1 1 What do you think of this idea?  
2 Personally, I think it's a good idea.  
3 Surely we need more qualified workers? / We need more qualified workers, surely?  
4 It seems to me we have no choice.  
5 If you ask me, it was a disaster.  
6 Apparently, there will be an election soon. / There will be an election soon, apparently. (OR There will soon be an election, apparently.)
- 2 1 It seems to me we should do something.  
2 How do you feel about that?  
3 In my opinion, we should help them.  
4 What is the army's thinking on that?  
5 I see what you mean, but ...  
6 Personally, I think that's stupid.
- 3 1 Apparently 5 thinking  
2 ask me 6 What  
3 Surely 7 I see  
4 thing 8 seems
- 4 1 D 2 S 3 S 4 S 5 D 6 S
- 5 1 cases 4 no  
2 changing 5 in favour  
3 point 6 judge
- 6 1 willing 5 points  
2 cases 6 topic  
3 mind 7 idea  
4 express 8 fixed

7 possible answers:

No, I don't spend any time expressing my opinion online. I prefer to speak to people directly.

I'm not sure about this. I don't think people should be able to express views where they are trying to make people attack each other.

I'm certainly prepared to admit if I have no idea about a topic, which is quite often, actually.

Yes, there are a few, such as sex and religion.

Yes, I sometimes change my mind.

It depends. If they are very extreme views, that tells me something important about the person.

Unit 94

- 1 1 S 3 D 5 S 7 D  
2 D 4 D 6 D 8 S
- 2 1 making 5 intention  
2 intend/plan 6 fact  
3 hoping/expecting/ 7 about  
planning 8 forward  
4 expecting 9 wonder
- 3 possible answers:  
1 to tidy up my office. It's in a terrible mess.  
2 going to the cinema with a friend.  
3 to going to London to see an exhibition.  
4 of doing any work.  
5 to see anyone until Tuesday, when I go to my salsa class.
- 4 1 S 2 D 3 D 4 S 5 D 6 S 7 S
- 5 1 I doubt it. 5 I'm afraid so.  
2 I'm afraid not. 6 I hope not. / I hope so.  
3 I don't think so. 7 Definitely not.  
4 I guess so. 8 I expect so.
- 6 possible answers:  
1 **imagine so** because it's their 30<sup>th</sup> wedding anniversary / they love parties.  
2 I **don't think so** because his wife usually does the cooking / because he isn't feeling very well.  
3 I **hope not** because I don't like her boyfriend very much / she's too young to get married / I **hope so**, because she seems very happy with Tom.  
4 I'm **afraid not** because we haven't got much money at the moment / my father is ill, and I don't want to leave him alone.  
5 I **assume so** because he's the best man for the job / he's very popular and hard-working.  
6 I **doubt it / don't think so** because they're playing very badly this season / they're playing against a fantastic team.  
7 **Definitely**, because it's the best one on the market. / **Definitely not** - it's too expensive.  
8 I **suppose so**, but I'd prefer to wait and take it next year / I don't want to because I don't think I'll pass.

Unit 95

- 1 1 to 4 with 7 should  
2 to 5 to 8 got  
3 be 6 have (OR 've)
- 2 1 His behaviour was bad.  
2 They forced us to do it.  
3 You aren't allowed to smoke in here.  
4 You ought to see a doctor.  
5 He obeys the teacher.  
6 What was your punishment? / What punishment did they give you?  
7 Bottles are banned inside the stadium.  
8 You have (got) an obligation to protect all students.
- 3 1 allowed 5 force  
2 make 6 behave  
3 disobeyed / didn't obey  
4 authority

4 possible answers:

- 0 We didn't have to buy our own books, but nowadays you often do.
- 1 Girls weren't allowed to wear any make-up, but some girls broke the rules.
- 2 Yes, they did: we had about three hours homework every day.
- 3 Sometimes you had to see the head teacher, or stay for an extra hour after school.
- 4 Most of the time, yes.
- 5 They forced us to spend the break time outside, even when it was cold and raining. I didn't enjoy that at all.
- 6 I think we had to behave better in the past. We were mostly very polite to all the teachers.

Unit 96

- 1
  - 1 Is it OK if I park the car here?
  - 2 Would it be all right if I took the car?
  - 3 Do you mind if I wait here?
  - 4 I wonder if I could ask you something.
  - 5 Could I possibly call you later tonight?
  - 6 Is it all right if I borrow your pencil?
- 2
 

1 Would; that's	4 mind; feel
2 problem; yourself	5 wondering; afraid
3 right; sorry	6 possibly; course
- 3 possible answers:
  - 1 Is it all right if I borrow your shopping bag? ~ Feel free.
  - 2 Is it OK if I switch the light on? ~ Yes/Sure, go ahead.
  - 3 I wonder / I was wondering if I could take the day off on Friday. ~ I'm afraid not. I need you.
  - 4 Would you mind if / Would it be OK if I looked at your newspaper? ~ Help yourself.

Unit 97

- 1 buy/purchase; help/assistance; happen/occur; eat/consume; start/commence; need/require
- 2
 

1 proceed	4 upon
2 commence	5 obtain; require
3 purchase/obtain	6 occur
- 3
 

1 require; assistance	6 obtain/purchase
2 neither	7 proceed
3 premises	8 occur
4 neutral	9 assist
5 consumes	
- 4 1 D 2 S 3 D 4 S 5 D 6 S 7 S
- 5
  - 1 give/lend me a hand
  - 2 kids
  - 3 loads
  - 4 hang/hold on
  - 5 fed up
- 6
  - 1 She says we've got loads of time.
  - 2 Could you lend me a hand today?
  - 3 What's up with Matt this morning?
  - 4 I'm afraid I haven't a clue.
  - 5 What do you fancy doing this evening?

- |                       |            |
|-----------------------|------------|
| 7 1 hang/hold; Yeah   | 4 bothered |
| 2 Cheers              | 5 up; clue |
| 3 give/lend; bit of a | 6 fancy    |

Unit 98

- 1
  - 1 No, she has already received an email from Mr Ellison.
  - 2 He wrote to confirm her booking and ask for payment.
  - 3 She has just transferred £320 into Mr Ellison's account.
  - 4 She will pay the balance.
  - 5 She wants to know about places of interest, and in particular about restaurants in the area.
  - 6 45 Muswell Rd, London NW4
  - 7 Sunshine Holiday Cottages, Fore St, Truro
  - 8 15 April, 2020
  - 9 Dear Mr Ellison
  - 10 With kind regards
- 2
  - 1 T
  - 2 F - If you begin with *Dear Sir*, you end with *Yours faithfully*.
  - 3 T OR *Dear Sir/Madam*
  - 4 T
  - 5 F - You should end *Yours sincerely*, or if it is less formal, *Best regards*, *Best wishes* or *With kind regards*.
  - 6 F - You should end with *Best wishes*. If the teacher knows you well, you can end with your first name, but if not, use your full name.
  - 7 F - *Take care* is more informal.
- 3
  - 1 As **requested**, I am sending you one month's deposit on the flat.
  - 2 I would be **grateful** if you **could** phone me when you have the details.
  - 3 Further to your letter of April 7<sup>th</sup>, I wish to confirm my booking.
  - 4 I would **appreciate** it if you could help me with this matter.
  - 5 **and in particular**, I would like to know about parking in the area.
  - 6 Please let **me** know if you need any more information.
  - 7 I look forward to hearing **from** you.
  - 8 With kind regards
- 4
 

1 transferring	9 let
2 grateful	10 appreciate
3 account	11 balance
4 sincerely	12 regards/wishes
5 Dear	
6 confirm	
7 transfer	
8 would	

**Unit 99**

- |   |            |       |         |
|---|------------|-------|---------|
| 1 | 1 ATM; PIN | 5 IQ  | 9 EU    |
|   | 2 CV       | 6 IT  | 10 asap |
|   | 3 PC       | 7 DIY | 11 ISP  |
|   | 4 VIP      | 8 ID  | 12 FAQ  |
- 2 1 identity  
2 very important person  
3 do-it-yourself  
4 intelligence quotient  
5 as soon as possible  
6 internet service provider  
7 personal identification number  
8 information technology  
9 frequently asked questions
- 3 1 asap  
2 Show your ID (card)  
3 At an ATM  
4 Your CV
- 4 1 vet  
2 pop (music)  
3 flu  
4 plane  
5 photo  
6 uni  
7 info
- 5 1 ads/adverts  
2 pub; TV/telly  
3 (the) flu  
4 uni  
5 gym  
6 maths
- 6 1 phone number  
2 mobile  
3 board  
4 kilos
- |          |                     |                |          |
|----------|---------------------|----------------|----------|
| 5 The EU | 6 Your PIN (number) | 7 PE           | 8 DIY    |
| 8 pub    | 9 maths             | 10 deli        | 11 lab   |
| 12 blog  | 13 ad/advert        | 14 exam        |          |
| 7 bike   | 8 vet; lab          | 9 deli; fridge | 10 plane |
| 6 chip   | 7 decaff            | (ALSO Decaf)   |          |

- 5 1 Where are you going for your vacation?  
2 What should I do with this **garbage/trash**?  
3 We had to go to court, so I needed a good **attorney/lawyer**.  
4 I wrote the meeting with Jo in my **appointment book / date book**.  
5 He drives a big **truck**.  
6 Would you like another **cookie**?  
7 Could you turn on the **faucet**?  
8 I took the **subway** to the museum.  
9 We can't use the **sidewalk** here.  
10 The children are playing in the **yard**.
- 6 *possible answers:*  
1 123-4567  
2 Hardly ever, because my city doesn't have a subway.  
3 I graduated from high school ten years ago.  
4 There are two movie theaters about ten minutes from my apartment.  
5 About once a month.  
6 I eat French fries maybe once a week, sometimes less.  
7 I went to Morocco for my last vacation.  
8 Yes, I've kept an appointment book for the last five or six years.  
9 I eat chocolate - that's about it.  
10 No, I haven't.

**Unit 100**

- 1 French fries, one-way trip, restroom, theater, garbage, elevator, attorney, gasoline, candy, highway
- 2 sidewalk, cell phone, subway, appointment book, drugstore, trash can
- 3 1 garbage  
2 faucet  
3 highway  
4 subway  
5 pants  
6 candy
- 4 1 theater  
2 lot  
3 fries  
4 trip  
5 room
- |             |            |                |                     |
|-------------|------------|----------------|---------------------|
| 7 attorney  | 8 gasoline | 9 purse        | 10 appointment book |
| 11 vacation | 6 school   | 7 cookie/candy | 8 elevator          |
|             | 9 purse    | 10 one-way     |                     |

All the words/phrases in **bold** in this Word list are from the **3000**. The numbers are unit numbers, not page numbers.

- abbreviation** 4  
**about** *as in* **be about to do sth** B1 85, 94  
**absolutely** B1 19, 21; **absolutely love (doing) sth** 87  
**abstract** *adj* 59  
**academic** *adj* B1 75  
**access** B1 *as in* **have access to sth** 34  
**accident** *as in* **by accident** 29  
**accidentally** B2 \* 29  
**accommodation** B1 76  
**according to sth** A2 11  
**account** *n* (in a bank) B1 98  
**account for sth** B2 54  
**achieve** A2 2, 60  
**achievement** B1 2  
**act** *n* B1 48  
**act** *v* A2 61  
**acting** *n* 61  
**actually** A2 22, 94  
**accustomed to (doing) sth** 76  
**ad** B1 99  
**add** *v* A1 25  
**addition** *n* B1 43; **in addition (to sth/sb)** B1 73  
**admire** B1 62  
**admit** B1 56  
**adopt (a child)** B2 11  
**advanced** B1 78  
**advantage** A2 34, 37  
**advert** 99  
**advertise** A2 82  
**advertisement** A2 99  
**advertising** *n* A2 82  
**advice** *n* A1 79  
**advise** *v* B1 79  
**affair** B2 12  
**affect** A2 16, 32  
**afford** B1 *as in* **can/can't afford (to do) sth** B1 34, 56  
**afraid** A1 8; **I'm afraid so/not** A2 94, 96  
**after a while** 2  
**against** A2 *as in* **against the law** 48; **be against sth** B1 93  
**age** *v* B1 50  
**aged** B1 63  
**ageing** 50  
**agent** B1 77  
**agree with sb/sth** A1 36, 56, 71  
**agreement** B1 52  
**ahead** *adv* B1 32; **go ahead** B1 96  
**aim (to do sth)** *v* B1 28, 51, 82  
**aim** *n* B1 2, 51, 82  
**airfare** 34  
**air force** 78  
**airsick** 34  
**alarm** *n* B1 55  
**alcohol** B1 32  
**alcoholic** *adj* B1 32  
**alike** C1 \* 89  
**alive** A2 62  
**all** *as in* **all over the world** A1 67; **Is it all right if ...?** 96  
**All the best** 98  
**all the same** 73  
**allergic** 50  
**allergy** 50  
**allow** A2 95  
**alone** A2 8, 76  
**along with sth** B1 25  
**alphabet** 65  
**alphabetical** 65  
**also** A1 73  
**alternative (to sth/sb)** A2 37  
**although** A2 73  
**amateur** *adj* C1 \* 61; *n* C1 \* 61, 66  
**amazed** B1 19  
**amazing** A1 19  
**ambition** B1 7  
**ambitious** B1 7  
**ambulance** B2 \* 31  
**among** A2 64  
**amount** A2 24  
**analyse** B1 14, 82  
**analysis** B1 14, 82  
**angle** B2 45  
**angrily** 22  
**angry (with sb)** A1 39  
**ankle** A2 5  
**anniversary** B2 12  
**announce** B1 51  
**announcement** B1 51  
**annoy** B1 90  
**annoyed** B1 8  
**annoying** B1 9, 90  
**annual** *adj* B2 80  
**anxious** B2 8  
**apart** *adv* B1 12  
**apart from sb/sth** B1 89  
**apartment block** 43  
**apologize** B1 36  
**apostrophe** 4  
**app** A2 69  
**apparently** B2 93  
**appear** B1 6  
**appearance** A2 6  
**application** B1 79  
**application form** 79  
**apply for sth** A2 36, 79  
**appoint** C1 \* 78  
**appointment** 78  
**appointment book** (US English) 100  
**appreciate** B1 90  
**appreciate** B1 *as in* **I would appreciate it if you could ...** B1 98  
**approach** *v* B2 68  
**approximate** *adj* 24  
**approximately** B1 14, 22, 24  
**argue** A2 1; **argue about sth** 36; **argue with sb** B1 36  
**argument** A2 1  
**armed** B2 *as in* **the armed forces** 78  
**army** A2 52, 78  
**around the world** A1 50

- arrange **A2** 30, 56  
 arrangement *as in* make an arrangement **B1** 77  
 arrest *v* **B1** 49  
 arrival **B1** 34  
 arrivals (at an airport) **B1** 34  
 article 41  
 artificial **B2** 20  
 artist **A1** 59  
**as**  
 (= because) 73  
 a consequence 54, 73  
 far as possible 50  
 if **B1** 47  
 long as possible 50  
 quickly as possible 50  
 requested 98  
 soon as I possibly can 50  
 soon as possible **B1** 50  
 though **B2** 47  
 well (as sth/sb) **A2** 86  
 well **A2** 73  
 asap 99  
 ask *as in* if you ask me 93  
 assault *n, v* **C1**\* 48  
 assignment **B1** 76  
 assist **B1** 97  
 assistance **B2**\* 97  
 assistant *adj* **A2** 78  
 assume **B2** 82; I assume so **B1** 94  
 asthma 50  
 astonished 19  
 astonishing **B2**\* 19  
**at**  
 last **B1** 38  
 least **A2** 40  
 risk (from/of sth) **B1** 40  
 school **A1** 76  
 the end (of sth) **A1** 40  
 the same time **A1** 86  
 the time **A2** 38  
 times 29, 38  
 university **A1** 76  
 war 52  
 athlete **A2** 67  
 athletics 66, 67  
 ATM 99  
 atmosphere **B1** 16  
 attachment **B2** 70  
 attack *v, n* **A2** 18, 48  
 attacker 48  
 attempt *n* **B2** 52, *v* **B2** 52, 56  
 attend **A2** 74, 79  
 attitude **B1** 10, 74  
 attorney (US English) **C1**\* 100  
 attract **B1** 28, 72; attract sb's attention 65  
 attraction **B1** 72  
 authority **B1** 95  
 autobiography 65  
 automatic **B2**\* 79  
 available **A2** 53, 91  
 average *adj* **A2** 18  
 average *n* **A2** *as in* on average **B1** 40  
 avoid (doing sth) **A2** 3, 31, 56  
 award *n* **A2** 60  
 aware **B1** *as in* be aware of sth 2, 39  
 away from somewhere **A1** 76  
 awful **A2** 19  
 background **A2** 46  
 backpack 35  
 badly **A2** 22  
 baggy 20, 27  
 bake **B1** 25  
 balance *n* (= money to be paid) **B1** 98  
 balance *v* **B1** 5  
 balanced diet 25  
 balcony 43  
 bald 6  
 ban *n* **B1** 64; *v* **B1** 64, 95  
 bang 42  
 bank (of a river) **B1** 46  
 barrister 100  
 baseball player 67  
 based (in a place) **A2** 39; based on sth **A2** 39  
 basic **B1** 1  
 basis **B1** 79; on a regular basis **B1** 40  
 basket **B2**\* 24  
 bass guitar 62  
 bat *n* **B2**\* 67  
 bathroom (US English) **A1** 100  
 battery **B1** 69  
 battle **B1** 52  
 bay **C1**\* 13  
 BBC 99  
**be**  
 about to do sth **B1** 85, 94  
 accustomed to (doing) sth 76  
 against sth 93  
 better off 86  
 born 11  
 careful 92  
 crazy about sth/sb 87  
 expecting a baby 6  
 fond of sb/sth / doing sth 87  
 held up 33  
 in favour (of sth) **B1** 93  
 in a good/bad mood 8  
 keen on (doing) sth 87  
 mad about sth/sb 87  
 meant to do sth **C1**\* 33, 91  
 prepared for sth 32  
 related to sb 11  
 sure to do sth 35  
 thinking of/about doing sth 94  
 to do with sth/sb 2  
 used to (doing) sth **B1** 76  
 wrong with sth 42  
 beach **A1** 13  
 bear *n* **A2** 18  
 beard 6  
 beauty **B1** 68  
 bee **B1** 18  
 begin **A1** 56  
 behave **A2** 95; behave yourself **A2** 57  
 behaviour **A2** 95  
 belief **B1** 12  
 believe in sth **A2** 36  
 bell **B1** 41  
 belong to sb **A2** 36

- bend** *n, v* (= go in a curve) **B1** 31;  
*v* (= make sth curved) **B1** 55;  
*v* (= move your body) **B1** 5
- benefit** *n* **A2** 30, 78
- benefit** *v* **B1** 36, 78
- better** *as in* **be better off** 86
- best** *as in* **do/try your best** 86
- Best regards** 98
- Best wishes** 98
- bicycle** **A1** 99
- bike** **A1** 99
- biography** **C1**\* 65
- birth** **A2** 11; **give birth** 11
- birthday** **A1** 11
- biscuit** **A2** 100
- bite** *n* (= pain) **B1** 29
- bite** *v* (= cut with your teeth) **B1** 5; (= cause pain) **B1** 18
- bit** *as in* **a bit of a ...** **B2** 97; **a little bit** **B1** 22
- blanket** **B2**\* 41
- bleed** **C1**\* 29
- bleeding** *n* 29
- block** *n* **B1** 43; **block of flats** **B1** 43
- block** *v* **B1** 31
- blog** *n* **A1** 70, 99
- blouse** 27
- blow** *v* **B1** 55, 67
- blunt** 25
- board** *v* **B1** 34
- boil** *v* **A2** 25
- bomb** *n, v* **B1** 52
- bone** **A2** 18
- booking** **B2**\* 77, 98
- booking office** 33
- bored with sth** **A1** 39
- born** *as in* **be born** 11
- bother** *as in* **can't be bothered to do sth** 90; **don't bother** 90; **I'm not bothered** 97; **B1** **sorry to bother you** 90
- boxer** 67
- bra** 27
- bracket** 4
- branch** **B1** 15
- brand** *n* **B1** 28, 81
- brave** **B1** 9
- break** *n* (= short holiday) **B1** 35;  
 (= short rest) **A1** 74
- break** *v* *as in* **break a record** 66;  
**break the law** **B1** 48
- break down** (of a car) 33, 83
- break into sth** 48
- break up (with sb)** **B1** 10
- breath** **B1** 72
- breathe** **B1** 5, 72
- breathing** **B1** 50
- brick** **B2**\* 41
- bright** **A2** 46
- brightness** 46
- brilliant** **A2** 19
- broad (shoulders)** **B2** 6
- broccoli** 23
- brother-in-law** 11
- bubble** **B1** 24
- build** *v* (your vocabulary) **A2** 3
- bull** 18
- bump into sb** 83
- bunch** **B2** 23
- burglar** 48
- burglary** 48
- burn** *v* **A2**; *n* **B2** 29
- burst** **C1**\* 55
- bury** **B1** 68
- bus pass** 33
- business class** 34
- butterfly** 18
- by accident** 29
- by chance** 40
- by heart** 86
- by mistake** 40
- by the time** **B1** 38
- by yourself** 76
- cabbage** 23
- cabin** **B2**\* 34
- calm** *adj* **B1** 8; **calm (sea)** **B1** 13
- calm yourself (down)** 57
- calmly** 22
- camel** 18
- camp** *v* **A2** 35
- campaign** *n* **B1** 17
- camping** *n* **A2** 35
- campsite** 35
- campus** **B1** 75, 76
- can (+ sense verbs)** **A1** 47
- Can I possibly ...?** 96
- can** *n* **A2** 24
- can't stand (doing) sth** 87
- cancel** **B2** 33
- cancer** **B2** 54
- candidate** **B1** 74, 79
- candy** (US English) 100
- cap** *n* **B1** 27
- capital** *n* (= money) **B1** 80
- capital letter** 4
- carbon dioxide** 17
- cardboard** 41
- care about sb/sth** **A2** 36
- care for sb** **B1** 30, 50
- care** *n* **A2** 50; **take care** **B1** 98;  
**take care of sb** **B1** 30, 56
- career** **A1** 78
- careful** **A2** 20, 72, 92
- careless** **B1** 20, 72
- carer** 50
- carry on** **A2** 74
- carry out sth** **A2** 14
- carsick** 34
- carton** 24
- case** **A2** *as in* **in case** **B1** 35; **in some cases** **A2** 93; **in that case** 40
- casual** **B2**\* 28
- catch** *v* *as in* **catch (a train)** **A2** 33;  
**catch** (= find and hold sb) **A2** 49
- category** **B1** 65
- cause (of sth)** *n* **A2** 37
- caution** *n* **C1**\* 92
- cave** **B2**\* 13
- ceiling** **B1** 43
- celebrate** **A2** 12, 68
- celebration** **B1** 68
- cellist** 62
- cello** 62
- cell phone** (US English) **A1** 100
- central** **B1** 72
- centre** **A1** 72
- ceremony** **B1** 12, 68
- certain about sth** **A2** 39
- chain** *n* **B1** 41

- challenge *n* B1; *v* B2 53  
 champion B1 9, 66, 99  
 championship B2\* 66  
 chance A2 1, 82; a good chance 88;  
 by chance 40  
 change *as in* change (trains) A2 33;  
 change your mind B1 85, 93  
 channel B1 63  
 chapter B1 65  
 character B1 7  
 charge *vs as in* charge (sb for sth) B1  
 26; charge sb (with sth) B2 49;  
 (with electricity) B1 69  
 charge *n* B1 26; in charge of  
 sth/sb B1 77  
 charger 69  
 charity A2 9, 54  
 chart A1 45  
 chat show 63  
 cheat *v, n* B1 74  
 cheating *n* 74  
 check in A2 34  
 check sth out B1 83  
 check-in 34  
 check-up 29  
 cheer up 59  
 cheerful B1 7  
 cheers 97  
 chemical *n, adj* B1 92  
 chemist 77  
 cherry 23  
 chest B1 5  
 childhood B1 11  
 chin 5  
 chip A2 100  
 choice A2 79  
 choose A1 79  
 chop *v* B2\* 25  
 cinema [C] A1 60, 100; [U] B2 60  
 circle *n* A2 45  
 circle *v* A2 14  
 circular *adj* 45  
 civil (ceremony) B2 12  
 claim *n, v* B1 53, 64  
 clap *v* B1 5  
 clause B1 73  
 clear A2 2  
 clearly A2 22  
 client B1 81  
 cliff B2\* 13  
 climate change A2 16  
 close to sth A2 32  
 cloth B1 42  
 club A1 67  
 clue *as in* I haven't a clue 97  
 coach *n* A2, *v* B1 66  
 coal B1 41  
 cocoa 24  
 coincidence B2\* 11  
 cold *n* A1 46; the cold B1 15  
 collection B1 59  
 collector B2\* 59  
 colon 4  
 coloured B1 27  
 comb 41  
 combination B2 54, 60  
 combine B1 54, 60  
 come up with sth B1 83  
 comma 4  
 commence C1\* 97  
 commercial *adj* B1 43  
 commit (a crime) B1 48  
 common A1 20; have sth in  
 common B1 10  
 communicate (with sb) A2 74  
 communication B1 74  
 community A2 68  
 commute 33  
 compare sb/sth with sb/sth A1  
 36, 89  
 compared with/to sb/sth B1 89  
 comparison *as in* in comparison  
 with sb/sth 89  
 compete (with sb) A2 54, 66  
 competition A2 66  
 competitive B1 66  
 competitor B1 66, 81  
 complain *v* A2 *as in* complain  
 about sth/sb 26, 36, 77; complain  
 to sb B1 36  
 complaint B1 *as in* make a  
 complaint 26, 77  
 completely A2 21; completely  
 different 89  
 complex *adj* B1 2  
 complicated B2 11  
 compose B2\* 62  
 composer B2\* 62  
 concentrate (on sth) B1 32, 36  
 conclude B1 72  
 conclusion B1 72  
 condition A2 31  
 conductor 62  
 conference A2 75  
 confident B1 7  
 confirm 14, B1 79, 91, 98  
 confirmation C1\* 14, 79  
 confuse B1 72  
 confused B1 19, 29  
 confusing B1 19  
 confusion B2\* 72  
 congratulations 85  
 connect sth (to sth) A2 4, 69  
 connection (between A and B) B1  
 33, 37  
 consequence B1 *as in* as a  
 consequence B1 54, 73  
 Conservative Party 51  
 consider A2 56, 79  
 consist of sth B1 36  
 constant *adj* B2 12  
 consultant B2\* 30  
 consume B1 54, 97  
 consumer B1 28  
 contact lens 6  
 contact *v, n* B1 79  
 contain A2 2, 24  
 container B1 24, 41  
 content *n* B1 60  
 contest *n* B2 68  
 context A2 1  
 continue A2 56, 74  
 continuous B1 12  
 control *n* A2 *as in* be in control of  
 sth 52  
 control yourself A2 57  
 convenient B1 20, 91  
 conversation A1 1

- convince **B1** 17  
 cookie (US English) 100  
 costume **B1** 61, 68  
 cottage **B1** 43  
 cotton **B1** 27, 42  
 cotton (for sewing) 41  
 cough *n* **B1** 29  
 Could I possibly ...? 96  
 countryside **B1** 35  
 couple *as in a couple of sb/sth* **A2** 24  
 courgette 23  
 court (in sport) **B1** 67; court (of law) **B1** 49  
 cover *v* (= include) **B1** 64  
 cover *n* (of a book) **B1** 65  
 covered **B1** 67  
 crab 24  
 crash helmet 67  
 crazy (= not sensible) **A2** 7, 21; crazy about sth/sb **A2** 87  
 cream **B1** 72  
 creamy 72  
 creature **B2** 18, 41  
 crime story 65  
 criminal *adj* **B1** 48  
 critic **B2** 60  
 critical of sth **B2** 63  
 crocodile 18  
 crop **B2** 15  
 crossing 31  
 cruel **B1** 9  
 cruelty 9  
 cucumber 23  
 cultural **B1** 64  
 cup (in sport) **A2** 66  
 curly **A2** 6  
 currency **B1** 80  
 current **B1** 9, 64, 66  
 current affairs 64  
 currently **B1** 9, 66  
 curriculum vitae 78, 99  
 curve *n* **B2** 45  
 curved **B2** 45  
 custom **B1** 12  
 customer **A1** 81  
 cut yourself **A1** 57  
 CV 78, 99  
 cycling 66  
 cyclist 31  
 daily (paper) **A2** 64  
 damage *n, v* **B1** 15, 32  
 dancer **A1** 68  
 danger *as in in danger (from/of sth)* **A2** 40  
 dark (= not bright) **A1** 46; dark (skin) **A1** 6  
 dash 4  
 data **A2** 69, 82  
 date of birth 11  
 daughter-in-law 11  
 deal *n as in a great deal* **B1** / a good deal 14  
 deal with sth **A2** 55, 77  
 Dear Sir/Madam, etc. 98  
 decade **B1** 53  
 decide **A1** 56  
 decorate **B1** 42  
 deep **A2** 67  
 define **B1** 3  
 definitely (not) **A2** 88, 94  
 definition **B1** 3  
 degree (in sth) **A2** 75  
 delay *n, v* **B2** 33  
 delete **B2** \* 69, 70  
 deli 99  
 delicatessen 99  
 delighted **B2** 8  
 deliver **B1** 26, 77  
 demand (for sth) **B2** 82  
 denim 27  
 depart **B2** \* 33  
 departure **B1** 34; departure lounge 34  
 departures (at an airport) **B1** 34  
 depend *as in depend on sth/sb* **A2** 36; that/it depends **A2** 85  
 depending on sth/sb **B1** 86  
 depth **B2** 67  
 deputy **C1** \* 74  
 desert *n* **A2** 13  
 designer *n* **A2**, *adj* 28  
 despite **B1** 73  
 destination **B1** 33  
 destroy **A2** 15  
 destruction **B2** \* 15, 59  
 detail **A1** 4; in detail 2, 40  
 determine **B1** 49  
 determined **B1** 52  
 develop **A2** 53  
 developed country 17  
 developing country **B1** 17  
 development **B1** 53  
 device **A2** 41  
 diagram **B1** 45  
 diamond **B1** 45  
 diary **A2** 100  
 diet *n* **A1**, *v* 25; be/go on a diet 25  
 difference **A1** *as in make a difference* **B1** 86; the main difference 89  
 difficult (of a person) **B1** 9  
 difficulty **B1** 50  
 digital **A2** 70  
 diploma 78  
 direct *adj* **A2** 20  
 direct train 33  
 dirt **B1** 42  
 disadvantage (of sth) **B1** 34, 37  
 disagree with sb/sth **A2** 36, 71  
 disappear **A2** 16  
 disappointed **B1** 8, 19  
 disappointing **B1** 19  
 disaster **A2** 15  
 discount **B1** 26; get a discount 26  
 discover **A2** 14, 53  
 discovery **A2** 14, 53  
 discriminate (in favour of/against sb) 79  
 discuss **A1** 1  
 discussion **A2** 1  
 disease **A2** 16, 50  
 dishonest **B2** 71  
 dislike *n* **B1** 10, 87; *v* **B1** 87  
 disobey 95  
 disorganized 7, 71  
 distance *as in in the distance* 46  
 divide *n* **B1** 13, 31

- divorce *n* **B2** \* 11  
 divorce *v* *as in* get divorced 11  
 DIY 99
- do**  
 research 75  
 revision 1  
 sb a favour 85  
 sth up 27, 32  
 you mind if ...? 96  
 /study for a degree 75  
 /try your best 86  
 documentary **B1** 63  
 don't bother 90  
 don't mind 87  
 donate **B1** 54  
 donation **B2** \* 54  
 doubt (about sth/sb) *n* **B1** 37  
 doubt *v* *as in* doubt (if/that) **B1** 88;  
 I doubt it 94  
 download *v* **A2** 69  
 drama **A2** 61  
 drama series 63  
 dreadful 15, 19  
 dream about sth/sb *v* **A2** 36  
 dress up 68  
 dressed **B1** *as in* be dressed in sth  
 27; get dressed 27  
 drill 42  
 driving lesson 32  
 driving licence 32  
 driving test 32  
 drop *v* **A2**, *n* **B1** 80  
 drop by 83  
 drought **B2** \* 15  
 drugstore (US English) 100  
 drummer 62  
 drum *n* **B1** 62  
 drunk *adj* **B1**, *n* 54  
 due *as in* due (to do sth)  
 (= expected) **B2** 33, 51; due to  
 sth/sb (= because of sth/sb) **B1**  
 73, 86  
 dull **B2** \* 7  
 dust *n* **B1** 42  
 duty (= tax) 64  
 duty **B2** 77
- each other **A1** 10  
 eagle 18  
 early **A1** *as in* an early night 86  
 earring 27  
 earth *as in* (the) earth **A2** 14; why/  
 what, etc. on earth ...? **B1** 40  
 earthquake **B1** 15  
 eastern **B1** 13  
 easy-going 7  
 economic **B1** 50  
 economical 72  
 economy **B1** 50, 72  
 economy class 34  
 edge **B1** 44  
 editor **B1** 64  
 educate **B1** 75  
 educated *adj* **B1** 75  
 effect **A2** 16, 32, 59  
 effective **B1** 2, 20  
 effectively **B1** 2, 22  
 effort **B1** 81  
 elbow **B2** \* 5  
 elderly *n* 50  
 elect **B2** 51  
 election **B1** 51  
 element **B1** 28  
 elevator (US English) 100  
 embarrassed **B1** 8, 19  
 embarrassing **B1** 19  
 emergency **B1** 30, 77  
 emergency service 31  
 emotion **B1** 8  
 emotional **B2** 8  
 emphasis **B2** 3  
 emphasize **B2** 3  
 employment **B1** 78  
 encourage **B1** 2, 72  
 encouragement **C1** \* 72  
 encouraging **C1** \* 2  
 end *n* *as in* at the end (of sth) **A1**  
 40; in the end **A2** 40  
 end up **B1** 32  
 enemy **B1** 52  
 energetic 7  
 energy (= power from fuel) **A2** 17;  
 (= being active) **A2** 7
- engaged **B1** *as in* be/get  
 engaged 12  
 engine **A2** 77  
 enjoy **A1** 56, 87; enjoy yourself  
**A2** 57  
 enormous **A2** 19  
 enough **A1** 30  
 enquiry **B2** 54  
 entertain **B1** 68  
 entertainment **B1** 34, 68  
 entrance **B1** 43  
 entry **B1** 3  
 environment **A2** 16  
 environmental **B1** 16  
 episode **B1** 63  
 equal *adj* **B1** 12  
 equality **C1** \* 12  
 equally **B1** 50  
 escape *v* **B1** 52  
 especially **A2** 22, 98  
 essential *adj* **B1** 19, 28, 74  
 estate agent 77  
 EU **B1** 99  
 evaluate **B2** 82  
 even if **B1** 86  
 even though **B1** 73, 90  
 eventually **B1** 22  
 evidence **A2** 49  
 exact *adj* **A2** 24  
 exactly **A2** 24; exactly the  
 same **B1** 89  
 exam **A1** 99  
 examination **B2** 49, 99  
 examine (= look at sth carefully) **B1**  
 30; (= consider carefully) **B1** 49;  
 (= formally test) **B1** 74  
 except (for sth) **A2** 66, 89; except  
 (that) **B1** 89  
 exchange sth (for sth) **B1** 26  
 excited about sth **A1** 39  
 exclamation mark 4  
 excuse *n* **B2** 9  
 exhausted 19  
 exhibit *v* **B2** \* 59  
 exhibition **B1** 59  
 exist **A2** 14  
 existence **B2** 14

- expand **B1** 2
- expect (= think sth will happen) **A2** 56, 88, 94; expect (= demand sth because of a responsibility) **B1** 9; I expect so **B2** 94; expect a baby **B1** 6
- expected **B1** 20
- expedition **B1** 53
- experience [U] **A2** 34, 37; [C] **A2** 34
- experienced **B1** 34
- experiment *n* **A2** 14
- experiment with sth *v* **B1** 1
- expert *n, adj* **A2** 54
- explain **A1** 1
- explanation **A2** 1
- explode **B1** 52
- exploration **B2** 14
- explore **B1** 14
- explosion **B1** 52
- export *n, v* **B1** 77
- exporter 77
- express (train) 33
- express *v* **A2** 2, 93
- extreme *adj* **A2** 15
- eyebrow 5
- face *v* **B1** 43
- facilities **B2** 35
- fact *as in in (actual) fact* **A1** 22, 94
- factor **A2** 54
- fail (a test) **A2** 32; (of a business) 81
- fair (= just) **A2** 71, 88; fair (hair/skin) **B1** 6
- fairly **B1** 22
- fall *v* **A2** 16, 80; fall asleep **B1** 32
- fall *n* **A2** 16, 37, 80
- falls 13
- fame **B2**\* 60
- familiar **B1** 90
- famine 16
- famous for sth **A1** 39
- fan (= admirer) **A2** 62, 67
- fancy *v as in (= would like)* **B1** 56, 97; (= sexually) **B1** 10, 88
- fancy *adj* **B1** 90
- FAQ 69, 99
- far (less/more) **B1** 63
- farther 98
- fascinated 19
- fascinating **B1** 19
- fashion **A2** 28, 72; in / out of fashion 28
- fashionable **B1** 28, 72
- fasten *v* **B1** 32
- father-in-law 11
- faucet (US English) 100
- favour *n as in be in favour (of sth)* **B1** 93; do sb a favour 85
- fear *n* **A2** 54
- feather **B2** 18
- feature **A2** 13
- fed up (with sth/sb) **B1** 8, 39, 90, 97
- fee **B2** 76
- feel **A1** 47; feel like sth **A2** / doing sth 85; feel free **B1** 96
- feeling **A1** 8
- female *adj* **A2** 6
- fence **B1** 41
- fencing 66
- festival **A1** 68
- fiction **A2** 65
- field (= area of knowledge) **B1** 78
- fight *v, n* **A2** 52
- fighter 52
- fighting **B1** 52
- figure *n* (= number) **A2** 66; (= body) 6
- file *n* **B1** 69
- fill sth in **A2** 83
- film-maker 60
- final *n* **A2** 66
- finance **B2** 80
- financial **B1** 80
- find it difficult to do sth **A2** 2
- fine **A2** *as in that's fine* **B1** 96
- fine *n* **C1**\* 32, 48
- finger nail 5
- finish *v* **A1** 56
- fire (at sb/sth) **B1** 52
- first class 34
- fit *adj* **A2** 71, 50
- fitness **B1** 50
- fix *v* **A2** 32, 42
- fixed **B1** 93
- fizzy (drink) 24
- flag **B1** 67
- flavour **B2**\* 25
- flood *n, v* **B1** 15
- flour **B1** 25
- flow *n, v* **B1** 13
- flu **A2** 99
- fluctuate 80
- fluctuation 80
- fluent 2
- fluently 2
- focus *n, v* **A2** 51
- fog 15
- foggy 15
- fold *v* **B1** 5
- folder 70
- folk *n* (= people) **B1** 68
- folk *adj* **B1** *as in folk music/art* 68
- follow instructions 74
- fond of sth/sb / of doing sth **B2**\* 87
- footballer 67
- for
- a start 85
- a while **B1** 38, 85
- ages 38
- example **A1** 3
- free **B1** 40
- instance **B1** 3
- life **B1** 40
- long **B1** 38
- this/that reason **A2** 76
- force *n* **B1** 31; the (armed) forces 78
- force sb (to do sth) **B1** 54, 95
- forecast *n* **B2** 82
- foreground 46
- foreign **A2** 1
- foreigner **C1**\* 1
- forever **B1** 64
- forget **A1** 56
- formal **A2** 1
- fortunately **A2** 32
- forward *v* 70
- foster parent 11
- frame *n* **B1** 59

- freedom **B2** 76  
 freeze (= become hard and change to ice) **B1** 55; (of a computer) 69  
 freezing (cold) 15  
 French bean 23  
 French fry (US English) 100  
 frequently **B1** 22  
 fridge **A2** 99  
 friend *as in* make friends (with sb) **B1** 10  
 friendship **B1** 10  
 frighten **B1** 54  
 frightened **B1** 8, 19, 39  
 frightening **B1** 19  
 frozen **B1** 23  
 fruit salad 23  
 frustrating **C1** \* 2  
 frustration **C1** 2  
 fry *v* **B1** 25  
 frying pan 25  
 fuel *n* **B1** 64  
 full stop 4  
 full-time (job) 76  
 fun *as in* have fun **A1** 68  
 function *n* **B1** 1  
 fur **B1** 18, 27  
 furious **B2** \* 8, 19  
 further *adj* (= more) **A2** 4, 98  
 further *adv* (comparative form of far) **B1** 98  
 further to ... 98  
 gadget 26  
 gain independence 53  
 game show 63  
 garage **B1** 43  
 garbage (US English) 100  
 garbage can (US English) 100  
 garlic 23  
 gas **A2** 16  
 gasoline/gas **A2** (US English) 100  
 gather **B1** 82  
 gender **B2** \* 79  
 general *as in* in general **B1** 40  
 generally **B1** 22  
 generation **B1** 11  
 generous **B1** 7  
 genre **B2** 60  
 gentle **B1** 9  
 gentleman **B1** 46  
 gents (= toilet) 46  
 geographical 13  
 geography **A1** 13  
**get**  
 (= become) **A2** 8  
 away (= escape) 52  
 better **A2** 2  
 divorced 11  
 dressed 27  
 in (= arrive) **B2** 33  
 into sth 83  
 married **A1** 11  
 on (well/badly with sb) **B1** 10  
 on (with sth) (= make progress) 84  
 on sb's nerves 90  
 out of sth / doing sth 83  
 over sth **B2** 30  
 rid of sth **B2** 42  
 somewhere/nowhere 86  
 sth wrong 8  
 through sth **B2** 84  
 to know sb **B1** 10  
 together (= meet for social reasons) 10, 91  
 used to sth **B1** 87  
 ghost **B1** 65  
 give birth 11  
 give sb pleasure 90  
 give sth out 84  
 give sth up **A2** 56  
 give/lend sb a hand 97  
 glad **B1** 8  
 global **B1** 16  
 global warming **B1** 16  
 glove **B1** 27  
 glue 24, 42  
**go**  
 away (= leave the house) **A2** 85  
 away! (= leave me alone) **A2** 85  
 camping 35  
 down **A2** 80  
 into hospital 30  
 off (= explode) **B2** 52  
 off (= make a noise) **B2** 83  
 off sth 83  
 on (to sth) 75, 84  
 out of business 81  
 out with sb 10  
 over sth 84  
 through sth **B2** 1, 84  
 to hospital 30  
 to prison 48  
 to war 52  
 up **A2** 80  
 wrong **B1** 10  
 on a diet 25  
 go *n as in* give sth a go **B2**; have a go at sth **B1** 86  
 goal (= aim) **A2** 2, 82  
 goalkeeper 67  
 god **A2** 68  
 gold **A2** 41  
 golfer 67  
 good (quality) **A1** 28  
 goods *n pl* **B1** 26, 81  
 government **A2** 51  
 gradual 16  
 gradually **B2** 16  
 graduate *v, n* **B1** 75  
 grain **B1** 16  
 grape 23  
 grateful **B1** *as in* grateful to sb **B1** 39; I would be grateful if you could ... 98  
 green bean 23  
 greet **A2** 77  
 groom 12  
 ground (= the surface of the earth) **A2** 44; **B1** *as in* sports ground 67  
 grow (= become bigger) **A1** 81; (= become) **A2** 55  
 growth **B1** 80, 81  
 guard *n, v* **B1** 92  
 guess *v* **A1** 1; I guess so 94  
 guess *n* **A1** 1; have a guess 1  
 guest **A2** 63  
 guilty (= not innocent) **B1** 20, 49; (= feeling sorry about sth you have done) **B1** 8

- guitarist 62  
gym **A1** 99  
gymnasium 99  
gymnast 67  
gymnastics 66, 67  
habit **A2** 90  
hairdresser 77  
hairdressing 77  
hairstyle 6  
hammer 42  
hand *as in* give/lend sb a hand 97;  
on the one hand ... but on the  
other (hand) ... **B1** 73; on the  
other hand **B1** 86  
hand sth out 84  
handbag 100  
hang **B1** 42; hang sth up 55, 84  
hang on **B2** 97  
happily **A2** 22  
happiness **B1** 59, 90  
harbour *n* **B2** \* 13  
hard-working 7  
hardly **B1** 22  
hardware **C1** \* 69  
harm *v* **B2** 16, 18; *n* **B2** 18  
harmful **B2** 16, 18  
harmless 18  
hate *v* **A1** 87  
have (got) sth on (= wearing sth) 27  
have a guess 1  
have a reaction to sth 29  
have fun **A1** 68  
have (got) to do sth **A1** 95  
have sth in common **B1** 10  
head teacher 74  
head *v* **B1** 35  
headline **B1** 64  
hear **A1** 47  
heart *as in* by heart 86  
heat *n* **A2** 46  
heating **B1** 43  
heatwave 16  
heaven **B2** *as in* my idea of  
heaven 90  
heavily **B1** 22  
heavy rain 15  
heel **B2** 5  
helicopter **B1** 34  
help yourself *as in* (used for giving  
permission) **B1** 85, 96; help  
yourself (to sth) (= take what you  
want) **B1** 57  
herb **B2** \* 23  
herself **A2** 57  
hide *v* **A2** 55; hide (your  
feelings) **B1** 8  
high (quality) **A2** 28  
high school (US English) **A1** 100  
high street **B1** 28  
higher education **B1** 75  
highlight *n* **B1** 90; *v* **B1** 82  
highly **B1** 21  
highway **B2** \* 100  
hike 35  
himself **A2** 57  
hip **B2** \* 5  
hire *v* **B1** 77  
historic **B1** 43  
historical **B1** 65  
hockey player 67  
hold *as in* (an election) **B1** 51; (an  
event) **B1** 66; hold (talks) **B1** 52;  
(a record) **B2** 66  
hold on 97  
hold sb up 33  
hold-up 33  
hole **A2** 42  
homeless **B2** \* 54  
honest **B1** 10, 71  
honey 24  
honeymoon 12  
hope *v* **A1** 56, 94; I hope so/not 94  
horizon **C1** \* 13  
horrible **B1** 15  
host (on TV/radio) **B1** 63; (in a  
competition) **B1** 66  
hostel 35  
How do you feel about ...? 93  
How's it going? 85  
How/What about ...? **A1** 91  
however **A1** 73  
huge **A2** 19  
human *adj* **A2** 16  
humorous **B2** 72  
humour **B2** 72  
hunt *v* **B1** 18  
hurricane **B1** 15  
hurry up 84  
hurry *n* **B1** *as in* in a hurry 38  
hurt yourself **A2** 57  
hyphen 4  
I (don't) think so **A2** 94  
I look forward to hearing from  
you 98  
I was wondering if ... 96  
I wonder if ... **B1** 96  
I'm sorry, but ... 96  
ice **A1** 16  
ice hockey player 67  
ID (card) **B2** \* 99  
idea *as in* have no idea (about  
sth) **B1** 93  
ideal *adj* **A2** 90  
identical **B2** \* 11, 89  
identify **A2** 1  
idiom 3  
if I were you **B1** 86  
ignore **B1** 46, 82  
illegal **B1** 48, 71  
illegible 71  
illness **A2** 50  
image **A2** 59, 69  
imaginary **B1** 20  
imagine **A1** 56; I imagine so **B1** 94  
immediate **B1** 70  
immediately **A2** 70  
immigrant **B1** 51  
immigration 51  
impact (on sth) *n* **B1** 17, 62; *v* **B1** 17  
impatient **B2** 7, 71  
impolite 71  
import *n, v* **B1** 77  
importance **B1** 76  
importer 77  
impractical 7, 71  
impression **B1** 46  
impressive **B1** 43  
improve **A1** 2, 72  
improvement **B1** 2, 72

**in**

(actual) fact **A1** 22, 94  
 a (serious) relationship **B1** 10  
 a good/bad mood **B1** 8  
 a hurry **B1** 38  
 addition (to sth/sb) **B1** 73  
 case **B1** 35  
 charge of sth/sb **B1** 77  
 contrast to sth **B1** 86  
 danger (from/of sth) **A2** 40  
 detail **B1** 2, 40  
 general **B1** 40  
 my youth **B1** 63  
 order to do sth **B1** 86  
 other words **B1** 14, 86  
 particular **B1** 40, 98  
 power **B1** 51  
 private **B1** 40  
 public **B1** 40  
 recent years **B1** 40  
 secret **B1** 22  
 some cases **A2** 93  
 spite of **B2** 73  
 that case **B1** 40  
 the distance **B1** 46  
 the end **A2** 40  
 the meantime **C1** \* 38  
 the way **B1** 40  
 time **B1** 33, 38  
 /out of fashion **B1** 28  
 inbox **B1** 70  
 include **A1** 2  
 inconvenient **B1** 20  
 increase *v, n* **A2** 80  
 incredible **A2** 14  
 incredibly **B1** 9  
 indeed **B1** 90  
 independence **B2** \* 53  
 independent **A2** 53  
 indicate **B1** 63  
 indirect **B1** 20  
 individual *n, adj* **A2** 17, 70  
 indoor **B1** 20, 35  
 indoors **B1** 35  
 industrial **B2** 46, 72

industry **A2** 46, 72  
 ineffective **B1** 20  
 inflation **B2** \* 80  
 influence *n, v* **B1** 60  
 info **B2** \* 99  
 inform *as in* well informed **B1** 65  
 information **A1** 99  
 informal **A2** 1  
 ingredient **B1** 25  
 injure **B1** 29, 52  
 injured **B1** 21, 29  
 injury **A2** 29  
 innocent **B1** 20, 49  
 insect **A2** 18  
 insecure **B1** 7  
 instant **B2** \* 70  
 instantly **B2** \* 70  
 instead of sb/sth **A2** 4, 17  
 instruction **A2** 74  
 insurance **B2** 32  
 intelligence **B1** 99  
 intend **B1** 94  
 intention **B1** *as in* have no intention of doing sth 94  
 interest (= money) **B1** 80  
 interest rate **B1** 80  
 interested in sth **A1** 39  
 interrupt **B2** 4  
 invent **A2** 9, 14, 53  
 invention **A2** 14, 53  
 invest (money) **B1** 80; invest in sth 25  
 investigate **B1** 49  
 investigation **B2** 49  
 involve **A2** 52, 77  
 involved (in sth) **B1** 52, 39  
 IQ **B1** 99  
 iron *n* (= metal) **B1** 41  
 iron *n, v* (for clothes) **B1** 76  
 irregular **B1** 71  
 irresponsible **B1** 7  
 -ish **B1** 6  
 Is it a problem if ...? **B1** 96  
 Is it all right if ...? **B1** 96  
 Is it OK if ...? **B1** 96  
 ISP **B1** 99

issue **B2** 50  
 it isn't easy **B1** 42  
 it's up to you **B1** 85  
 IT **B1** 99  
 item **B1** *as in* news item 64  
 itself **A2** 57  
 jail *n* **B2** \* 48  
 jar **B1** 24  
 jealous (of sth) **B1** 8, 39  
 job **A1** 78  
 join **A1** 4  
 journal **B1** 64  
 journalism **B2** \* 64  
 journalist **A2** 64  
 journey **A1** 33  
 judge *n* **B1** 49; *v* **B1** 93  
 jungle **B1** 13  
 junk **B1** 70  
 jury **B2** \* 49  
 just (= by a small amount) **A1** 46  
 keen (= interested) **B1** 2; keen on (doing) sth **B1** 87  
 keep (= continue/stay in a place) **A1** 32; keep doing sth **A2** 56; keep (a record of sth) **B1** 1; keep in contact with sb 70; keep/be in touch (with sb) **B1** 10  
 keyboard **B1** 62  
 keyboard player **B1** 62  
 kick *v* **B1** 5  
 kid **A2** 97  
 kill yourself **A2** 57  
 killing *n* **B1** 48  
 kind *adj* **B1** 9  
 kind of (= a little) **B1** 86  
 king **A2** 53  
 kiss *v* **B1** 5  
 knee **A2** 5  
 knickers **B1** 27  
 know **A1** 72; *as in* well known **B1** 62, 65  
 knowledge **A2** 72  
 lab **A2** 75, 99  
 label *n, v* **B1** 28  
 laboratory **B1** 75, 99  
 Labour Party **B1** 51  
 lack (of sth) *n* **B1** 12, 29

lack v B1 29  
 ladies (= toilet) 46  
 lady A2 46  
 land v A2 34  
 landing B2 34  
 landscape 59  
 lane (on a road) B2 31  
 last v A2 74  
 last as in at last B1 38  
 lasting 52  
 late as in a late night 86  
 latest adj B1 28  
 law A2 51  
 lay B1 55  
 layer B1 44  
 lazy A2 7  
 lead v A2 53, 55; lead to sth B1 43  
 lead singer 62  
 leader A2 52, 53  
 leading adj B1 61  
 leaf B1 44  
 least as in at least A2 40  
 leather B1 41  
 leave A1 33; leave sb alone 85;  
 leave sth out B1 4, 84  
 lecture n A2 75  
 lecturer 75  
 legal B1 48, 71, 74  
 legally 74  
 legible 71  
 leisure B1 46  
 leisure centre 43  
 lend as in lend sb a hand 97  
 length B1 24, 67  
 leopard 18  
 let me know A2 98  
 lettuce 23  
 level adj B1 35  
 lie v (= be horizontal) A1 55  
 lie down 84  
 life expectancy 18  
 lifespan 18  
 lifestyle A2 63  
 lift n A2 100  
 light (rain) B1 15  
 light v A2 55; light sth up B1 68

lightning B2 \* 15  
 like prep (= such as) A2 4  
 like v A1 56  
 like n B1 10  
 likely A2 21, 71, 88  
 limit v, n B1 50  
 limited B2 82  
 linesman 67  
 link n A2 70; (to the internet) A2 76  
 lip B1 5  
 liquid B1 16  
 list n A1 4  
 listen to sb A1 36, 47  
 live apart 12  
 live adj B1 62  
 living adj B1 62  
 living n B1 77  
 loads of sth B2 97  
 loaf 24  
 loan n B2 76  
 local adj A1 61  
 locate B1 43  
 located B1 13  
 location B1 13  
 lock v A2 71  
 log in/on 69  
 log off/out 69  
 login 69  
 lonely B1 8  
 long adj A2 67  
 look v A1, n A2 47  
 look as if/though A1 47  
 look at yourself A1 57  
 look forward to (doing) sth B1 35,  
 94; I look forward to hearing  
 from you 98  
 look like (+ noun) A1 47  
 look onto sth 43  
 look out (= be careful) B1 83  
 lose A1 as in lose weight 25  
 loss B1 80  
 Lots of love 98  
 love v A1 56  
 Love from 98  
 loving 9  
 low (= of a reduced amount) A2 69

luck A2 32  
 luckily 32  
 lucky A2 71  
 lung cancer 54  
 luxury B1 34  
 mad (= not sensible) B1 7, 21  
 mad about sth/sb B1 87  
 magic B1 64  
 main adj A1 as in main (station)  
 33; main road 31, 100; the main  
 difference B1 89  
 mainly B1 13, 22  
 majority B2 51  
**make**  
 a difference B1 86  
 a payment 76  
 a profit/loss 80  
 a speech 12  
 an arrangement 77  
 an attempt 52  
 an effort 81  
 as in can you make it? 91  
 friends (with sb) 10  
 it (= come) 85  
 a mistake A2 1  
 plans (for sth) 94  
 sb do sth A2 95  
 sth up B1 9  
 sure A2 77  
 up your mind 85  
 male adj A2 6  
 mall B1 43  
 manage (= be in control) A2 76;  
 manage to do sth B1 56, 78  
 management B1 81  
 mango 23  
 market n B1 81, v B1 82  
 market research 81  
 marketing B1 82  
 marriage B1 12  
 married A1 11  
 marry A2 11  
 mash 25  
 match v A1 28  
 material A2 41  
 maths A2 99

- maximum *adj* B2 67  
 may *v* A2 88; *May I ...?* 96  
 mean *v* (= intend) B1 9  
 mean *adj* 7  
 mean *v* A2 *as in* I see what you mean 93; B1 *as in* mean a lot (to sb) 68  
 meant *as in* be meant to do sth C1 \* 33, 91  
 meantime *as in* in the meantime C1 \* 38  
 meanwhile B1 38  
 measure *v* B1 24, *n* B1 51  
 mechanic B2 \* 77  
 medal B2 \* 41, 66  
 medicine A2 77  
 medium B1 *as in* (of) medium build/height 6  
 melon 23  
 melt *v* B2 16  
 Member of Parliament 51  
 mend 42  
 mental B1 50  
 mess *n* B1 42  
 metal A2 41  
 method A2 1, 25  
 metre A1 67  
 might A2 88  
 mild B1 15  
 minced 25  
 mind *n as in* change your mind B1 93; make up your mind B1 85  
 mind *v* (= be careful) B1 92; not mind A2 56, 87  
 mine *n* B1 92  
 minimum *adj* B2 67  
 minor B2 48  
 minority B2 51  
 mint 23  
 miserable B2 8  
 miss (a train) A1 33  
 mistake *n* A1 *as in* by mistake 40; make mistakes B1 1  
 mixed *as in* mixed (vegetables) B2 23; mixed feelings B2 20  
 mobile phone A1 100  
 modern A1 20  
 monarchy B1 53  
 mood B1 8; in a good/bad mood 8  
 moon A2 14  
 more and more B1 86  
 more or less B2 24  
 mosquito 18  
 mostly A2 13  
 mother-in-law 11  
 motivated 2  
 motivation B2 2  
 motor racing 67  
 motorway 100  
 mountainous 13  
 moustache 6  
 move *v* (= cause feelings) B2 59; move sb to tears 59  
 move (house) A2 43  
 move on (to sth) B1 84  
 move *n* B1 43  
 movie (US English) A1 100  
 movie theater (US English) 100  
 MP 51  
 mud B1 42  
 murder *n, v* B1 48  
 murderer 48  
 muscle B1 29  
 myself A2 57  
 mystery B1 65  
 nail *n* B1 42  
 narrative *adj, n* B1 65  
 nation B1 66  
 native *adj, n* B1 2  
 native speaker 2  
 natural A1 20  
 naturally B1 22  
 navy 78  
 neat B2 6  
 necessarily *as in* not necessarily B1 22  
 neck A2 5  
 necklace 27  
 need (to do sth) *v* A1 56  
 need (for sth) *n* A2 37, 51  
 needle B1 42  
 negative *adj* A1 20  
 neighbourhood B1 68  
 neither *as in* neither do I B1, neither can/would, etc. I 87; neither ... nor B1 97  
 nerves *as in* get on sb's nerves 90  
 nervous A2 8  
 net B1 67  
 network *n* A2 69  
 network *v* 70  
 neutral B2 \* 97  
 never mind 85  
 news A1 *as in* the news 63  
 newsreader 63  
 nickname 11  
 no longer B1 10  
 no way! A2 85  
 non-fiction 65  
 normal A2 46  
 northern B1 13  
 not any longer 10  
 not at all (= not in any way) 87  
 not necessarily B1 22  
 not only B1 ... but also ... 73  
 note *as in* take notes B1 75  
 nuclear B1 53  
 nuclear power 53  
 obey B2 95  
 object *n* A1 41  
 objective *n* B2 51  
 obligation 95  
 obtain B2 97  
 obvious B1 2  
 obviously B1 2, 22  
 occasion B1 8, 28, 68  
 occupation B2 \* 78  
 occur B1 15, 31, 97  
 odd (= strange) B1 9  
 of course A1 22, 96  
 off A2 *as in* a day/week off 46  
 offer *v* A2 56  
 office block 43  
 official *adj* B1, *n* B2 92  
 OK *as in* Is it OK if ...? 96  
 old age 50  
 old-fashioned B1 20  
 omit 4, 84

**on**

a regular basis **B1** 40  
 average 40  
 my own **B1** 8, 76  
 the basis of sth **B2** 79  
 the horizon 13  
 the one hand **B2** ... but on the other (hand) ... 73  
 the other hand **B1** 86  
 the street(s) **B1** 40  
 the way **B1** 40  
 the whole 22, 40  
 time **A2** 34, 38, 76  
 top of sth **B2** 63  
 your own 8, 76  
 one another **B2** 10  
 one or two **A2** 85  
 only child 11  
 onto **A2** 43  
 operate **B2** 30  
 operation **B1** 30  
 opinion **A1** as in in my opinion **A1** 93  
 opportunity **A2** 1, 82  
 optimistic **B2** \* 59, 88  
 or so **B2** as in a day/week, etc. or so 85  
 orchestra **B2** \* 62  
 order v **A1** 26  
 order n **B1** 26; in order to do sth **B1** 86  
 ordinary **A2** 46  
 organ **B2** 62  
 organist 62  
 organized **B1** 7, 71  
 original adj **B1** 59, 65; n **B1** 59  
 originally **B1** 11  
 ought to **B1** 95  
 ourselves **A2** 57  
 outdoor **B1** 20, 35  
 outdoors **B1** 35  
 outfit **B2** \* 28  
 outgoing 7  
 oval 67  
 over adv (= finished) **B1** 74  
 over time **B1** 40

over-ambitious **B1** 81  
 overcharge 81  
 oversleep 55  
 owl 41  
 package n **B1** 26  
 packet **B2** \* 24  
 pain **A2** 29  
 painful **B1** 20, 29, 72  
 painless 20, 29, 72  
 paintbrush 59  
 pale (skin) **B1** 6, 29  
 pan **B1** 25  
 pants (= underpants) **A2** 27; (US English: = trousers) **A2** 100  
 parade n **B2** \* 68  
 parcel 26  
 parking lot (US English) 100  
 parliament **B2** 51  
 parsley 23  
 part as in take part (in sth) **B1** 66  
 part-time (job) 76  
 participate in sth **B1** 36, 66  
 particular as in in particular **B1** 40, 98  
 particularly **B1** 22  
 pass (a test) **A2** 32  
 passion **B1** 54  
 passionate **B2** \* 54  
 path **B1** 44  
 patience **B2** \* 7  
 patient adj **B2** 7  
 patient n **A2** 30  
 pattern **A2** 27  
 patterned 27  
 pause n **B2** 4  
 pavement 31, 100  
 pay for yourself **A1** 57  
 payment **B1** 76  
 PC 99  
 PE 99  
 peace (= a state of calm) **A2** 46; (= opposite of war) **A2** 52  
 peaceful **B1** 46  
 peak n **C1** \* 80  
 peanut 24  
 pear 23

per cent **A2** 81  
 percentage **B1** 81  
 perfect adj **A1** 90  
 perfectly (= very) **B1** 22  
 period **A1** 59  
 permanent **B2** 20  
 personality **A2** 7  
 personally **B1** 93  
 persuade **B1** 51  
 pessimistic 88  
 petrol **A2** 100  
 petrol station 31  
 pharmacist 77  
 photo **A1** 99  
 photograph n **A2** 99  
 photographer **B1** 77  
 photography **B1** 77  
 pianist 62  
 pick v **B1** 44  
 pick sb/sth up (= collect) 33  
 pick sth up (= learn without lessons) 84  
 pin n **B1** 42  
 PIN 99  
 pineapple 23  
 pipe n **B1** 41  
 place (an order) **B1** 26  
 pity **B2** as in what/that's a pity 85  
 plain **B2** 27  
 plan v **A1** 56, 94; n **A1** 94  
 plane **A1** 99  
 planet **A2** 14  
 planning **B1** 74  
 plant n **A1**, v **A2** 44  
 play n **A1** 61  
 player **A1** 62, 67  
 pleasant **B1** 9, 20  
 pleased (with sth/sb) **A2** 8, 20, 39  
 pleasure **B1** 34, 65, 90  
 plenty of sth **B1** 25  
 plot n **B1** 65  
 plug sth in 69, 71  
 plus conj (= in addition) **B2** 73  
 PM 51  
 poem **B1** 65  
 poet **B1** 65

- poetry **B1** 65  
 point *n* **B2** 45  
 point of view **B1** 93  
 pointed **B2** 45  
 poison *n* **B1** 18, 29; *v* **B1** 29  
 poisonous **B1** 18, 29  
 policy **B1** 51  
 polite to sb **A2** 39, 71  
 politely 22  
 political **B1** 51  
 politician **B1** 51  
 politics **B1** 51  
 pollute 16  
 pollution **A2** 16  
 pool **A1** 67  
 poor (quality) **B1** 28  
 pop (music) **A2** 99  
 popular music 99  
 port **B1** 13  
 portrait **B1** 59  
 position (= job) **B2** 79  
 positive *adj* **A1** 20  
 post *v* (= put online) **A2** 70  
 postgrad 75  
 postgraduate 75  
 postman 77  
 postpone **C1** \* 91  
 postwoman 77  
 pot (for plants) **B1** 44;  
 (for cooking) **B1** 41  
 pour (a liquid) **B1** 5;  
 pour (with rain) **B1** 15  
 poverty **B1** 37  
 powder **B1** 24  
 power *n* **A2** 69, 72; *in power* 51  
 power plant 43  
 power station 53  
 powerful **B1** 20, 59, 72  
 powerless 20, 59, 72  
 practical **B1** 7, 72  
 practice *n* **A1** 72  
 practise *v* **A1** 56  
 pray **B1** 72  
 prayer **B1** 72  
 predict **A2** 16, 82  
 predictable **B2** \* 16  
 prediction **B1** 82  
 prefer **A1** *as in doing / to do sth* 87;  
 prefer sth or sth 87; prefer sth to  
 sth **B1** 87  
 preference **B2** \* 87  
 pregnant **B2** 6  
 premises 97  
 prepared *as in prepared for sth* **B1**  
 32, 39; prepared to do sth **B1** 93  
 presentation **B1** 91  
 president **A2** 53  
 press *v* **B1** 47  
 pressure **B1** 12  
 pre-tax 80  
 pretend **B1** 9, 56  
 pretty *adv* (= quite) **A1** 22  
 prevent sb/sth from sth **A2** 36  
 previous **B1** 11  
 previously **B1** 14  
 priest **B1** 77  
 primary (education) **B1** 74  
 prime minister **B1** 51  
 prince **B1** 53  
 princess **B1** 53  
 prison **A2** *as in in prison* **A2** 48  
 prisoner **B1** 48  
 private **B1** 20, 34, 74; *in private* 40  
 problem *as in Is it a problem if*  
 I ...? 96  
 proceed (to/with sth) **B2** 97  
 process *n* **A2** 79  
 producer **B1** 60, 80  
 production **B1** 80  
 profession **B1** 78  
 professional *adj* **A2** 61;  
*n* **B2** 61, 66  
 professor **A2** 75  
 profile **A2** 70  
 profit *n* **B1** 28, 80  
 promise *v* **A2** 56  
 promote (= help to sell sth) **B1** 70;  
 promote sb **B1** 78  
 promotion **B2** \* 78  
 pronounce **A2** 1  
 pronunciation 1  
 proof **B2** 49  
 proper **B1** 25  
 properly **B1** 22, 42  
 property (= house) **B2** 43;  
 (= possessions) **B1** 48  
 protect **A2** 13, 51  
 protection **B2** 13, 51  
 protest *n, v* **B1** 64  
 proud **B1** 9, 39  
 prove **B1** 49  
 provide **A2** 3  
 pub **A2** 99  
 public *adj* **A2** 20; *in public* **B1** 40  
 public house 99  
 publish **A2** 64, 65  
 publisher 65  
 publishing company 65  
 pull up 83  
 punish **B1** 49, 95  
 punishment **B1** 49, 95  
 purchase *n, v* **B2** 97  
 purpose (of sth) **A2** 49  
 purse (US English) 100  
 put  
 sth back (= return) 84  
 sth down 84  
 sth forward **B2** 51  
 sth off 91  
 sth on (= organize) 61  
 on (clothing) **A2** 83  
 sth out (= stop sth burning) 83  
 sth up **B1** 35  
 up with sth/sb 84  
*as in to put it another way* **B2** 86  
 qualification **B1** 78  
 qualified **B1** 93  
 qualify (= win the right to enter a  
 competition) **B1** 66; (= pass a  
 course/training, etc.) **B1** 93  
 quality **B1** 9  
 quantity **A2** 24  
 quarter (= 3 months) 80  
 queen **A2** 53  
 question mark 4  
 queue *n, v* **B1** 34  
 quit **B1** 64  
 quite **A1** 22  
 quite a bit 85

- quotation **B1** 72  
 quotation mark 4  
 quote *n, v* **B1** 72  
 race (= competition) **A2** 66;  
 (of people) **B1** 79  
 racing driver 67  
 racket 67  
 rail travel 33  
 raincoat 27  
 rainfall 15  
 raise *v* (= make sth bigger) **B1** 64;  
 (= obtain money) **B1** 9, 54, 80  
 range **B1** *as in a wide range (of sth)* 2, 59  
 rare **B1** 20  
 rarely **B1** 22  
 rate *n* **A2** 64  
 rather (= quite) **A2** 22; **rather than**  
**B1** 54; **would rather do sth** **B2** 87  
 reach *v* **A2** 14; **reach (the highest point)**  
**B1** 80; **reach (an agreement)** **B1** 52  
 react **A2** 59  
 reaction **B1** 29, 59  
 real (= not artificial) **A1** 20; (not imaginary)  
**A1** 20  
 realistic **B2** 82  
 realize **A2** 10  
 really **A1** 19  
 reappear 71  
 rearrange 71  
 reasonable **B2** 35  
 rebuild **B2** 71  
 receipt **B1** 26  
 receive **A2** 70, 79  
 recent **A2** 66  
 reception **B1** *as in wedding reception* 12  
 recipe **A2** 25  
 recognize **A2** 1  
 recommend **A2** 65  
 recommendation **B1** 65  
 record *n* **A2** 54; **keep a record of sth**  
 1; (= best performance) **A2** 66; (= vinyl)  
**B1** 62  
 record *v* **A2** 54  
 recording **A2** 62  
 recover from sth **B2** 30  
 rectangle 45  
 rectangular 45  
 recycle **A2** 17, 71  
 recycling 17  
 recycling bin 17  
 red light 32  
 red pepper 23  
 reduce **A2** 17, 26, 82  
 reduction **B2** 82  
 refer to sb/sth **A2** 36  
 referee (= sb who writes a reference) 79  
 referee (in sport) **B2** \* 67  
 reference **B2** 79  
 reference book 65  
 refrigerator 99  
 refund *n, v* 26  
 refuse *v* **A2** 56  
 Regards 98  
 region **A2** 13  
 registry office 12  
 regular **A2** 71  
 regularly **B1** 15, 22  
 reject *v* **B1** 52  
 rejection 52  
 relationship **A2** *as in in a (serious) relationship* 10  
 related to sth **B1** 3  
 related to sb **B1** 11  
 relation **B1** 11  
 relative *n* **B1** 11  
 relaxation 46  
 relaxed **B1** 8, 19  
 relaxing **B1** 19, 46  
 release *n, v* **B1** 53  
 release *v, n* (= on the market) **B2** 62  
 reliable **B1** 10, 71  
 relief **B2** 74  
 relieved **B2** \* 74  
 religion **B1** 68  
 religious **B1** 12, 68  
 rely on sb/sth **B2** 10, 36  
 remain **B1** 78, 80  
 remember doing sth **A1** 59  
 remind sb (of sth) 91  
 remote *adj* **B1** 35  
 remote control 41  
 remove **A2** 69  
 renewable energy 17  
 rent *n, v* **B1** 76  
 reorganize 71  
 repair *v* **A2** 42  
 repeat *v* **A1** 1; *n* **B1** 63  
 repeated **B1** 90  
 repetition 1  
 reply *v* **A2** 70  
 report *v* **A2** 49  
 represent **B1** 51  
 republic **C1** \* 53  
 reputation **B2** 81  
 request *n* **A2**, *v* **B1** 79  
 require **B1** 74, 79, 92, 97  
 research *n* **A2** 75  
 researcher **A2** 75  
 reservation **B1** 35  
 resident *n* **B2** 43  
 resource **B1** 82  
 respect (for sb/sth) *n* **B1** 37  
 respond (to sth/sb) **A2** 82  
 response **A2** 82  
 responsibility **B1** 25  
 responsible (for sth) **B1** 7, 39, 49, 77  
 rest room (US English) 100  
 result *as in as a result* **A2** 73, 86  
 retail *n* **B2** \* 43  
 retail store 43  
 retake 71  
 retire **B1** 64, 78  
 retired **B1** 54  
 retirement **B2** \* 64, 78  
 reuse 71  
 revise sth / for sth **B1** 1, 76  
 revision **B2** \* 1, 76  
 revolve 14  
 rewrite 71  
 rise *v* **A2** 16, 21, 80; *n* **B1** 16, 37, 80  
 risk *n* **B1** 30, 81; **at risk (from sb/sth)**  
**B1** 40  
 risk *v* **B1** 32, 56  
 risky **B2** \* 81  
 road sign 31

- roast 25  
 rob **B2** \* 48  
 robber 48  
 robbery **B2** \* 48  
 robot **B1** 41  
 rock *n* **A2** 13  
 rocket **B2** \* 14  
 role **A2** 61  
 roll *n* **B1** 24; *v* **B1** 5  
 romantic *adj* **B1** 11  
 rope **B1** 42  
 rough (= not smooth) **B1** 6;  
 (= violent) **B2** 13  
 roughly **B2** 14, 22  
 round *adj* **A2** 45  
 round the block 43  
 round trip (US English) 100  
 roundabout 31  
 row (= line) **B1** 44  
 royal *adj* **B1** 53  
 rubber *adj* **B2** 41  
 rubbish *n* **A2** 17, 100  
 rude to sb **A2** 39  
 rugby player 67  
 rule *v* **B1** 53  
 run (= control) **B1** 81;  
 (of a computer) **B2** 69  
 run away 55  
 run into sb 83  
 run out (of sth) **B1** 84  
 sadly **A2** 62  
 safety **B1** 92  
 safety glasses/boots/helmet 92  
 sail *v* **A2** 77  
 sailing boat 13  
 sailor **B1** 77  
 same *as in* all the same 73; at the  
 same time 86  
 sample *n* **B2** 30  
 sand **B1** 13  
 sandy 13  
 satellite (= equipment) **B2** 14;  
 (= object in space) 14  
 satisfactory 79  
 saucepan 25  
 save (= use less) **A2** 17;  
 save (money) **A2** 50  
 save up (for sth) 84  
 saxophone 62  
 saxophonist 62  
 scan *n* 30  
 scared (of sth) **A2** 8, 39  
 scarf 41  
 scene (= place where sth happened)  
**A2** 31; (= picture of a place) 46  
 schedule **A2** *as in* on schedule 34  
 school **A1** *as in* at school **A1** 76  
 sci-fi 65  
 science **A1** 14  
 science fiction **A2** 65  
 scientific **B1** 14  
 scientist **A1** 14  
 scissors 42  
 screenwriter 60  
 script **B1** 60  
 sculpture **B1** 59  
 search engine **B1** 69  
 seasick 34  
 seaside *n, adj* 35  
 seat belt 32  
 second-hand 26  
 secondary (education) **B1** 74  
 secret *as in* in secret 22  
 secretly 22  
 section **A1** 82  
 security **B1** 92  
 see *v* **A1** 47; see sb as sth **B1** 7  
 seed **B1** 44  
 seem **A2** 56; it seems to me 93  
 seldom **C1** \* 22  
 select **B2** 79  
 selection **B2** 79  
 selfie 70  
 semicolon 4  
 seminar **B2** \* 75  
 send *v* **A1** 70; **A1** *as in* send sb to  
 prison 48  
 send sth back 26  
 sense of humour 10  
 sense *v* **B2** 46  
 sensible **B1** 7  
 separate *adj* **A2** 12  
 separate *v* **B1** 4, 12  
 serious **A2** 31, 48  
 seriously **B1** 21  
 servant **B1** 61  
 serve (= work for people) **B2** 78  
 service (= trains, buses, etc.) **A2** 33  
 set (work) **B1** 74  
 set *n* (= group of things) **B1** 26;  
 (= TV) 63  
 set *v* (= decide) **B1** 17;  
 (= prepare) **B1** 55  
 set off 84  
 set sth off 55  
 set sth up **B1** 81  
 setting **B1** 43  
 several **A2** 24  
 sew 42  
 sex **B1** 79  
 sexual **B1** 12  
 shake *v* **A2** 55  
 shall **A2** 79  
 shame **B2** *as in* what/that's a  
 shame 85  
 shampoo 41  
 shape **A2** 45; in good/bad shape 6  
 -shaped **B2** 45  
 share (sth with sb) *v* **A1** 70  
 share *n* **B1** 81  
 shark 18  
 sharp (knife, etc.) **B1** 25; (rise, fall,  
 etc.) **B2** 80  
 sharply 21, 80  
 sheet (of paper) **A2** 24  
 shell **B1** 45  
 shift (= change) *n* **B2** 63  
 shine *v* (= direct a light at sth/  
 sb) **B1** 55  
 shine *n* 72  
 shiny **B1** 72  
 shocking **B2** \* 46  
 shoot *v* **B1** 48  
 shooting **B2** 66  
 shopping centre 43  
 shopping list 4  
 shopping mall 43

- shore **B2** \* 13  
 should **A1** 95  
 shoulder **A2** 5  
 shout *v* **A2** 67  
 show (your feelings) **B1** 8  
 shower (= rain) **B1** 15  
 shy **B1** 7  
 sibling **B2** \* 11  
 side *n* **B2** 52  
 sidewalk (US English) 100  
 sight *n* **B1** 90  
 sights *pl* (for tourists) **B1** 35  
 sign up (to sth) 17  
 signal *n, v* **B1** 32  
 significant **B2** 80  
 significantly **B2** 80  
 silent **B1** 46  
 silly **B1** 88  
 silver *n* **A2** 41  
 similar (to sth/sb) **A1** 39, 89  
 similarity **B1** 89  
 simply **B1** 22  
 since *conj* (= because) **B2** 73  
 single parent 11  
 sink *v* **B1** 55  
 sister-in-law 11  
 sit down **A1** 84  
 sit an exam 74  
 site **A2** 68  
 skid 31  
 skier 67  
 skill **A1** 25, 78, 82  
 skilled **B2** \* 82  
 slang 3  
 slash *n* 4  
 slice *n* **B1** 24; *v* **B1** 25  
 slight *adj* **B2** 80  
 slightly **B1** 22, 80  
 slow down **B1** 2  
 smart **B1** 28  
 smell (of sth) *v* **A2** 36; *n, v* **A2** 47  
 smooth **B1** 6  
 so *conj* (= as a result) **B1** 73  
 so *adv* **B1** as in **so do/can/would,**  
 etc. | **B1** 87; **so far** **B1** 14, 85  
 soap (opera) 63  
 social media 70  
 social networking 70  
 society **A2** 54  
 software **B1** 69  
 soil **B1** 44  
 soldier **A2** 52  
 solid *n* **B1** 16  
 solid *adj* **B1** 14  
 songwriter 62  
 sore 29; a sore throat 29  
 sort sth out 94  
 sorry **A1** as in **I'm sorry, but ...** 96  
 sound *v, n* **A1** 47  
 source (= sb/sth that provides  
 information) **B1** 11; (= where sth  
 comes from) **A2** 17  
 southern **B1** 13  
 space [U] (= beyond earth) **A1** 14  
 spacecraft 14  
 speak to sb **A1** 36  
 specifically **B1** 22  
 spectator **B2** \* 67  
 speech **A2** 12  
 speed camera 31  
 speed limit 32  
 speed *v* **B2** 32  
 speeding *n* 32  
 spending *n* **B1** 64  
 spicy **B1** 87  
 spider **A2** 18  
 spill **B2** 55  
 spirits as in **lift sb's spirits** 90  
 spite as in **in spite of sth** **B2** 73  
 split up 12  
 spoonful 24  
 sports car 31  
 spot *n* (= small mark) **B1** 18;  
 (= small red lump on skin) **B1** 88  
 spread *v* **B1** 16  
 spring *v* **B2** 55  
 square *n, adj* **A2** 45  
 stab **C1** \* 48  
 stability **C1** \* 80  
 stable *adj* **B2** 80  
 stadium **B1** 67  
 staff **B1** 74  
 stage *n* **A2** 61  
 stage design 61  
 stand **A2** as in **can't stand (doing)**  
 sth 87  
 stand for sth 99  
 stand up **A1** 84  
 standard *n* **B1** (= level of quality) 34;  
**high standards** **B1** 9  
 standard *adj* (= normal) 67  
 star *n* **A1** 14  
 start up (a computer) 69  
 starve (to death) **B2** \* 15  
 state *adj* **B1** 74  
 statistics **B1** 12  
 statue **B1** 41  
 stay the same 80  
 stay up 83  
 steadily **B2** \* 80  
 steady **B2** 80  
 steal **A2** 48  
 steel **B2** 41  
 stick *n* (= thin piece of wood from  
 a tree) **B1** 44; (= sth you hit a ball  
 with) 67  
 stick sth together 42  
 still *adv* (used for emphasis) **B1** 73  
 still life 59  
 sting *v, n* 18  
 stock (in business) **B2** 81;  
 (in cooking) 25  
 stomach **A2** 5  
 stone **A2** 41  
 stop *v* **A1** 56  
 stopping train 33  
 store *n* (US English) **A2** 100  
 store *v* **B1** 69  
 straight **A2** 31, 45  
 straight away 85  
 stranger **B1** 98  
 strategy **A2** 82  
 street as in **on the street(s)** **B1** 40  
 street light 31  
 strength **B1** 50, 82  
 stress *n, v* **A2** 3  
 stressed 8  
 string **B1** 42

- stripe 18, 27  
 striped 27  
 strongly **B1** 21  
 structure *n* **A2** 78  
 studio **B1** 46  
 stuff *n* **B1** 41  
 stupid **A2** 7  
 style (of speech) **A1** 3;  
 (= fashion) **A2** 28  
 stylish 28  
 substance **B1** 41  
 subway (= underground path) 100;  
 (US English: = underground train  
 system) 100  
 succeed in sth **A2** 36  
 successful **A2** 30  
 successfully **B1** 22  
 such as **A1** 4  
 sudden **B1** 15  
 suddenly **A2** 15, 22  
 suffer (from sth) **B1** 29, 36, 50  
 suggest **A2** 56  
 suicide **C1** \* 64  
 suit *v* **B1** 28  
 suitable **B1** 2, 71  
 summarize **B1** 65  
 summary **B1** 65  
 sun **A1** 14  
 suntan 6  
 sunbathe 35  
 sunbathing 35  
 sunshine 15  
 supplier 81  
 supply *n* **B2** 69, 81; *v* **A2** 81  
 support *v* **A2** 10; **B2** 44  
 supporter **B1** 67  
 suppose **A2** *as in* I suppose so 94  
 supposed *as in* be supposed to  
 do / be doing sth **B1** 91  
 sure *as in* be sure to do sth 35;  
 make sure **B1** 77  
 surely **B1** 93  
 surface **B1** 31  
 survey *n* **A2** 65  
 survival **B2** \* 18, 81  
 survive **B1** 18, 81  
 sweep **B2** 5  
 sweet *n* **A2** 100  
 sweetcorn 23  
 swimmer 67  
 swimming pool **A1** 67  
 switch sth off/on 17, 83  
 syllable 3, 59  
 symbol **A2** 3  
 symptom **B1** 29  
 system **A2** 51  
 tail (of an animal) **B1** 18;  
 (of a plane) 34  
**take**  
 (an exam) **A2** 32, 58, 74  
 (a photo) **A1** 58  
 (= borrow or steal) **A2** 58  
 (drugs/medicine; sugar/milk in  
 tea/coffee) **A2** 58  
 (= need an amount of time) **A1** 58  
 (= travel on) **A1** 58  
 (= wear) (a particular size) 58  
 after sb 84  
 care 98  
 care of sb **A2** 30, 56  
 notes **A2** 75  
 off (of a plane) **A2** 34, 84  
 off (= start being successful) 84  
 out (a loan) 76  
 over (a company) 81  
 part (in sth) **A2** 66  
 place **A2** 49  
 (sb's advice) **A2** 58  
 sth back 26  
 sth in 84  
 sth off (= remove) **A2** 84  
 sth seriously 17  
 sth up (= start sth new) **B1** 56  
 up sth (= fill time or space) **B1** 83  
 vs bring 58  
 take-off 34  
 takeover 81  
 talent **B1** 9  
 talented **B1** 9  
 talk show 63  
 talk to sb **A1** 36  
 talks *n pl* **B1** 52  
 tan 6  
 tap *n* **B2** 17, 100  
 tape *n* **B1** 42  
 target *n* **A2** 17, 82; *v* 82  
 taste of sth *v* **A2** 36, 47  
 taste **A2** *v, n* 47  
 tattoo 6  
 tax *n* **B1** 50, 80  
 teach yourself **A1** 57  
 tear **B2** *v* 55  
 technical **B1** 78  
 technique **B1** 59  
 tell (= know or guess) **B2** 6;  
 tell (lies / the truth) **A1** 10  
 telly 99  
 temperature **A2** 29  
 temporary **B2** 20  
 tend (to do sth) **B1** 56, 76  
 tennis player 67  
 tent **B1** 35  
 term **B1** 74  
 terrible **A1** 15  
 terribly **B2** \* 21  
 terrified 19  
 terrifying 19  
 test *n* **A1** 30  
 that's fine 96  
 that/it depends **A2** 85  
 theatre [C] **A1**, [U] **A2** 61  
 theft **B2** \* 48  
 theme **B1** 65  
 themselves **A2** 57  
 theory **B1** 53  
 therefore **B1** 67  
 thesis **B2** \* 75  
 thick (fog) **B1** 15  
 thief **A2** 48  
 thing **A1** 41; the thing is ... 93  
 think *v* **A1** *as in* be thinking of/  
 about doing sth 94; I (don't)  
 think so **A2** 94; What do you  
 think about ...? **B1** 93  
 thinking (on sth) *n* **A2** 93  
 though *conj* **B1** 73  
 threat **B2** 82  
 throat **B1** 5

- throughout *prep* **B1** 34  
 throw *v* **A2** 55  
 throw sth away **A2** 17, 83  
 thumb **B2** \* 5  
 thunder 15  
 ticket machine 33  
 ticket office 33  
 tidal wave 15  
 tidy (sth) up 42, 84  
 tie sth together 42  
 tiger 18  
 tight (= not baggy) **B1** 20, 27  
 tights 27  
 time *as in* at the time **A2** 6, 38;  
     at times **B1** 29, 38; by the time  
     **B1** 38; in time **B1** 33, 38; on time  
     **B1** 34, 38, 76  
 tin **B1** 24  
 tiny **B1** 19  
 tip (= advice) **A2** 32  
 tip *v, n* (= extra money) **B1** 85  
 tired of sth **A2** 39  
 title **A1** 65  
 toe **B1** 5  
 together with sth **B1** 25  
 tongue **B1** 5  
 tool **A2** 42  
 top *as in* on top of sth **B1** 63  
 topic **A1** 93  
 total **B1** *as in* a total disaster 86  
 totally **B1** 21  
 touch *v* **A2** 47  
 touch *n as in* keep/be in touch with  
     sb **B1** 47  
 tour *v* **B1** 62  
 tournament **B2** \* 66  
 town hall 43  
 track *n* **A2** 31  
 trade *n, v* **B1** 28  
 traffic jam 33  
 traffic lights 31  
 tram 31  
 transfer *v, n* **B2** 98  
 translate **B1** 1  
 translation **B1** 1  
 trash (US English) 100  
 trash can (US English) 100  
 travel agency 77  
 travel agent 77  
 travel card 33  
 travel *n, v* **A1** 33  
 travel sick 34  
 treat *v* **B1** 30, 50  
 treatment **B1** 30, 50  
 trend **B1** 54, 80  
 trial **B2** 49  
 triangle 45  
 triangular 45  
 trick *n* **B1** 64  
 trip (over) *v* **B2** 29  
 trip *n* 33  
 trousers **A1** 27, 100  
 truck (US English) **A2** 100  
 trumpet 62  
 trumpeter 62  
 trust *v* **B2** 10  
 try *v* (= in a trial) 49  
 tube **B1** 24  
 tuition fee 76  
 turn out **B1** 35  
 turn sth off/on **A2** 17  
 turn sth up (= increase  
     volume) **B1** 83  
 turn sth/sb down (= refuse an offer  
     or person) 84  
 turn up (= arrive) 84  
 turnover **C1** \* 80  
 tutor 75  
 TV **A1** 99  
 tweet *v, n* 70  
 twin *n* **A2** 11  
 typically **B1** 63  
 tyre **B1** 41  
 ugly **B1** 6  
 unable **B1** 71  
 unattractive 6  
 undergraduate **C1** \* 75  
 underpants 27  
 underpay 81  
 underwear **B1** 27  
 undo 27  
 unemployed **B1** 78  
 unemployment **B1** 78  
 unexpected **B2** 20, 71  
 unfair **B1** 71, 88  
 unfashionable 28  
 unfit 71  
 unfriendly 71  
 unhappy **A2** 20  
 uni 99  
 union **B1** 99  
 universe **B2** 14  
 university **A1** 99;  
     at university **A1** 76  
 unkind 9, 71  
 unless **B1** 35  
 unlike **B1** 89  
 unlikely **B1** 21, 71, 88  
 unlimited 82  
 unlock 71  
 unlucky 71  
 unpleasant **B1** 9  
 unplug 71  
 unpopular 71  
 unpredictable 16  
 unreliable 71  
 unsuitable 2, 71  
 unusual **A2** 71  
 unwell 30  
 unwilling 54  
 up to *as in* up to (an amount) **B1** 18;  
     (= until) **B1** 74  
 update *v* **B1** 69  
 upload *v* 69  
 upon **B1** 97  
 upset *adj* (= sad) **B1** 8; an upset  
     stomach 29  
 upset *v* **B1** 8, 90  
 used *adj* (= not new) **B1** 26  
 used to (doing) sth **B1** 76  
 useful **A1** 20, 72  
 useless **B2** 20, 72  
 username 69  
 usual **A2** 90  
 vacation (US English) **A1** 100  
 valuable (= worth money) **B1** 26;  
     (= useful) **B1** 72  
 value *n* **B1** 26, 72

- variety **A2** 50, 72  
 various **B1** 50, 72  
 vary **B2** 12, 18  
 vase 24  
 version **B1** 64  
 very much *as in* like sth very much 87  
 vest 27  
 vet 99  
 veterinary surgeon 99  
 victim **B1** 49  
 viewer **B1** 63  
 viewing *n* 63  
 violence **B2** 54  
 violent **B1** 15, 54  
 violinist 62  
 VIP 99  
 visual **B2** 62  
 vital **B2** 19  
 vitally 21  
 voluntary **B2**\* 54  
 volunteer *n, v* **B1** 54  
 vote *v* **B1** 36, 51; *n* **B1** 51  
 waist 5  
 wake up **A1** 83, 84  
 want *v* **A1** 56  
 war **A2** *as in* at war 52  
 warn sb (of/about sth) **B1** 92  
 warning **B1** 33, 92  
 wash yourself **A1** 57  
 waste *n* **B1** *as in* a waste of money 28; a waste of time 74  
 waste *adj* **B1** 43; waste ground 43  
 waste *v* **B1** 17, 28, 74  
 watch *v* **A1** 47  
 watch out *v* 92  
 water *v* **B1** 17  
 waterfall 13  
 watermelon 23  
 wave *v as in* wave (to sb) **B1** 5; wave (a flag) **B1** 67  
 wave *n* **A2** 13  
 wavy 6  
 way **A1** *as in* in the way 40; on the way **B1** 40; to put it another way 86  
 weakness **B2** 82  
 weapon **B1** 52  
 weblog 99  
 wedding **A2** 12  
 weigh **B1** 18, 24  
 weight **A2** 18  
 weightlifting 66  
 well done 85  
 well enough 30  
 well informed 65  
 well known **B1** 62, 65  
 well written 65  
 western **B1** 13  
 What do you think about ...? 93  
 what's more 86  
 what's up? 97  
 what/that's a pity/shame 85  
 whatever **B1** 17, 87  
 whenever **B1** 17  
 wherever **B2** 17  
 whether (... or not) **B2** 49  
 whistle *n* 67  
 wide **A2** 67  
 widely **B2** 21  
 width **C1**\* 67  
 Wi-Fi 69  
 wild *n as in* in the wild 18  
 willing (to do sth) **B2** 54, 93  
 wing (of a bird, insect, etc.) **B1** 18; (of an aeroplane) **B1** 34  
 wipe *v* **C1**\* 42  
 wire *n* **B2** 69  
 wireless 69  
 wish **B1** *as in* I wish I could 91  
 With kind regards 98  
 within **B1** 52  
 witness *n* **B2** 49  
 wolf 18  
 wonder *v* **B1** 94; I wonder if ... **B1**, I was wondering if ... 96  
 wonderful **A1** 20  
 wood **A2** 41  
 wooden **A2** 41  
 wool **B1** 27, 41  
 woollen 27, 41  
 word **B1** *as in* have a word with sb 90; in other words **B1** 14, 86  
 work *v* (= function) **A2** 26, 42; (= be successful) **B1** 1  
 work sth out **B1** 84  
 work of art 59  
 work permit 79  
 working *adj* **A2** 50  
 worldwide *adv, adj* **B1** 67  
 worried (about sth) **A2** 19, 39  
 worry about sth/sb **A2** 36  
 worrying *adj* 19  
 worth (= a good idea) **B2** 26; (= value) **B1** 26  
 Would it be all right if ...? 96  
 Would you mind if ...? 96  
 would rather do sth **B2** 87  
 wrist **B2**\* 5  
 written **B1** 74; well written **B1** 65  
 wrong **B1** *as in* something wrong with sth 39, 42  
 x-ray 30  
 yard (US English) **B1** 100  
 yeah **A1** 97  
 young **B1** *as in* the young 50  
 Yours faithfully 98  
 Yours sincerely 98  
 yourself **A1** 57  
 yourselves **A1** 57  
 youth **B1** 63  
 youth hostel 35  
 zoo 18

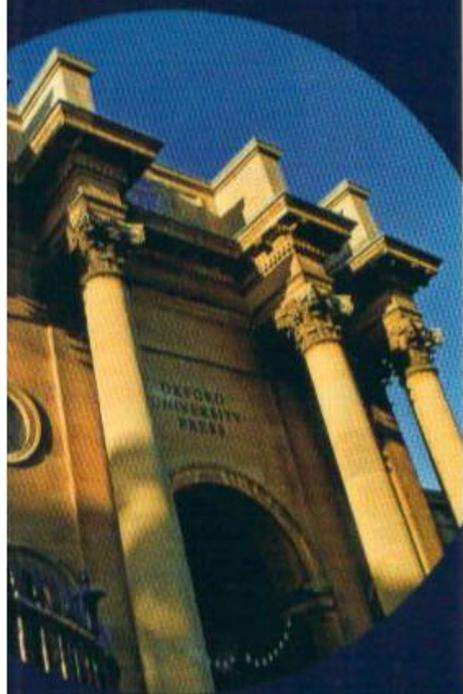
## Abbreviations used in the book

<i>adj</i>	adjective
<i>adv</i>	adverb
<i>conj</i>	conjunction
[C]	(of a noun) countable
<i>inf</i>	informal
<i>n</i>	noun
OPP	opposite
<i>pl</i>	plural
<i>pp</i>	past participle
<i>prep</i>	preposition
<i>pt</i>	past tense
<i>sing</i>	singular
<i>sb</i>	somebody
<i>sth</i>	something
SYN	synonym
[U]	(of a noun) uncountable
<i>v</i>	verb

Oxford University Press  
is the world's authority  
on the English language.

As part of the University of  
Oxford, we are committed to  
furthering English language  
learning worldwide.

We continuously bring  
together our experience,  
expertise and research to  
create resources such as  
this one, helping millions of  
learners of English to achieve  
their potential.



**OXFORD**  
UNIVERSITY PRESS

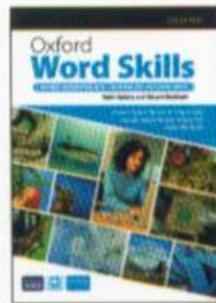
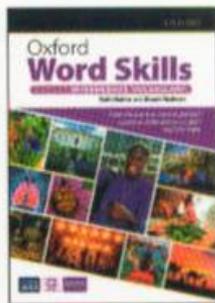
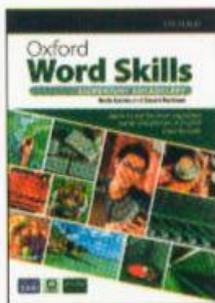
[www.oup.com/elt](http://www.oup.com/elt)

# Oxford Word Skills

INTERMEDIATE VOCABULARY

*Learn to use the most important words  
and phrases in English topic by topic*

Based on the Oxford 3000™, *Oxford Word Skills* teaches you  
the words and phrases you need to use in English in real life.  
The Oxford 3000™ is a list of the 3,000 essential core words that  
every learner of English needs to know, graded by CEFR level.



- learn over 2,600 words and phrases
- improve your vocabulary-learning skills
- practise the words in context
- study 100 units (20 extra!) with more practice
- use in the classroom and for self-study

Now with one year's access to the best-selling  
*Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary* app.

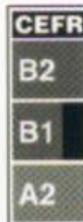
Use the app with *Oxford Word Skills* to:

- listen to the pronunciation of each new word  
and do exercises on pronunciation
- look up the meaning of any word you don't know



Ruth Gairns and Stuart Redman are language teaching experts who  
specialize in writing material for learning and teaching vocabulary.

Oxford  
3000



ISBN 978-0-19-460570-0



9 780194 605700